

MSP430 Assembly Language Tools v 4.1

User's Guide



Literature Number: SLAU131G
May 2012

Preface	10
1 Introduction to the Software Development Tools	13
1.1 Software Development Tools Overview	14
1.2 Tools Descriptions	15
2 Introduction to Object Modules	16
2.1 Sections	17
2.2 How the Assembler Handles Sections	18
2.2.1 Uninitialized Sections	18
2.2.2 Initialized Sections	19
2.2.3 Named Sections	20
2.2.4 Subsections	20
2.2.5 Section Program Counters	21
2.2.6 Using Sections Directives	21
2.3 How the Linker Handles Sections	23
2.3.1 Default Memory Allocation	24
2.3.2 Placing Sections in the Memory Map	24
2.4 Relocation	25
2.5 Run-Time Relocation	26
2.6 Loading a Program	26
2.7 Symbols in an Object File	27
2.7.1 External Symbols	27
2.7.2 The Symbol Table	27
2.8 Object File Format Specifications	28
3 Assembler Description	29
3.1 Assembler Overview	30
3.2 The Assembler's Role in the Software Development Flow	31
3.3 Invoking the Assembler	32
3.4 Controlling Application Binary Interface	33
3.5 Naming Alternate Directories for Assembler Input	33
3.5.1 Using the --include_path Assembler Option	34
3.5.2 Using the MSP430_A_DIR Environment Variable	34
3.6 Source Statement Format	36
3.6.1 Label Field	36
3.6.2 Mnemonic Field	37
3.6.3 Operand Field	37
3.6.4 Comment Field	37
3.7 Constants	38
3.7.1 Binary Integers	38
3.7.2 Octal Integers	38
3.7.3 Decimal Integers	38
3.7.4 Hexadecimal Integers	39
3.7.5 Character Constants	39
3.7.6 Assembly-Time Constants	39
3.7.7 Floating-Point Constants	39
3.8 Character Strings	40

3.9	Symbols	40
3.9.1	Labels	40
3.9.2	Local Labels	40
3.9.3	Symbolic Constants	42
3.9.4	Defining Symbolic Constants (--asm_define Option)	42
3.9.5	Predefined Symbolic Constants	43
3.9.6	Substitution Symbols	44
3.10	Expressions	44
3.10.1	Operators	45
3.10.2	Expression Overflow and Underflow	45
3.10.3	Well-Defined Expressions	45
3.10.4	Conditional Expressions	45
3.11	Built-in Functions and Operators	46
3.11.1	Built-In Math and Trigonometric Functions	46
3.11.2	MSP430 Built-In ELF Relocation Generating Operators	47
3.12	Source Listings	47
3.13	Debugging Assembly Source	49
3.14	Cross-Reference Listings	50
4	Assembler Directives	51
4.1	Directives Summary	52
4.2	Directives That Define Sections	56
4.3	Directives That Initialize Constants	58
4.4	Directives That Perform Alignment and Reserve Space	60
4.5	Directives That Format the Output Listings	61
4.6	Directives That Reference Other Files	62
4.7	Directives That Enable Conditional Assembly	62
4.8	Directives That Define Union or Structure Types	63
4.9	Directives That Define Enumerated Types	63
4.10	Directives That Define Symbols at Assembly Time	63
4.11	Miscellaneous Directives	64
4.12	Directives Reference	65
5	Macro Description	117
5.1	Using Macros	118
5.2	Defining Macros	118
5.3	Macro Parameters/Substitution Symbols	120
5.3.1	Directives That Define Substitution Symbols	121
5.3.2	Built-In Substitution Symbol Functions	122
5.3.3	Recursive Substitution Symbols	123
5.3.4	Forced Substitution	123
5.3.5	Accessing Individual Characters of Subscripted Substitution Symbols	124
5.3.6	Substitution Symbols as Local Variables in Macros	125
5.4	Macro Libraries	126
5.5	Using Conditional Assembly in Macros	127
5.6	Using Labels in Macros	129
5.7	Producing Messages in Macros	130
5.8	Using Directives to Format the Output Listing	131
5.9	Using Recursive and Nested Macros	132
5.10	Macro Directives Summary	133
6	Archiver Description	134
6.1	Archiver Overview	135
6.2	The Archiver's Role in the Software Development Flow	136
6.3	Invoking the Archiver	137

6.4	Archiver Examples	138
6.5	Library Information Archiver Description	140
6.5.1	Invoking the Library Information Archiver	140
6.5.2	Library Information Archiver Example	140
6.5.3	Listing the Contents of an Index Library	141
6.5.4	Requirements	141
7	Linker Description	142
7.1	Linker Overview	143
7.2	The Linker's Role in the Software Development Flow	144
7.3	Invoking the Linker	145
7.4	Linker Options	146
7.4.1	Wild Cards in File, Section, and Symbol Patterns	148
7.4.2	Relocation Capabilities (--absolute_exe and --relocatable Options)	148
7.4.3	Allocate Memory for Use by the Loader to Pass Arguments (--arg_size Option)	149
7.4.4	Control Linker Diagnostics	150
7.4.5	Disable Automatic Library Selection (--disable_auto_rts Option)	150
7.4.6	Disable Conditional Linking (--disable_clink Option)	150
7.4.7	Link Command File Preprocessing (--disable_pp, --define and --undefine Options)	151
7.4.8	Define an Entry Point (--entry_point Option)	152
7.4.9	Set Default Fill Value (--fill_value Option)	152
7.4.10	Define Heap Size (--heap_size Option)	152
7.4.11	Hiding Symbols	153
7.4.12	Alter the Library Search Algorithm (--library Option, --search_path Option, and MSP430_C_DIR Environment Variable)	154
7.4.13	Change Symbol Localization	156
7.4.14	Create a Map File (--map_file Option)	157
7.4.15	Managing Map File Contents (--mapfile_contents Option)	158
7.4.16	Disable Name Demangling (--no_demangle)	159
7.4.17	Disable Merge of Symbolic Debugging Information (--no_sym_merge Option)	159
7.4.18	Strip Symbolic Information (--no_symtable Option)	160
7.4.19	Name an Output Module (--output_file Option)	160
7.4.20	C Language Options (--ram_model and --rom_model Options)	160
7.4.21	Retain Discarded Sections (--retain Option)	161
7.4.22	Create an Absolute Listing File (--run_abs Option)	161
7.4.23	Scan All Libraries for Duplicate Symbol Definitions (--scan_libraries)	161
7.4.24	Define Stack Size (--stack_size Option)	162
7.4.25	Enforce Strict Compatibility (--strict_compatibility Option)	162
7.4.26	Mapping of Symbols (--symbol_map Option)	162
7.4.27	Introduce an Unresolved Symbol (--undef_sym Option)	162
7.4.28	Replace Multiply Routine With Hardware Multiplier Routine (--use_hw_mpy)	163
7.4.29	Display a Message When an Undefined Output Section Is Created (--warn_sections Option)	163
7.4.30	Generate XML Link Information File (--xml_link_info Option)	163
7.4.31	Zero Initialization (--zero_init Option)	163
7.5	Linker Command Files	164
7.5.1	Reserved Names in Linker Command Files	165
7.5.2	Constants in Linker Command Files	165
7.5.3	The MEMORY Directive	166
7.5.4	The SECTIONS Directive	168
7.5.5	Specifying a Section's Run-Time Address	181
7.5.6	Using UNION and GROUP Statements	183
7.5.7	Special Section Types (DSECT, COPY, NOLOAD, and VECT_INIT)	187
7.5.8	Assigning Symbols at Link Time	188
7.5.9	Creating and Filling Holes	193

7.6	Object Libraries	196
7.7	Default Allocation Algorithm	197
7.7.1	How the Allocation Algorithm Creates Output Sections	197
7.7.2	Reducing Memory Fragmentation	198
7.8	Linker-Generated Copy Tables	198
7.8.1	A Current Boot-Loaded Application Development Process	198
7.8.2	An Alternative Approach	199
7.8.3	Overlay Management Example	200
7.8.4	Generating Copy Tables Automatically With the Linker	200
7.8.5	The table() Operator	201
7.8.6	Boot-Time Copy Tables	202
7.8.7	Using the table() Operator to Manage Object Components	202
7.8.8	Compression Support	203
7.8.9	Copy Table Contents	206
7.8.10	General Purpose Copy Routine	207
7.8.11	Linker-Generated Copy Table Sections and Symbols	209
7.8.12	Splitting Object Components and Overlay Management	210
7.9	Partial (Incremental) Linking	212
7.10	Linking C/C++ Code	213
7.10.1	Run-Time Initialization	213
7.10.2	Object Libraries and Run-Time Support	213
7.10.3	Setting the Size of the Stack and Heap Sections	213
7.10.4	Autoinitialization of Variables at Run Time	214
7.10.5	Initialization of Variables at Load Time	214
7.10.6	The --rom_model and --ram_model Linker Options	215
7.11	Linker Example	216
8	Absolute Lister Description	219
8.1	Producing an Absolute Listing	220
8.2	Invoking the Absolute Lister	221
8.3	Absolute Lister Example	222
9	Cross-Reference Lister Description	225
9.1	Producing a Cross-Reference Listing	226
9.2	Invoking the Cross-Reference Lister	227
9.3	Cross-Reference Listing Example	228
10	Object File Utilities	230
10.1	Invoking the Object File Display Utility	231
10.2	Invoking the Disassembler	232
10.3	Invoking the Name Utility	233
10.4	Invoking the Strip Utility	233
11	Hex Conversion Utility Description	234
11.1	The Hex Conversion Utility's Role in the Software Development Flow	235
11.2	Invoking the Hex Conversion Utility	236
11.2.1	Invoking the Hex Conversion Utility From the Command Line	236
11.2.2	Invoking the Hex Conversion Utility With a Command File	238
11.3	Understanding Memory Widths	239
11.3.1	Target Width	239
11.3.2	Specifying the Memory Width	240
11.3.3	Partitioning Data Into Output Files	241
11.3.4	Specifying Word Order for Output Words	242
11.4	The ROMS Directive	243
11.4.1	When to Use the ROMS Directive	244
11.4.2	An Example of the ROMS Directive	245

11.5	The SECTIONS Directive	247
11.6	The Load Image Format (--load_image Option)	248
11.6.1	Load Image Section Formation	248
11.6.2	Load Image Characteristics	248
11.7	Excluding a Specified Section	249
11.8	Assigning Output Filenames	249
11.9	Image Mode and the --fill Option	250
11.9.1	Generating a Memory Image	250
11.9.2	Specifying a Fill Value	251
11.9.3	Steps to Follow in Using Image Mode	251
11.10	Controlling the ROM Device Address	251
11.11	Control Hex Conversion Utility Diagnostics	252
11.12	Description of the Object Formats	253
11.12.1	ASCII-Hex Object Format (--ascii Option)	253
11.12.2	Intel MCS-86 Object Format (--intel Option)	254
11.12.3	Motorola Exorciser Object Format (--motorola Option)	255
11.12.4	Extended Tektronix Object Format (--tektronix Option)	256
11.12.5	Texas Instruments SDSMAC (TI-Tagged) Object Format (--ti_tagged Option)	257
11.12.6	TI-TXT Hex Format (--ti_txt Option)	258
12	Sharing C/C++ Header Files With Assembly Source	259
12.1	Overview of the .cdecls Directive	260
12.2	Notes on C/C++ Conversions	260
12.2.1	Comments	260
12.2.2	Conditional Compilation (#if/#else/#ifdef/etc.)	261
12.2.3	Pragmas	261
12.2.4	The #error and #warning Directives	261
12.2.5	Predefined symbol __ASM_HEADER__	261
12.2.6	Usage Within C/C++ asm() Statements	261
12.2.7	The #include Directive	261
12.2.8	Conversion of #define Macros	261
12.2.9	The #undef Directive	262
12.2.10	Enumerations	262
12.2.11	C Strings	262
12.2.12	C/C++ Built-In Functions	263
12.2.13	Structures and Unions	263
12.2.14	Function/Variable Prototypes	263
12.2.15	C Constant Suffixes	264
12.2.16	Basic C/C++ Types	264
12.3	Notes on C++ Specific Conversions	264
12.3.1	Name Mangling	264
12.3.2	Derived Classes	264
12.3.3	Templates	265
12.3.4	Virtual Functions	265
12.4	Special Assembler Support	265
12.4.1	Enumerations (.enum/.emember/.endenum)	265
12.4.2	The .define Directive	265
12.4.3	The .undefine/.unasg Directives	265
12.4.4	The \$defined() Built-In Function	266
12.4.5	The \$sizeof Built-In Function	266
12.4.6	Structure/Union Alignment and \$alignof()	266
12.4.7	The .cstring Directive	266
A	Symbolic Debugging Directives	267
A.1	DWARF Debugging Format	268

A.2	COFF Debugging Format	268
A.3	Debug Directive Syntax	269
B	XML Link Information File Description	270
B.1	XML Information File Element Types	271
B.2	Document Elements	271
B.2.1	Header Elements	271
B.2.2	Input File List	272
B.2.3	Object Component List	273
B.2.4	Logical Group List	274
B.2.5	Placement Map	276
B.2.6	Far Call Trampoline List	277
B.2.7	Symbol Table	278
C	Glossary	279

List of Figures

1-1.	MSP430 Software Development Flow	14
2-1.	Partitioning Memory Into Logical Blocks	17
2-2.	Using Sections Directives Example	22
2-3.	Object Code Generated by the File in	23
2-4.	Combining Input Sections to Form an Executable Object Module	24
3-1.	The Assembler in the MSP430 Software Development Flow	31
3-2.	Example Assembler Listing	48
4-1.	The .field Directive	58
4-2.	Initialization Directives	59
4-3.	The .align Directive	60
4-4.	The .space and .bes Directives	60
4-5.	32-Bit Single-Precision Floating-Point Format	78
4-6.	64-Bit Double-Precision Floating-Point Format	78
4-7.	The .field Directive	85
4-8.	The .usect Directive	115
6-1.	The Archiver in the MSP430 Software Development Flow	136
7-1.	The Linker in the MSP430 Software Development Flow	144
7-2.	Section Allocation Defined by	170
7-3.	Run-Time Execution of	183
7-4.	Memory Allocation Shown in and	184
7-5.	Compressed Copy Table	203
7-6.	Handler Table	204
7-7.	Autoinitialization at Run Time	214
7-8.	Initialization at Load Time	215
8-1.	Absolute Lister Development Flow	220
9-1.	The Cross-Reference Lister Development Flow	226
11-1.	The Hex Conversion Utility in the MSP430 Software Development Flow	235
11-2.	Hex Conversion Utility Process Flow	239
11-3.	Object File Data and Memory Widths	240
11-4.	Data, Memory, and ROM Widths	242
11-5.	The infile.out File Partitioned Into Four Output Files	245
11-6.	ASCII-Hex Object Format	253
11-7.	Intel Hexadecimal Object Format	254
11-8.	Motorola-S Format	255
11-9.	Extended Tektronix Object Format	256
11-10.	TI-Tagged Object Format	257
11-11.	TI-TXT Object Format	258

List of Tables

3-1.	MSP430 Assembler Options	32
3-2.	Processor Symbols	43
3-3.	Operators Used in Expressions (Precedence)	45
3-4.	Built-In Mathematical Functions	46
3-5.	Symbol Attributes	50
4-1.	Directives That Define Sections	52
4-2.	Directives That Initialize Values (Data and Memory)	52
4-3.	Directives That Perform Alignment and Reserve Space	53
4-4.	Directives That Format the Output Listing	53
4-5.	Directives That Reference Other Files	53
4-6.	Directives That Effect Symbol Linkage and Visibility	53
4-7.	Directives That Enable Conditional Assembly	54
4-8.	Directives That Define Structure Types	54
4-9.	Directives That Define Symbols at Assembly Time	54
4-10.	Directives That Define Common Data Sections	54
4-11.	Directives That Create or Effect Macros	55
4-12.	Directives That Control Diagnostics	55
4-13.	Directives That Perform Assembly Source Debug	55
4-14.	Directives That Are Used by the Absolute Lister	55
4-15.	Directives That Perform Miscellaneous Functions	55
5-1.	Substitution Symbol Functions and Return Values	122
5-2.	Creating Macros	133
5-3.	Manipulating Substitution Symbols	133
5-4.	Conditional Assembly	133
5-5.	Producing Assembly-Time Messages	133
5-6.	Formatting the Listing	133
7-1.	Basic Options Summary	146
7-2.	File Search Path Options Summary	146
7-3.	Command File Preprocessing Options Summary	146
7-4.	Diagnostic Options Summary	146
7-5.	Linker Output Options Summary	147
7-6.	Symbol Management Options Summary	147
7-7.	Run-Time Environment Options Summary	147
7-8.	Miscellaneous Options Summary	148
7-9.	Groups of Operators Used in Expressions (Precedence)	189
9-1.	Symbol Attributes in Cross-Reference Listing	229
11-1.	Basic Hex Conversion Utility Options	236
11-2.	Options for Specifying Hex Conversion Formats	253
A-1.	Symbolic Debugging Directives	269

Read This First

About This Manual

The *MSP430 Assembly Language Tools User's Guide* explains how to use these assembly language tools:

- Assembler
- Archiver
- Linker
- Library information archiver
- Absolute lister
- Cross-reference lister
- Disassembler
- Object file display utility
- Name utility
- Strip utility
- Hex conversion utility

How to Use This Manual

This book helps you learn how to use the Texas Instruments assembly language tools designed specifically for the MSP430™ 16-bit devices. This book consists of four parts:

- **Introductory information**, consisting of [Chapter 1](#) and [Chapter 2](#), gives you an overview of the assembly language development tools. It also discusses object modules, which helps you to use the MSP430 tools more effectively. Read [Chapter 2](#) before using the assembler and linker.
- **Assembler description**, consisting of [Chapter 3](#) through [Chapter 5](#), contains detailed information about using the assembler. This portion explains how to invoke the assembler and discusses source statement format, valid constants and expressions, assembler output, and assembler directives. It also describes the macro language.
- **Additional assembly language tools description**, consisting of [Chapter 6](#) through [Chapter 11](#), describes in detail each of the tools provided with the assembler to help you create executable object files. For example, [Chapter 7](#) explains how to invoke the linker, how the linker operates, and how to use linker directives; [Chapter 11](#) explains how to use the hex conversion utility.
- **Reference material**, consisting of [Appendix A](#) through [Appendix C](#), provides supplementary information including symbolic debugging directives that the MSP430 C/C++ compiler uses. It also provides a description of the XML link information file and a glossary.

Notational Conventions

This document uses the following conventions:

- Program listings, program examples, and interactive displays are shown in a *special typeface*. Interactive displays use a bold version of the special typeface to distinguish commands that you enter from items that the system displays (such as prompts, command output, error messages, etc.).

Here is a sample of C code:

```
#include <stdio.h>
main()
{    printf("hello, cruel world\n");
}
```

- In syntax descriptions, the instruction, command, or directive is in a **bold typeface** and parameters are in an *italic typeface*. Portions of a syntax that are in bold should be entered as shown; portions of a syntax that are in italics describe the type of information that should be entered.
- Square brackets ([and]) identify an optional parameter. If you use an optional parameter, you specify the information within the brackets. Unless the square brackets are in the **bold typeface**, do not enter the brackets themselves. The following is an example of a command that has an optional parameter:

cl430 [*options*] [*filenames*] [--run_linker [*link_options*] [*object files*]]

- Braces ({ and }) indicate that you must choose one of the parameters within the braces; you do not enter the braces themselves. This is an example of a command with braces that are not included in the actual syntax but indicate that you must specify either the --rom_model or --ram_model option:

cl430 --run_linker {--rom_model | --ram_model} *filenames* [--output_file= *name.out*]
--library= *libraryname*

- In assembler syntax statements, column 1 is reserved for the first character of a label or symbol. If the label or symbol is optional, it is usually not shown. If it is a required parameter, it is shown starting against the left margin of the box, as in the example below. No instruction, command, directive, or parameter, other than a symbol or label, can begin in column 1.

symbol **.usect** "*section name*", *size in bytes*[, *alignment*]

- Some directives can have a varying number of parameters. For example, the .byte directive can have multiple parameters. This syntax is shown as [, ..., *parameter*].
- Following are other symbols and abbreviations used throughout this document:

Symbol	Definition
B, b	Suffix — binary integer
H, h	Suffix — hexadecimal integer
LSB	Least significant bit
MSB	Most significant bit
0x	Prefix — hexadecimal integer
Q, q	Suffix — octal integer

Related Documentation From Texas Instruments

You can use the following books to supplement this user's guide:

[SPRAA08](#) — Common Object File Format Application Report. Provides supplementary information on the internal format of COFF object files. Much of this information pertains to the symbolic debugging information that is produced by the C compiler.

[SLAU012](#) —MSP430x3xx Family User's Guide. Describes the MSP430x3xx™ CPU architecture, instruction set, pipeline, and interrupts for these ultra-low power microcontrollers.

[SLAU049](#) —MSP430x1xx Family User's Guide. Describes the MSP430x1xx™ CPU architecture, instruction set, pipeline, and interrupts for these ultra-low power microcontrollers.

[SLAU056](#) —MSP430x4xx Family User's Guide. Describes the MSP430x4xx™ CPU architecture, instruction set, pipeline, and interrupts for these ultra-low power microcontrollers.

[SLAU132](#) —MSP430 Optimizing C/C++ Compiler User's Guide. Describes the MSP430 C/C++ compiler. This C/C++ compiler accepts ANSI standard C/C++ source code and produces assembly language source code for the MSP430 devices.

[SLAU134](#) —MSP430FE42x ESP30CE1 Peripheral Module User's Guide. Describes common peripherals available on the MSP430FE42x and ESP430CE1 ultra-low power microcontrollers. This book includes information on the setup, operation, and registers of the ESP430CE1.

[SLAU144](#) —MSP430x2xx Family User's Guide. Describes the MSP430x2xx™ CPU architecture, instruction set, pipeline, and interrupts for these ultra-low power microcontrollers.

[SLAU208](#) —MSP430x5xx Family User's Guide. Describes the MSP430x5xx™ CPU architecture, instruction set, pipeline, and interrupts for these ultra-low power microcontrollers.

Introduction to the Software Development Tools

The MSP430™ is supported by a set of software development tools, which includes an optimizing C/C++ compiler, an assembler, a linker, and assorted utilities. This chapter provides an overview of these tools.

The MSP430 is supported by the following assembly language development tools:

- Assembler
- Archiver
- Linker
- Library information archiver
- Absolute lister
- Cross-reference lister
- Object file display utility
- Disassembler
- Name utility
- Strip utility
- Hex conversion utility

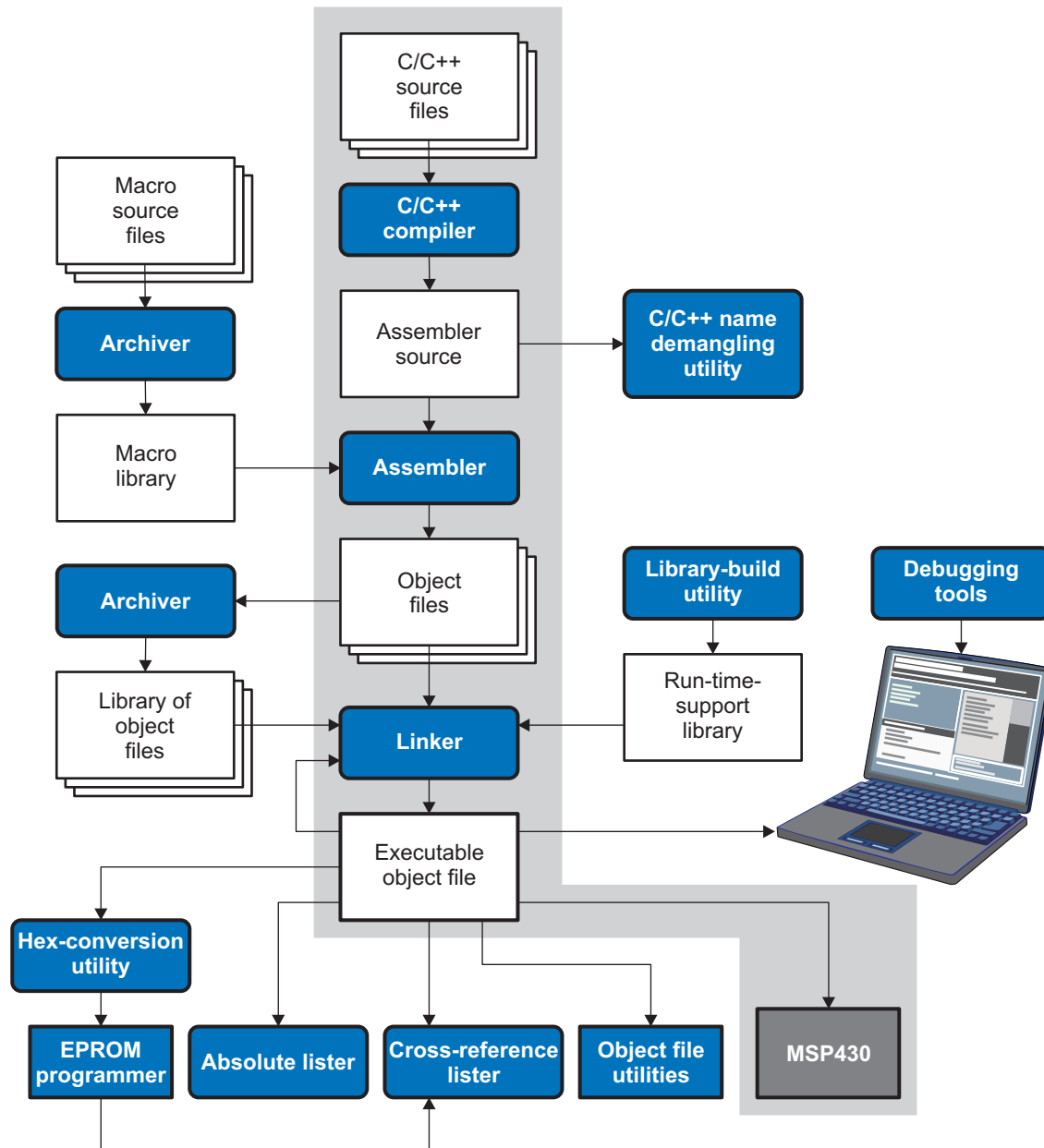
This chapter shows how these tools fit into the general software tools development flow and gives a brief description of each tool. For convenience, it also summarizes the C/C++ compiler and debugging tools. For detailed information on the compiler and debugger, and for complete descriptions of the MSP430, refer to the books listed in *Related Documentation From Texas Instruments*.

Topic	Page
1.1 Software Development Tools Overview	14
1.2 Tools Descriptions	15

1.1 Software Development Tools Overview

Figure 1-1 shows the MSP430 software development flow. The shaded portion highlights the most common development path; the other portions are optional. The other portions are peripheral functions that enhance the development process.

Figure 1-1. MSP430 Software Development Flow



1.2 Tools Descriptions

The following list describes the tools that are shown in [Figure 1-1](#):

- The **C/C++ compiler** accepts C/C++ source code and produces MSP430 machine code object modules. A **shell program**, an **optimizer**, and an **interlist utility** are included in the compiler package:
 - The shell program enables you to compile, assemble, and link source modules in one step.
 - The optimizer modifies code to improve the efficiency of C/C++ programs.
 - The interlist utility interlists C/C++ source statements with assembly language output to correlate code produced by the compiler with your source code.

See the *MSP430 Optimizing C/C++ Compiler User's Guide* for more information.
- The **assembler** translates assembly language source files into machine language object modules. Source files can contain instructions, assembler directives, and macro directives. You can use assembler directives to control various aspects of the assembly process, such as the source listing format, data alignment, and section content. See [Chapter 3](#) through [Chapter 5](#). See the *MSP430x1xx Family User's Guide*, the *MSP430x2xx Family User's Guide*, the *MSP430x3xx Family User's Guide*, the *MSP430x4xx Family User's Guide*, or the *MSP430x5xx Family User's Guide* for detailed information on the assembly language instruction set.
- The **linker** combines object files into a single executable object module. As it creates the executable module, it performs relocation and resolves external references. The linker accepts relocatable object modules (created by the assembler) as input. It also accepts archiver library members and output modules created by a previous linker run. Link directives allow you to combine object file sections, bind sections or symbols to addresses or within memory ranges, and define or redefine global symbols. See [Chapter 7](#).
- The **archiver** allows you to collect a group of files into a single archive file, called a library. You can also use the archiver to collect a group of object files into an object library. You can collect several macros into a macro library. The assembler searches the library and uses the members that are called as macros by the source file. The linker includes in the library the members that resolve external references during the link. The archiver allows you to modify a library by deleting, replacing, extracting, or adding members. See [Section 6.1](#).
- The **library information archiver** allows you to create an index library of several object file library variants, which is useful when several variants of a library with different options are available. Rather than refer to a specific library, you can link against the index library, and the linker will choose the best match from the indexed libraries. See [Section 6.5](#).
- You can use the **library-build utility** to build your own customized run-time-support library. See the *MSP430 Optimizing C/C++ Compiler User's Guide* for more information.
- The **hex conversion utility** converts an object file into TI-Tagged, ASCII-Hex, Intel, Motorola-S, or Tektronix object format. The converted file can be downloaded to an EPROM programmer. See [Chapter 11](#).
- The **absolute lister** uses linked object files to create .abs files. These files can be assembled to produce a listing of the absolute addresses of object code. See [Chapter 8](#).
- The **cross-reference lister** uses object files to produce a cross-reference listing showing symbols, their definition, and their references in the linked source files. See [Chapter 9](#).
- The main product of this development process is a executable object file that can be executed in a **MSP430** device.

In addition, the following utilities are provided:

- The **object file display utility** prints the contents of object files, executable files, and archive libraries in either human readable or XML formats. See [Section 10.1](#).
- The **disassembler** decodes object modules to show the assembly instructions that it represents. See [Section 10.2](#).
- The **name utility** prints a list of linknames of objects and functions defined or referenced in a object or an executable file. See [Section 10.3](#).
- The **strip utility** removes symbol table and debugging information from object and executable files. See [Section 10.4](#).

Introduction to Object Modules

The assembler creates object modules from assembly code, and the linker creates executable object files from object modules. These executable object files can be executed by an MSP430 device.

Object modules make modular programming easier because they encourage you to think in terms of *blocks* of code and data when you write an assembly language program. These blocks are known as sections. Both the assembler and the linker provide directives that allow you to create and manipulate sections.

This chapter focuses on the concept and use of sections in assembly language programs.

Topic	Page
2.1 Sections	17
2.2 How the Assembler Handles Sections	18
2.3 How the Linker Handles Sections	23
2.4 Relocation	25
2.5 Run-Time Relocation	26
2.6 Loading a Program	26
2.7 Symbols in an Object File	27
2.8 Object File Format Specifications	28

2.1 Sections

The smallest unit of an object file is a *section*. A section is a block of code or data that occupies contiguous space in the memory map with other sections. Each section of an object file is separate and distinct. Object files usually contain three default sections:

.text section	contains executable code ⁽¹⁾
.data section	usually contains initialized data
.bss section	usually reserves space for uninitialized variables

⁽¹⁾ Some targets allow non-text in .text sections.

In addition, the assembler and linker allow you to create, name, and link *named* sections that are used like the .data, .text, and .bss sections.

There are two basic types of sections:

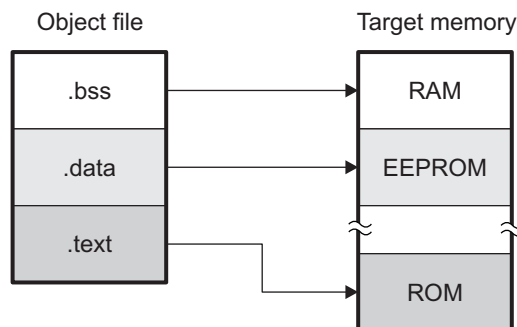
Initialized sections	contain data or code. The .text and .data sections are initialized; named sections created with the .sect assembler directive are also initialized.
Uninitialized sections	reserve space in the memory map for uninitialized data. The .bss section is uninitialized; named sections created with the .usect assembler directive are also uninitialized.

Several assembler directives allow you to associate various portions of code and data with the appropriate sections. The assembler builds these sections during the assembly process, creating an object file organized as shown in [Figure 2-1](#).

One of the linker's functions is to relocate sections into the target system's memory map; this function is called *allocation*. Because most systems contain several types of memory, using sections can help you use target memory more efficiently. All sections are independently relocatable; you can place any section into any allocated block of target memory. For example, you can define a section that contains an initialization routine and then allocate the routine into a portion of the memory map that contains ROM.

[Figure 2-1](#) shows the relationship between sections in an object file and a hypothetical target memory.

Figure 2-1. Partitioning Memory Into Logical Blocks



2.2 How the Assembler Handles Sections

The assembler identifies the portions of an assembly language program that belong in a given section. The assembler has five directives that support this function:

- .bss
- .usect
- .text
- .data
- .sect

The .bss and .usect directives create *uninitialized sections*; the .text, .data, and .sect directives create *initialized sections*.

You can create subsections of any section to give you tighter control of the memory map. Subsections are created using the .sect and .usect directives. Subsections are identified with the base section name and a subsection name separated by a colon; see [Section 2.2.4](#).

Default Sections Directive

NOTE: If you do not use any of the sections directives, the assembler assembles everything into the .text section.

2.2.1 Uninitialized Sections

Uninitialized sections reserve space in MSP430 memory; they are usually allocated into RAM. These sections have no actual contents in the object file; they simply reserve memory. A program can use this space at run time for creating and storing variables.

Uninitialized data areas are built by using the .bss and .usect assembler directives.

- The .bss directive reserves space in the .bss section.
- The .usect directive reserves space in a specific uninitialized named section.

Each time you invoke the .bss or .usect directive, the assembler reserves additional space in the .bss or the named section. The syntaxes for these directives are:

	.bss <i>symbol</i> , <i>size in bytes</i> [, <i>alignment</i>]
<i>symbol</i>	.usect "section name", <i>size in bytes</i> [, <i>alignment</i>]

<i>symbol</i>	points to the first byte reserved by this invocation of the .bss or .usect directive. The <i>symbol</i> corresponds to the name of the variable that you are reserving space for. It can be referenced by any other section and can also be declared as a global symbol (with the .global directive).
<i>size in bytes</i>	is an absolute expression. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The .bss directive reserves <i>size in bytes</i> bytes in the .bss section. The default value is 1 byte. • The .usect directive reserves <i>size in bytes</i> bytes in <i>section name</i>. You must specify a size; there is no default value.
<i>alignment</i>	is an optional parameter. It specifies the minimum alignment in bytes required by the space allocated. The default value is byte aligned. The value must be power of 2.
<i>section name</i>	tells the assembler which named section to reserve space in. See Section 2.2.3 .

The initialized section directives (.text, .data, and .sect) tell the assembler to stop assembling into the current section and begin assembling into the indicated section. The .bss and .usect directives, however, *do not* end the current section and begin a new one; they simply escape from the current section temporarily. The .bss and .usect directives can appear anywhere in an initialized section without affecting its contents. For an example, see [Section 2.2.6](#).

The `.usect` directive can also be used to create uninitialized subsections. See [Section 2.2.4](#), for more information on creating subsections.

2.2.2 Initialized Sections

Initialized sections contain executable code or initialized data. The contents of these sections are stored in the object file and placed in MSP430 memory when the program is loaded. Each initialized section is independently relocatable and may reference symbols that are defined in other sections. The linker automatically resolves these section-relative references.

Three directives tell the assembler to place code or data into a section. The syntaxes for these directives are:

```
.text
.data
.sect "section name"
```

The assembler adds code or data to one section at a time. The section the assembler is currently filling is the current section. The `.text`, `.data`, and `.sect` directives change the current section. When the assembler encounters one of these directives, it stops assembling into the current section (acting as an implied end of current section command). The assembler sets the designated section as the current section and assembles subsequent code into the designated section until it encounters another `.text`, `.data`, or `.sect` directive.

If one of these directives sets the current section to a section that already has code or data in it, the assembler resumes adding to the end of that section. The assembler generates only one contiguous section for each given section name. This section is formed by concatenating all of the code or data which was placed in that section.

Example 2-1. File `y.asm`

```

nop      ; the assembler always starts with .text as the current section

.data
.word 1

.text
add R5,R5

.data
.word 2
```

Example 2-2. Disassembly of `y.obj`

TEXT Section `.text`, 0x4 bytes at 0x0

```
000000: 0343      NOP
000002: 0555      RLA.W   R5
```

DATA Section `.data`, 0x4 bytes at 0x0

```
000000: 0001      .word 0x0001
000002: 0002      .word 0x0002
```

Initialized subsections are created with the `.sect` directive. The `.sect` directive can also be used to create initialized subsections. See [Section 2.2.4](#), for more information on creating subsections.

2.2.3 Named Sections

Named sections are sections that *you* create. You can use them like the default `.text`, `.data`, and `.bss` sections, but they are assembled separately.

For example, repeated use of the `.text` directive builds up a single `.text` section in the object file. When linked, this `.text` section is allocated into memory as a single unit. Suppose there is a portion of executable code (perhaps an initialization routine) that you do not want allocated with `.text`. If you assemble this segment of code into a named section, it is assembled separately from `.text`, and you can allocate it into memory separately. You can also assemble initialized data that is separate from the `.data` section, and you can reserve space for uninitialized variables that is separate from the `.bss` section.

Two directives let you create named sections:

- The **`.usect`** directive creates uninitialized sections that are used like the `.bss` section. These sections reserve space in RAM for variables.
- The **`.sect`** directive creates initialized sections, like the default `.text` and `.data` sections, that can contain code or data. The `.sect` directive creates named sections with relocatable addresses.

The syntaxes for these directives are:

```
symbol    .usect "section name", size in bytes[, alignment ]
          .sect "section name"
```

The *section name* parameter is the name of the section. For COFF, you can create up to 32 767 separate named sections. For ELF, the max number of sections is $2^{32}-1$ (4294967295). For the `.usect` and `.sect` directives, a section name can refer to a subsection; see [Section 2.2.4](#) for details.

Each time you invoke one of these directives with a new name, you create a new named section. Each time you invoke one of these directives with a name that was already used, the assembler assembles code or data (or reserves space) into the section with that name. *You cannot use the same names with different directives.* That is, you cannot create a section with the `.usect` directive and then try to use the same section with `.sect`.

2.2.4 Subsections

Subsections are smaller sections within larger sections. Like sections, subsections can be manipulated by the linker. Placing each function and object in a uniquely-named subsection allows finer-grained memory placement, and also allows the linker finer-grained unused-function elimination. You can create subsections by using the `.sect` or `.usect` directive. The syntaxes for a subsection name are:

```
symbol    .usect "section name:subsection name",size in bytes[, alignment]
          .sect "section name:subsection name"
```

A subsection is identified by the base section name followed by a colon and the name of the subsection. A subsection can be allocated separately or grouped with other sections using the same base name. For example, you create a subsection called `_func` within the `.text` section:

```
.sect ".text:_func"
```

Using the linker's `SECTIONS` directive, you can allocate `.text:_func` separately, or with all the `.text` sections. See [Section 7.5.4.1](#) for an example using subsections.

You can create two types of subsections:

- Initialized subsections are created using the `.sect` directive. See [Section 2.2.2](#).
- Uninitialized subsections are created using the `.usect` directive. See [Section 2.2.1](#).

Subsections are allocated in the same manner as sections. See [Section 7.5.4](#) for information on the `SECTIONS` directive.

2.2.5 Section Program Counters

The assembler maintains a separate program counter for each section. These program counters are known as *section program counters*, or *SPCs*.

An SPC represents the current address within a section of code or data. Initially, the assembler sets each SPC to 0. As the assembler fills a section with code or data, it increments the appropriate SPC. If you resume assembling into a section, the assembler remembers the appropriate SPC's previous value and continues incrementing the SPC from that value.

The assembler treats each section as if it began at address 0; the linker relocates each section according to its final location in the memory map. See [Section 2.4](#) for information on relocation.

2.2.6 Using Sections Directives

[Figure 2-2](#) shows how you can build sections incrementally, using the sections directives to swap back and forth between the different sections. You can use sections directives to begin assembling into a section for the first time, or to continue assembling into a section that already contains code. In the latter case, the assembler simply appends the new code to the code that is already in the section.

The format in [Figure 2-2](#) is a listing file. [Figure 2-2](#) shows how the SPCs are modified during assembly. A line in a listing file has four fields:

Field 1	contains the source code line counter.
Field 2	contains the section program counter.
Field 3	contains the object code.
Field 4	contains the original source statement.

See [Section 3.12](#) for more information on interpreting the fields in a source listing.

Figure 2-2. Using Sections Directives Example

```

1      .global _mpyi
2      *****
3      * Assemble an initialized table into .data. *
4      *****
5      0000      .data
6      0000 0011 coeff .word 011h,0x22,0x33
7      0002 0022
8      0004 0033
9      *****
10     * Reserve space in .bss for a variable. *
11     *****
12     0000      .bss buffer,10
13     *****
14     * Still in .data. *
15     *****
16     0006 0123 ptr .word 0x123
17     *****
18     * Assemble code into the .text section. *
19     *****
20     0000      .text
21     0000 403A add: MOV.W #0x1234,R10
22     0002 1234
23     0004 521A      ADD.W &coeff+1,R10
24     0006 0001!
25     *****
26     * Another initialized table into .data. *
27     *****
28     0008      .data
29     0008 00AA ivals .word 0xAA,0xBB,0xCC
30     000a 00BB
31     000c 00CC
32     *****
33     * Define another section for more variables. *
34     *****
35     0000      var2 .usect "newvars", 1
36     0001      inbuf .usect "newvars", 7
37     *****
38     * Assemble more code into .text. *
39     *****
40     0008      .text
41     0008 403C mpy: MOV.W #0x3456,R12
42     000a 3456
43     000c 421D      MOV.W &coeff,R13
44     000e 0000!
45     0010 1290      CALL _mpyi
46     0012 FFEE!
47     *****
48     * Define a named section for int. vectors. *
49     *****
50     0000      .sect "vectors"
51     0000 0300      .word 0x300

```

Field 1 Field 2 Field 2 Field 4

As Figure 2-3 shows, the file in Figure 2-2 creates five sections:

.text	contains six 32-bit words of object code.
.data	contains seven words of initialized data.
vectors	is a named section created with the .sect directive; it contains one word of initialized data.
.bss	reserves 10 bytes in memory.
newvars	is a named section created with the .usect directive; it contains eight bytes in memory.

The second column shows the object code that is assembled into these sections; the first column shows the source statements that generated the object code.

Figure 2-3. Object Code Generated by the File in Figure 2-2

Line numbers	Object code	Section
19	403A	.text
19	1234	
20	521A	
20	0001!	
35	403C	
35	3456	
36	421D	
36	0000!	
37	1290	
37	FFEE!	
6	0011	.data
6	0022	
6	0033	
14	0123	
25	00AA	
25	00BB	
25	00CC	
10	No data - ten bytes reserved	.bss
29	No data - eight bytes reserved	newvars
30		

2.3 How the Linker Handles Sections

The linker has two main functions related to sections. First, the linker uses the sections in object files as building blocks; it combines input sections (when more than one file is being linked) to create output sections in an executable output module. Second, the linker chooses memory addresses for the output sections; this is called placement.

Two linker directives support these functions:

- The *MEMORY* directive allows you to define the memory map of a target system. You can name portions of memory and specify their starting addresses and their lengths.
- The *SECTIONS* directive tells the linker how to combine input sections into output sections and where to place these output sections in memory.

Subsections allow you to manipulate sections with greater precision. You can specify subsections with the linker's *SECTIONS* directive. If you do not specify a subsection explicitly, then the subsection is combined with the other sections with the same base section name.

It is not always necessary to use linker directives. If you do not use them, the linker uses the target processor's default allocation algorithm described in [Section 7.7](#). When you *do* use linker directives, you must specify them in a linker command file.

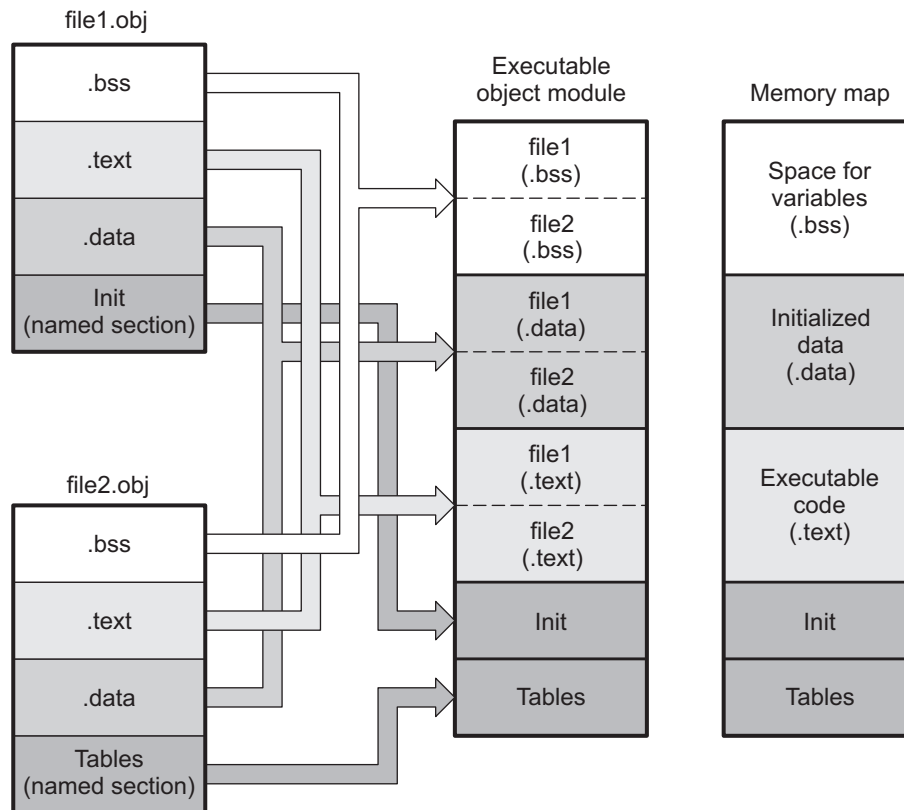
Refer to the following sections for more information about linker command files and linker directives:

- [Section 7.5, Linker Command Files](#)
- [Section 7.5.3, The MEMORY Directive](#)
- [Section 7.5.4, The SECTIONS Directive](#)
- [Section 7.7, Default Allocation Algorithm](#)

2.3.1 Default Memory Allocation

Figure 2-4 illustrates the process of linking two files together.

Figure 2-4. Combining Input Sections to Form an Executable Object Module



In Figure 2-4, file1.obj and file2.obj have been assembled to be used as linker input. Each contains the .text, .data, and .bss default sections; in addition, each contains a named section. The executable object module shows the combined sections. The linker combines the .text section from file1.obj and the .text section from file2.obj to form one .text section, then combines the two .data sections and the two .bss sections, and finally places the named sections at the end. The memory map shows how the sections are put into memory.

By default, the linker begins at 0h and places the sections one after the other in the following order: .text, .const, .data, .bss, .cinit, and then any named sections in the order they are encountered in the input files.

The C/C++ compiler uses the .const section to store string constants, and variables or arrays that are declared as *const*. The C/C++ compiler produces tables of data for autoinitializing global variables; these variables are stored in a named section called .cinit (see Example 7-8). For more information on the .const and .cinit sections, see the *MSP430 Optimizing C/C++ Compiler User's Guide*.

2.3.2 Placing Sections in the Memory Map

Figure 2-4 illustrates the linker's default method for combining sections. Sometimes you may not want to use the default setup. For example, you may not want all of the .text sections to be combined into a single .text section. Or you may want a named section placed where the .data section would normally be allocated. Most memory maps contain various types of memory (RAM, ROM, EPROM, etc.) in varying amounts; you may want to place a section in a specific type of memory.

For further explanation of section placement within the memory map, see the discussions in Section 7.5.3 and Section 7.5.4.

2.4 Relocation

The assembler treats each section as if it began at address 0. All relocatable symbols (labels) are relative to address 0 in their sections. Of course, all sections cannot actually begin at address 0 in memory, so the linker *relocates* sections by:

- Allocating them into the memory map so that they begin at the appropriate address as defined with the linker's MEMORY directive
- Adjusting symbol values to correspond to the new section addresses
- Adjusting references to relocated symbols to reflect the adjusted symbol values

The linker uses *relocation entries* to adjust references to symbol values. The assembler creates a relocation entry each time a relocatable symbol is referenced. The linker then uses these entries to patch the references after the symbols are relocated. [Example 2-3](#) contains a code segment for a MSP430 device that generates relocation entries.

Example 2-3. Code That Generates Relocation Entries

```

1          ** Generating Relocation Entries **
2
3          .ref X
4          .def Y
5
6 000000          .text
7 000000 5A0B          ADD.W    R10, R11
8 000002 4B82          MOV.W    R11, &X
   000004 0000!
9 000006 4030          BR      #Y
   000008 000A!
10
11 00000a 5B0C  Y          ADD.W    R11, R12

```

In [Example 2-3](#), both symbols X and Y are relocatable. Y is defined in the .text section of this module; X is defined in another module. When the code is assembled, X has a value of 0 (the assembler assumes all undefined external symbols have values of 0), and Y has a value of 8 (relative to address 0 in the .text section). The assembler generates two relocation entries: one for X and one for Y. The reference to X is an external reference and the reference to Y is to an internally defined relocatable symbol (both are indicated by the ! character in the listing).

After the code is linked, suppose that X is relocated to address 0x0800. Suppose also that the .text section is relocated to begin at address 0x0600; Y now has a relocated value of 0x0608. The linker uses the relocation entry for the reference to X to patch the branch instruction in the object code:

```

4B820000!          becomes          4B820800

```

Each section in an object module has a table of relocation entries. The table contains one relocation entry for each relocatable reference in the section. The linker usually removes relocation entries after it uses them. This prevents the output file from being relocated again (if it is relinked or when it is loaded). A file that contains no relocation entries is an *absolute* file (all its addresses are absolute addresses). If you want the linker to retain relocation entries, invoke the linker with the --relocatable option (see [Section 7.4.2.2](#)).

Under the ELF EABI, the relocations are symbol-relative rather than section-relative. This means that in COFF, the relocation generated for 'Y' will actually have a reference to the '.text' section symbol and will have an offset of 16. Under ELF, the relocation generated for 'Y' would actually refer to the symbol 'Y' and resolve the value for 'Y' in the opcode based on where the definition of 'Y' ends up.

2.5 Run-Time Relocation

At times you may want to load code into one area of memory and run it in another. For example, you may have performance-critical code in an external-memory-based system. The code must be loaded into external memory, but it would run faster in internal memory.

The linker provides a simple way to handle this. Using the `SECTIONS` directive, you can optionally direct the linker to allocate a section twice: first to set its load address and again to set its run address. Use the *load* keyword for the load address and the *run* keyword for the run address.

The load address determines where a loader places the raw data for the section. Any references to the section (such as references to labels in it) refer to its run address. The application must copy the section from its load address to its run address before the first reference of the symbol is encountered at run time; this does *not* happen automatically simply because you specify a separate run address. For an example that illustrates how to move a block of code at run time, see [Example 7-10](#).

If you provide only one allocation (either load or run) for a section, the section is allocated only once and loads and runs at the same address. If you provide both allocations, the section is actually allocated as if it were two separate sections of the same size.

Uninitialized sections (such as `.bss`) are not loaded, so the only significant address is the run address. The linker allocates uninitialized sections only once; if you specify both run and load addresses, the linker warns you and ignores the load address.

For a complete description of run-time relocation, see [Section 7.5.5](#).

2.6 Loading a Program

The linker produces executable object modules. An executable object module has the same format as object files that are used as linker input; the sections in an executable object module, however, are combined and relocated into target memory, and the relocations are all resolved.

To run a program, the data in the executable object module must be transferred, or loaded, into target system memory. Several methods can be used for loading a program, depending on the execution environment. Common situations are described below:

- Code Composer Studio can load an executable object module onto hardware. The Code Composer Studio loader reads the executable file and copies the program into target memory.
- You can use the hex conversion utility (hex430, which is shipped as part of the assembly language package) to convert the executable object module into one of several object file formats. You can then use the converted file with an EPROM programmer to burn the program into an EPROM.

2.7 Symbols in an Object File

An object file contains a symbol table that stores information about symbols in the program. The linker uses this table when it performs relocation.

2.7.1 External Symbols

External symbols are symbols that are defined in one file and referenced in another file. You can use the `.def`, `.ref`, or `.global` directive to identify symbols as external:

.def	The symbol is defined in the current file and used in another file.
.ref	The symbol is referenced in the current file, but defined in another file.
.global	The symbol can be either of the above.

The following code segment illustrates these definitions.

```
x: ADD.W    #56, R11    ; Define x
    JMP     y          ; Reference y
    .global x          ; .def of x
    .global y          ; .ref of y
```

The `.global` directive for `x` declares that it is an external symbol defined in this module and that other modules can reference `x`. The `.global` directive for `y` declares that it is an undefined symbol that is defined in another module. The assembler determines that `y` is defined in another module because it is not defined in the current module.

The assembler places both `x` and `y` in the object file's symbol table. When the file is linked with other object files, the entry for `x` resolves references to `x` in other files. The entry for `y` causes the linker to look through the symbol tables of other files for `y`'s definition.

The linker must match all references with corresponding definitions. If the linker cannot find a symbol's definition, it prints an error message about the unresolved reference. This type of error prevents the linker from creating an executable object module.

2.7.2 The Symbol Table

The assembler always generates an entry in the symbol table when it encounters an external symbol (both definitions and references defined by one of the directives in [Section 2.7.1](#)). The assembler also creates special symbols that point to the beginning of each section; the linker uses these symbols to relocate references to other symbols.

The assembler does not usually create symbol table entries for any symbols other than those described above, because the linker does not use them. For example, labels are not included in the symbol table unless they are declared with the `.global` directive. For informational purposes, it is sometimes useful to have entries in the symbol table for each symbol in a program. To accomplish this, invoke the assembler with the `--output_all_syms` option (see [Section 3.3](#)).

2.8 Object File Format Specifications

The object files created by the assembler and linker conform to either the ELF (Executable and Linking Format) or COFF (Common Object File Format) binary formats, depending on the ABI selected when building your program. When using the EABI mode, the ELF format is used. For the older COFF ABI mode, the legacy COFF format is used.

Some features of the assembler may apply only to the ELF or COFF object file format. In these cases, the proper object file format is stated in the feature description.

See the *MSP430 Optimizing C/C++ Compiler User's Guide* for information on the different ABIs available.

See the *Common Object File Format Application Note* ([SPRAAO8](#)) for information about the COFF object file format.

The ELF object files generated by the assembler and linker conform to the December 17, 2003 snapshot of the [System V generic ABI \(or gABI\)](#).

Assembler Description

The MSP430 assembler translates assembly language source files into machine language object files. These files are in object modules, which are discussed in [Chapter 2](#). Source files can contain the following assembly language elements:

Assembler directives	described in Chapter 4
Macro directives	described in Chapter 5
Assembly language instructions	described in the <i>MSP430x1xx Family User's Guide</i> , <i>MSP430x3xx Family User's Guide</i> , or <i>MSP430x4xx Family User's Guide</i> .

Topic	Page
3.1 Assembler Overview	30
3.2 The Assembler's Role in the Software Development Flow	31
3.3 Invoking the Assembler	32
3.4 Controlling Application Binary Interface	33
3.5 Naming Alternate Directories for Assembler Input	33
3.6 Source Statement Format	36
3.7 Constants	38
3.8 Character Strings	40
3.9 Symbols	40
3.10 Expressions	44
3.11 Built-in Functions and Operators	46
3.12 Source Listings	47
3.13 Debugging Assembly Source	49
3.14 Cross-Reference Listings	50

3.1 Assembler Overview

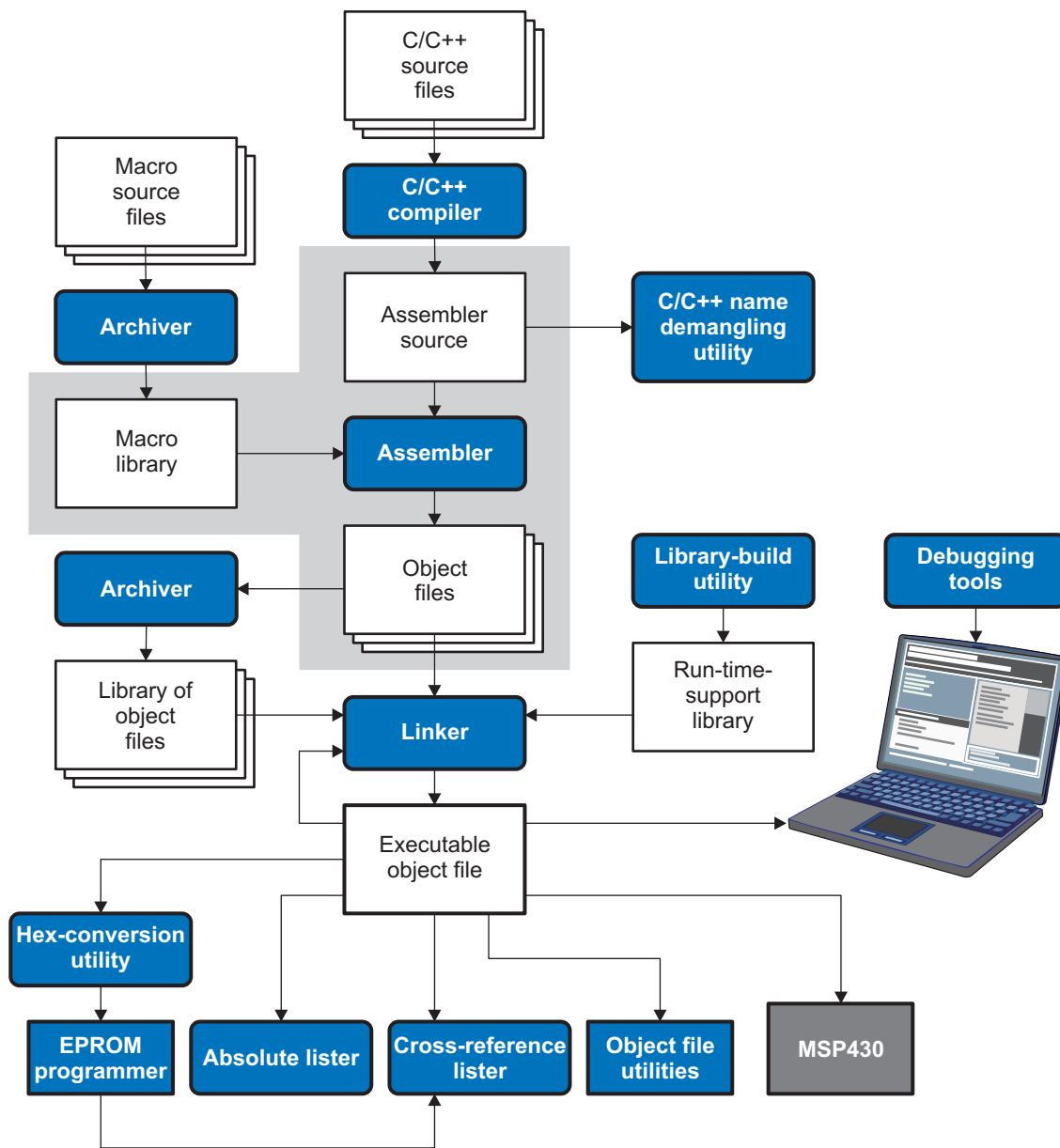
The 2-pass assembler does the following:

- Processes the source statements in a text file to produce a relocatable object file
- Produces a source listing (if requested) and provides you with control over this listing
- Allows you to divide your code into sections and maintain a section program counter (SPC) for each section of object code
- Defines and references global symbols and appends a cross-reference listing to the source listing (if requested)
- Allows conditional assembly
- Supports macros, allowing you to define macros inline or in a library

3.2 The Assembler's Role in the Software Development Flow

Figure 3-1 illustrates the assembler's role in the software development flow. The shaded portion highlights the most common assembler development path. The assembler accepts assembly language source files as input, both those you create and those created by the MSP430 C/C++ compiler.

Figure 3-1. The Assembler in the MSP430 Software Development Flow



3.3 Invoking the Assembler

To invoke the assembler, enter the following:

cl430 *input file* [*options*]

cl430 is the command that invokes the assembler through the compiler. The compiler considers any file with an .asm extension to be an assembly file and calls the assembler.

input file names the assembly language source file.

options identify the assembler options that you want to use. Options are case sensitive and can appear anywhere on the command line following the command. Precede each option with one or two hyphens as shown.

The valid assembler options are listed in [Table 3-1](#).

Some runtime model options such as --abi=coffabi or --abi=eabi, and --silicon version influence the behavior of the assembler. These options are passed to the compiler, assembler, and linker from the shell utility, which is detailed in the *MSP430 Optimizing C/C++ Compiler User's Guide*.

Table 3-1. MSP430 Assembler Options

Option	Alias	Description
--absolute_listing	-aa	Creates an absolute listing. When you use --absolute_listing, the assembler does not produce an object file. The --absolute_listing option is used in conjunction with the absolute lister.
--asm_define= <i>name</i> [= <i>def</i>]	-ad	Sets the <i>name</i> symbol. This is equivalent to defining <i>name</i> with a .set directive in the case of a numeric value or with an .asg directive otherwise. If <i>value</i> is omitted, the symbol is set to 1. See Section 3.9.4 .
--asm_dependency	-apd	Performs preprocessing for assembly files, but instead of writing preprocessed output, writes a list of dependency lines suitable for input to a standard make utility. The list is written to a file with the same name as the source file but with a .ppa extension.
--asm_includes	-api	Performs preprocessing for assembly files, but instead of writing preprocessed output, writes a list of files included with the .include directive. The list is written to a file with the same name as the source file but with a .ppa extension.
--asm_listing	-al	Produces a listing file with the same name as the input file with a .lst extension.
--asm_undefine= <i>name</i>	-au	Undefines the predefined constant <i>name</i> , which overrides any --asm_define options for the specified constant.
--cmd_file= <i>filename</i>	-@	Appends the contents of a file to the command line. You can use this option to avoid limitations on command line length imposed by the host operating system. Use an asterisk (*) or ; at the beginning of a line in the command file to include comments. Comments that begin in any other column must begin with a semicolon. Within the command file, filenames or option parameters containing embedded spaces or hyphens must be surrounded with quotation marks. For example: "this-file.asm"
--copy_file= <i>filename</i>	-ahc	Copies the specified file for the assembly module. The file is inserted before source file statements. The copied file appears in the assembly listing files.
--cross_reference	-ax	Produces a cross-reference table and appends it to the end of the listing file; it also adds cross-reference information to the object file for use by the cross-reference utility. If you do not request a listing file but use the --cross_reference option, the assembler creates a listing file automatically, naming it with the same name as the input file with a .lst extension.
--include_file= <i>filename</i>	-ahi	Includes the specified file for the assembly module. The file is included before source file statements. The included file does not appear in the assembly listing files.
--include_path= <i>pathname</i>	-I	Specifies a directory where the assembler can find files named by the .copy, .include, or .mli directives. There is no limit to the number of directories you can specify in this manner; each pathname must be preceded by the --include_path option. See Section 3.5.1 .
--output_all_syms	-as	Puts all defined symbols in the object file's symbol table. The assembler usually puts only global symbols into the symbol table. When you use --output_all_syms, symbols defined as labels or as assembly-time constants are also placed in the table.
--quiet	-q	Suppresses the banner and progress information (assembler runs in quiet mode).

Table 3-1. MSP430 Assembler Options (continued)

Option	Alias	Description
--silicon_version={msp msp_x}		Selects the instruction set version. Using --silicon_version=msp _x generates code for MSP430 _x devices (20-bit code addresses). Using --silicon_version=msp generates code for 16-bit MSP430 devices. Modules assembled/compiled for 16-bit MSP devices are not compatible with modules that are assembled/compiled for 20-bit MSP _x devices. The linker generates errors if an attempt is made to combine incompatible object files.
--symdebug:dwarf	-g	Enables assembler source debugging in the C source debugger. Line information is output to the object module for every line of source in the assembly language source file. You cannot use the --symdebug:dwarf option on assembly code that contains .line directives. See Section 3.13 .
--syms_ignore_case	-ac	Makes case insignificant in the assembly language files. For example, --syms_ignore_case makes the symbols ABC and abc equivalent. <i>If you do not use this option, case is significant</i> (default). Case significance is enforced primarily with symbol names, not with mnemonics and register names.

3.4 Controlling Application Binary Interface

An Application Binary Interface (ABI) defines the low level interface between object files, and between an executable and its execution environment. An ABI allows ABI-compliant object code to link together, regardless of its source, and allows the resulting executable to run on any system that supports that ABI.

Object modules conforming to different ABIs cannot be linked together. The linker detects this situation and generates an error.

The MSP430 compiler supports two ABIs. The ABI is chosen through the --abi option as follows:

- **COFF ABI** (--abi=coffabi)
The COFF ABI is the original, legacy ABI format. There is no COFF to ELF conversion possible; recompile or reassemble assembly code.
- **MSP430 EABI** (--abi=eabi)
Use this option to select the MSP430 Embedded Application Binary Interface (EABI).
All code in an EABI application must be built for EABI. Make sure all your libraries are available in EABI mode before migrating your existing COFF ABI systems to MSP430 EABI.

3.5 Naming Alternate Directories for Assembler Input

The .copy, .include, and .mlib directives tell the assembler to use code from external files. The .copy and .include directives tell the assembler to read source statements from another file, and the .mlib directive names a library that contains macro functions. [Chapter 4](#) contains examples of the .copy, .include, and .mlib directives. The syntax for these directives is:

```
.copy ["filename"]
.include ["filename"]
.mlib ["filename"]
```

The *filename* names a copy/include file that the assembler reads statements from or a macro library that contains macro definitions. If *filename* begins with a number the double quotes are required. Quotes are recommended so that there is no issue in dealing with path information that is included in the filename specification or path names that include white space. The filename may be a complete pathname, a partial pathname, or a filename with no path information. The assembler searches for the file in the following locations in the order given:

1. The directory that contains the current source file. The current source file is the file being assembled when the .copy, .include, or .mlib directive is encountered.
2. Any directories named with the --include_path option
3. Any directories named with the MSP430_A_DIR environment variable
4. Any directories named with the MSP430_C_DIR environment variable

Because of this search hierarchy, you can augment the assembler's directory search algorithm by using the `--include_path` option (described in [Section 3.5.1](#)) or the `MSP430_A_DIR` environment variable (described in [Section 3.5.2](#)). The `MSP430_C_DIR` environment variable is discussed in the *MSP430 Optimizing C/C++ Compiler User's Guide*.

3.5.1 Using the `--include_path` Assembler Option

The `--include_path` assembler option names an alternate directory that contains copy/include files or macro libraries. The format of the `--include_path` option is as follows:

cl430 `--include_path= pathname source filename [other options]`

There is no limit to the number of `--include_path` options per invocation; each `--include_path` option names one pathname. In assembly source, you can use the `.copy`, `.include`, or `.mlib` directive without specifying path information. If the assembler does not find the file in the directory that contains the current source file, it searches the paths designated by the `--include_path` options.

For example, assume that a file called `source.asm` is in the current directory; `source.asm` contains the following directive statement:

```
.copy "copy.asm"
```

Assume the following paths for the `copy.asm` file:

UNIX: /tools/files/copy.asm
Windows: c:\tools\files\copy.asm

You could set up the search path with the commands shown below:

Operating System	Enter
UNIX (Bourne shell)	<code>cl430 --include_path=/tools/files source.asm</code>
Windows	<code>cl430 --include_path=c:\tools\files source.asm</code>

The assembler first searches for `copy.asm` in the current directory because `source.asm` is in the current directory. Then the assembler searches in the directory named with the `--include_path` option.

3.5.2 Using the `MSP430_A_DIR` Environment Variable

An environment variable is a system symbol that you define and assign a string to. The assembler uses the `MSP430_A_DIR` environment variable to name alternate directories that contain copy/include files or macro libraries.

The assembler looks for the `MSP430_A_DIR` environment variable and then reads and processes it. If the assembler does not find the `MSP430_A_DIR` variable, it then searches for `MSP430_C_DIR`. The processor-specific variables are useful when you are using Texas Instruments tools for different processors at the same time.

See the *MSP430 Optimizing C/C++ Compiler User's Guide* for details on `MSP430_C_DIR`.

The command syntax for assigning the environment variable is as follows:

Operating System	Enter
UNIX (Bourne Shell)	<code>MSP430_A_DIR=" pathname₁ ; pathname₂ ; . . . "; export MSP430_A_DIR</code>
Windows	<code>set MSP430_A_DIR= pathname₁ ; pathname₂ ; . . .</code>

The *pathnames* are directories that contain copy/include files or macro libraries. The pathnames must follow these constraints:

- Pathnames must be separated with a semicolon.
- Spaces or tabs at the beginning or end of a path are ignored. For example the space before and after the semicolon in the following is ignored:

```
set MSP_A_DIR= c:\path\one\to\tools ; c:\path\two\to\tools
```

- Spaces and tabs are allowed within paths to accommodate Windows directories that contain spaces. For example, the pathnames in the following are valid:

```
set MSP_A_DIR=c:\first path\to\tools;d:\second path\to\tools
```

In assembly source, you can use the .copy, .include, or .mlib directive without specifying path information. If the assembler does not find the file in the directory that contains the current source file or in directories named by the --include_path option, it searches the paths named by the environment variable.

For example, assume that a file called source.asm contains these statements:

```
.copy "copy1.asm"
.copy "copy2.asm"
```

Assume the following paths for the files:

UNIX: /tools/files/copy1.asm and /dsys/copy2.asm
Windows: c:\tools\files\copy1.asm and c:\dsys\copy2.asm

You could set up the search path with the commands shown below:

Operating System	Enter
UNIX (Bourne shell)	MSP430_A_DIR="/dsys"; export MSP430_A_DIR cl430 --include_path=/tools/files source.asm
Windows	MSP430_A_DIR=c:\dsys cl430 --include_path=c:\tools\files source.asm

The assembler first searches for copy1.asm and copy2.asm in the current directory because source.asm is in the current directory. Then the assembler searches in the directory named with the --include_path option and finds copy1.asm. Finally, the assembler searches the directory named with MSP430_A_DIR and finds copy2.asm.

The environment variable remains set until you reboot the system or reset the variable by entering one of these commands:

Operating System	Enter
UNIX (Bourne shell)	unset MSP430_A_DIR
Windows	set MSP430_A_DIR=

3.6 Source Statement Format

MSP430 assembly language source programs consist of source statements that can contain assembler directives, assembly language instructions, macro directives, and comments. A source statement can contain four ordered fields (label, mnemonic, operand list, and comment). The general syntax for source statements is as follows:

```
[label[:]]mnemonic [operand list][;comment]
```

Following are examples of source statements:

```
SYM1      .set      2           ; Symbol SYM1 = 2
Begin:    MOV.W     #SYM1, R11   ; Load R11 with 2
          .word     016h        ; Initialize word (016h)
```

The MSP430 assembler reads up to 400 characters per line. Any characters beyond 400 are truncated. Keep the operational part of your source statements (that is, everything other than comments) less than 400 characters in length for correct assembly. Your comments can extend beyond the 400-character limit, but the truncated portion is not included in the listing file.

Follow these guidelines:

- All statements must begin with a label, a blank, an asterisk, or a semicolon.
- Labels are optional; if used, they must begin in column 1.
- One or more space or tab characters must separate each field.
- Comments are optional. Comments that begin in column 1 can begin with an asterisk or a semicolon (* or ;), but comments that begin in any other column *must* begin with a semicolon.
- A mnemonic cannot begin in column 1 or it will be interpreted as a label. The assembler does **not** check to make sure you do not have a mnemonic in the label field.

The following sections describe each of the fields.

3.6.1 Label Field

Labels are optional for all assembly language instructions and for most (but not all) assembler directives. When used, a label must begin in column 1 of a source statement. A label can contain up to 400 alphanumeric characters (A-Z, a-z, 0-9, _, and \$). Labels are case sensitive (except when the `--syms_ignore_case` option is used), and the first character cannot be a number. A label can be followed by a colon (:). The colon is not treated as part of the label name. If you do not use a label, the first character position must contain a blank, a semicolon, or an asterisk.

When you use a label, its value is the current value of the SPC. The label points to the statement it is associated with. For example, if you use the `.word` directive to initialize several words, a label points to the first word. In the following example, the label `Start` has the value 40h.

```
.      .      .      .
.      .      .      .
.      .      .      .
      9 0000      ; Assume some code was assembled
     10 0040 000A Start: .word 0Ah,3,7
           0044 0003
           0048 0007
```

A label on a line by itself is a valid statement. The label assigns the current value of the section program counter to the label; this is equivalent to the following directive statement:

```
label .equ $ ; $ provides the current value of the SPC
```

When a label appears on a line by itself, it points to the instruction on the next line (the SPC is not incremented):

```
      3 0050      Here:
      4 0050 0003      .word 3
```

If you do not use a label, the character in column 1 must be a blank, an asterisk, or a semicolon.

3.6.2 Mnemonic Field

The mnemonic field follows the label field. The mnemonic field cannot start in column 1; if it does, it is interpreted as a label. The mnemonic field can begin with one of the following items:

- Machine-instruction mnemonic (such as ADD, MOV, JMP)
- Assembler directive (such as .data, .list, .equ)
- Macro directive (such as .macro, .var, .mexit)
- Macro call

3.6.3 Operand Field

The operand field follows the mnemonic field and contains one or more operands. The operand field is not required for all instructions or directives. An operand consists of the following items:

- Constants (see [Section 3.7](#))
- Character strings (see [Section 3.8](#))
- Symbols (see [Section 3.9](#))
- Expressions (combination of constants and symbols; see [Section 3.10](#))

You must separate operands with commas.

You use immediate values as operands primarily with instructions. In some cases, you can use immediate values with the operands of directives. For instance, you can use immediate values with the .byte directive to load values into the current section. It is not usually necessary to use the # prefix for directives.

Compare the following statements:

```
ADD.W  #10, R11
```

```
.byte 10
```

In the first statement, the # prefix is necessary to tell the assembler to add the value 10 to R1. In the second statement, however, the # prefix is not used; the assembler expects the operand to be a value and initializes a byte with the value 10.

See the *MSP430x1xx Family User's Guide*, the *MSP430x3xx Family User's Guide*, and the *MSP430x4xx Family User's Guide* for more information on the syntax and usage of instructions. See [Chapter 4](#) for more information on the syntax and usage of directives.

3.6.4 Comment Field

A comment can begin in any column and extends to the end of the source line. A comment can contain any ASCII character, including blanks. Comments are printed in the assembly source listing, but they do not affect the assembly.

A source statement that contains only a comment is valid. If it begins in column 1, it can start with a semicolon (;) or an asterisk (*). Comments that begin anywhere else on the line must begin with a semicolon. The asterisk identifies a comment only if it appears in column 1.

3.7 Constants

The assembler supports several types of constants:

- Binary integer
- Octal integer
- Decimal integer
- Hexadecimal integer
- Character
- Assembly time
- Floating-point

The assembler maintains each constant internally as a 32-bit quantity. Constants are not sign extended. For example, the constant 00FFh is equal to 00FF (base 16) or 255 (base 10); it *does not* equal -1. However, when used with the .byte directive, -1 is equivalent to 00FFh.

3.7.1 Binary Integers

A binary integer constant is a string of up to 32 binary digits (0s and 1s) followed by the suffix B (or b). If fewer than 32 digits are specified, the assembler right justifies the value and fills the unspecified bits with zeros. These are examples of valid binary constants:

00000000B	Constant equal to 0 ₁₀ or 0 ₁₆
0100000b	Constant equal to 32 ₁₀ or 20 ₁₆
01b	Constant equal to 1 ₁₀ or 1 ₁₆
11111000B	Constant equal to 248 ₁₀ or 0F8 ₁₆

3.7.2 Octal Integers

An octal integer constant is a string of up to 11 octal digits (0 through 7) followed by the suffix Q (or q). These are examples of valid octal constants:

10Q	Constant equal to 8 ₁₀ or 8 ₁₆
010	Constant equal to 8 ₁₀ or 8 ₁₆ © format)
100000Q	Constant equal to 32 768 ₁₀ or 8000 ₁₆
226q	Constant equal to 150 ₁₀ or 96 ₁₆

3.7.3 Decimal Integers

A decimal integer constant is a string of decimal digits ranging from -2147 483 648 to 4 294 967 295. These are examples of valid decimal constants:

1000	Constant equal to 1000 ₁₀ or 3E8 ₁₆
-32768	Constant equal to -32 768 ₁₀ or 8000 ₁₆
25	Constant equal to 25 ₁₀ or 19 ₁₆

3.7.4 Hexadecimal Integers

A hexadecimal integer constant is a string of up to eight hexadecimal digits followed by the suffix H (or h) or preceded by 0x. Hexadecimal digits include the decimal values 0-9 and the letters A-F or a-f. A *hexadecimal constant must begin with a decimal value (0-9)*. If fewer than eight hexadecimal digits are specified, the assembler right justifies the bits. These are examples of valid hexadecimal constants:

78h	Constant equal to 120 ₁₀ or 0078 ₁₆
0x78	Constant equal to 120 ₁₀ or 0078 ₁₆ @ format)
0Fh	Constant equal to 15 ₁₀ or 000F ₁₆
37ACh	Constant equal to 14 252 ₁₀ or 37AC ₁₆

3.7.5 Character Constants

A character constant is a single character enclosed in *single* quotes. The characters are represented internally as 8-bit ASCII characters. Two consecutive single quotes are required to represent each single quote that is part of a character constant. A character constant consisting only of two single quotes is valid and is assigned the value 0. These are examples of valid character constants:

'a'	Defines the character constant a and is represented internally as 61 ₁₆
'C'	Defines the character constant C and is represented internally as 43 ₁₆
""	Defines the character constant ' and is represented internally as 27 ₁₆
"	Defines a null character and is represented internally as 00 ₁₆

Notice the difference between character *constants* and character *strings* (Section 3.8 discusses character strings). A character constant represents a single integer value; a string is a sequence of characters.

3.7.6 Assembly-Time Constants

If you use the .set directive to assign a value to a symbol (see [Define Assembly-Time Constant](#)), the symbol becomes a constant. To use this constant in expressions, the value that is assigned to it must be absolute. For example:

```
shift3 .set 3
MOV #shift3, R11
```

You can also use the .set directive to assign symbolic constants for register names. In this case, the symbol becomes a synonym for the register:

```
OP1 .set R11
MOV OP1, 2(SP)
```

3.7.7 Floating-Point Constants

A floating-point constant is a string of decimal digits followed by an optional decimal point, fractional portion, and exponent portion. The syntax for a floating-point number is:

[+|-] [nnn] . [nnn [E|e [+|-] nnn]]

Replace *nnn* with a string of decimal digits. You can precede *nnn* with a + or a -. You must specify a decimal point. For example, 3.e5 is valid, but 3e5 is not valid. The exponent indicates a power of 10. These are examples of valid character constants:

```
3.0
3.14
.3
-0.314e13
+314.59e-2
```


3.8 Character Strings

A character string is a string of characters enclosed in *double* quotes. Double quotes that are part of character strings are represented by two consecutive double quotes. The maximum length of a string varies and is defined for each directive that requires a character string. Characters are represented internally as 8-bit ASCII characters.

These are examples of valid character strings:

"sample program" defines the 14-character string *sample program*.
"PLAN ""C""" defines the 8-character string *PLAN "C"*.

Character strings are used for the following:

- Filenames, as in .copy "filename"
- Section names, as in .sect "section name"
- Data initialization directives, as in .byte "charstring"
- Operands of .string directives

3.9 Symbols

Symbols are used as labels, constants, and substitution symbols. A symbol name is a string of alphanumeric characters, the dollar sign, and underscores (A-Z, a-z, 0-9, \$, and _). The first character in a symbol cannot be a number, and symbols cannot contain embedded blanks. The symbols you define are case sensitive; for example, the assembler recognizes ABC, Abc, and abc as three unique symbols. You can override case sensitivity with the --syms_ignore_case assembler option (see [Section 3.3](#)). A symbol is valid only during the assembly in which it is defined, unless you use the .global directive or the .def directive to declare it as an external symbol (see [Identify Global Symbols](#)).

3.9.1 Labels

Symbols used as labels become symbolic addresses that are associated with locations in the program. Labels used locally within a file must be unique. Mnemonic opcodes and assembler directive names without the . prefix are valid label names.

Labels can also be used as the operands of .global, .ref, .def, or .bss directives; for example:

```
.global func

MOV     #CON1, R11
MOV     R11, 0(SP)
CALL    #func
```

3.9.2 Local Labels

Local labels are special labels whose scope and effect are temporary. A local label can be defined in two ways:

- \$n, where n is a decimal digit in the range 0-9. For example, \$4 and \$1 are valid local labels. See [Example 3-1](#).
- name?, where name is any legal symbol name as described above. The assembler replaces the question mark with a period followed by a unique number. When the source code is expanded, *you will not see the unique number in the listing file*. Your label appears with the question mark as it did in the source definition. You cannot declare this label as global.

Normal labels must be unique (they can be declared only once), and they can be used as constants in the operand field. Local labels, however, can be undefined and defined again. Local labels cannot be defined by directives.

A local label can be undefined or reset in one of these ways:

- By using the `.newblock` directive
- By changing sections (using a `.sect`, `.text`, or `.data` directive)
- By entering an include file (specified by the `.include` or `.copy` directive)
- By leaving an include file (specified by the `.include` or `.copy` directive)

Example 3-1. Local Labels of the Form \$n

This is an example of code that declares and uses a local label legally:

```
.global ADDRA, ADDRb, ADDRc
Label1: MOV #ADDRA, R11      ; Load Address A to R11.
        SUB #ADDRb, R11     ; Subtract Address B.
        JL  $1              ; If < 0, branch to $1
        MOV #ADDRb, R11     ; otherwise, load ADDRb to R11
        JMP $2              ; and branch to $2.
$1      MOV #ADDRA, R11     ; $1: load ADDRA to AC0.
$2      ADD #ADDRc, R11     ; $2: add ADDRc.
        .newblock           ; Undefine $1 so it can be used again.
        JMP $1              ; If less than zero, branch to $1.
        MOV R11, &ADDRc     ; Store AC0 low in ADDRc.
$1 NOP
```

The following code uses a local label illegally:

```
.global ADDRA, ADDRb, ADDRc
Label1: MOV #ADDRA, R11     ; Load Address A to R11.
        SUB #ADDRb, R11     ; Subtract Address B.
        JL  $1              ; If < 0, branch to $1
        MOV #ADDRb, R11     ; otherwise, load ADDRb to R11
        JMP $2              ; and branch to $2.
$1      MOV #ADDRA, R11     ; $1: load ADDRA to AC0.
$2      ADD #ADDRc, R11     ; $2: add ADDRc.
        JMP $1              ; If less than zero, branch to $1.
        MOV R11, &ADDRc     ; Store AC0 low in ADDRc.
$1 NOP
```

The \$1 label is not undefined before being reused by the second branch instruction. Therefore, \$1 is redefined, which is illegal.

Local labels are especially useful in macros. If a macro contains a normal label and is called more than once, the assembler issues a multiple-definition error. If you use a local label and `.newblock` within a macro, however, the local label is used and reset each time the macro is expanded.

Up to ten local labels of the \$n form can be in effect at one time. Local labels of the form name? are not limited. After you undefine a local label, you can define it and use it again. Local labels do not appear in the object code symbol table.

Because local labels are intended to be used only locally, branches to local labels are not expanded in case the branch's offset is out of range.

For more information about using labels in macros see [Section 5.6](#).

3.9.3 Symbolic Constants

Symbols can be set to constant values. By using constants, you can equate meaningful names with constant values. The `.set` and `.struct/.tag/.endstruct` directives enable you to set constants to symbolic names. Symbolic constants *cannot* be redefined. The following example shows how these directives can be used:

```
K      .set    1024          ; constant definitions
maxbuf .set    2*K

item   .struct          ; item structure definition
value  .int             ; constant offsets value = 0
delta  .int             ; constant offsets value = 1
i_len  .endstruct

array  .tag   item        ; array declaration
       .bss   array, i_len*K
```

The assembler also has several predefined symbolic constants; these are discussed in [Section 3.9.5](#).

3.9.4 Defining Symbolic Constants (--asm_define Option)

The `--asm_define` option equates a constant value or a string with a symbol. The symbol can then be used in place of a value in assembly source. The format of the `--asm_define` option is as follows:

cl430 --asm_define=name[=value]

The *name* is the name of the symbol you want to define. The *value* is the constant or string value you want to assign to the symbol. If the *value* is omitted, the symbol is set to 1. If you want to define a quoted string and keep the quotation marks, do one of the following:

- For Windows, use `--asm_define= name ="\" value \"`. For example, `--asm_define=car=\"sedan\"`
- For UNIX, use `--asm_define= name ="\" value \"`. For example, `--asm_define=car="sedan"`
- For Code Composer, enter the definition in a file and include that file with the `--cmd_file` (or `-@`) option.

Once you have defined the name with the `--asm_define` option, the symbol can be used in place of a constant value, a well-defined expression, or an otherwise undefined symbol used with assembly directives and instructions. For example, on the command line you enter:

```
cl430 --asm_define=SYM1=1 --asm_define=SYM2=2 --asm_define=SYM3=3 --asm_define=SYM4=4 value.asm
```

Since you have assigned values to SYM1, SYM2, SYM3, and SYM4, you can use them in source code. [Example 3-2](#) shows how the `value.asm` file uses these symbols without defining them explicitly.

Within assembler source, you can test the symbol defined with the `--asm_define` option with the following directives:

Type of Test	Directive Usage
Existence	<code>.if \$isdefed(" name ")</code>
Nonexistence	<code>.if \$isdefed(" name ") = 0</code>
Equal to value	<code>.if name = value</code>
Not equal to value	<code>.if name != value</code>

The argument to the `$isdefed` built-in function must be enclosed in quotes. The quotes cause the argument to be interpreted literally rather than as a substitution symbol.

Example 3-2. Using Symbolic Constants Defined on Command Line

```

IF_4:  .if      SYM4 = SYM2 * SYM2
        .byte   SYM4          ; Equal values
        .else
        .byte   SYM2 * SYM2   ; Unequal values
        .endif

IF_5:  .if      SYM1 <= 10
        .byte   10           ; Less than / equal
        .else
        .byte   SYM1          ; Greater than
        .endif

IF_6:  .if      SYM3 * SYM2 != SYM4 + SYM2
        .byte   SYM3 * SYM2   ; Unequal value
        .else
        .byte   SYM4 + SYM4   ; Equal values
        .endif

IF_7:  .if      SYM1 = SYM2
        .byte   SYM1
        .elseif  SYM2 + SYM3 = 5
        .byte   SYM2 + SYM3
        .endif

```

3.9.5 Predefined Symbolic Constants

The assembler has several predefined symbols, including the following types:

- **\$**, the dollar-sign character, represents the current value of the section program counter (SPC). \$ is a relocatable symbol.
- **Register symbols** (the name of MSP430 registers) include R0-R15 and their aliases. The MSP430 register aliases are defined as follows:

Register Name	Alias
R0	PC
R1	SP
R2	SR

Register symbols and aliases can be entered as all uppercase or all lowercase characters; that is, R1 could also be entered as r1, SP, or sp.

Table 3-2. Processor Symbols

Symbol name	Description
.MSP430 ⁽¹⁾	Always set to 1
.MSP430X ⁽¹⁾	Set to 1 if the --silicon_version=mspx option is specified, otherwise 0
.MSP4619 ⁽¹⁾	Set to 1 if the --silicon_version=mspx option is specified, otherwise 0
__LARGE_CODE_MODEL__	Set to 1 if the --code_model=large option is specified; otherwise 0
__LARGE_DATA_MODEL__	Set to 1 if the --data_model=large or --data_model=restricted option is specified, otherwise 0
__LONG_PTRDIFF_T__	Set to 1(indicates ptrdiff_t is a long) if the --data_model=large option is specified, otherwise 0
__UNSIGNED_LONG_SIZE_T__	Set to 1 (indicates size_t is an unsigned long) if the --data_model=large option is specified, otherwise 0
__TI_EABI__	Set to 1 if EABI is enabled (see Section 3.4); otherwise, it is set to 0

⁽¹⁾ The processor symbol can be entered as all uppercase or all lowercase characters; for example: .MSP430X could also be entered as .msp430x.

3.9.6 Substitution Symbols

Symbols can be assigned a string value (variable). This enables you to alias character strings by equating them to symbolic names. Symbols that represent character strings are called substitution symbols. When the assembler encounters a substitution symbol, its string value is substituted for the symbol name. Unlike symbolic constants, substitution symbols can be redefined.

A string can be assigned to a substitution symbol anywhere within a program; for example:

```
.asg    "SP", stack-pointer
        ; Assigns the string SP to the substitution symbol
        ; stack-pointer.
.asg    "#0x20", block2
        ; Assigns the string #0x20 to the substitution
        ; symbol block2.
ADD     block2, stack-pointer
        ; Adds the value in SP to #0x20 and stores the
        ; result in SP.
```

When you are using macros, substitution symbols are important because macro parameters are actually substitution symbols that are assigned a macro argument. The following code shows how substitution symbols are used in macros:

```
myadd .macro src, dest
        ; addl macro definition
    ADD src, dest
        ; Add the value in register dest to the value in
        ; register src.
.endm

*myadd invocation
myadd R4, R5
        ; Calls the macro addl and substitutes R4 for src
        ; and R5 for dest. The macro adds the value of R4
        ; and the value of R5.
```

See [Chapter 5](#) for more information about macros.

3.10 Expressions

An expression is a constant, a symbol, or a series of constants and symbols separated by arithmetic operators. The 32-bit ranges of valid expression values are -2147 483 648 to 2147 483 647 for signed values, and 0 to 4 294 967 295 for unsigned values. Three main factors influence the order of expression evaluation:

Parentheses	Expressions enclosed in parentheses are always evaluated first. $8 / (4 / 2) = 4$, but $8 / 4 / 2 = 1$ You <i>cannot</i> substitute braces ({ }) or brackets ([]) for parentheses.
Precedence groups	Operators, listed in Table 3-3 , are divided into nine precedence groups. When parentheses do not determine the order of expression evaluation, the highest precedence operation is evaluated first. $8 + 4 / 2 = 10$ (4 / 2 is evaluated first)
Left-to-right evaluation	When parentheses and precedence groups do not determine the order of expression evaluation, the expressions are evaluated from left to right, except for Group 1, which is evaluated from right to left. $8 / 4 * 2 = 4$, but $8 / (4 * 2) = 1$

3.10.1 Operators

Table 3-3 lists the operators that can be used in expressions, according to precedence group.

Table 3-3. Operators Used in Expressions (Precedence)

Group ⁽¹⁾	Operator	Description ⁽²⁾
1	+	Unary plus
	-	Unary minus
	~	1s complement
	!	Logical NOT
2	*	Multiplication
	/	Division
	%	Modulo
3	+	Addition
	-	Subtraction
4	<<	Shift left
	>>	Shift right
5	<	Less than
	<=	Less than or equal to
	>	Greater than
	>=	Greater than or equal to
6	=[]	Equal to
	!=	Not equal to
7	&	Bitwise AND
8	^	Bitwise exclusive OR (XOR)
9		Bitwise OR

⁽¹⁾ Group 1 operators are evaluated right to left. All other operators are evaluated left to right.

⁽²⁾ Unary + and - have higher precedence than the binary forms.

3.10.2 Expression Overflow and Underflow

The assembler checks for overflow and underflow conditions when arithmetic operations are performed at assembly time. It issues a warning (the message *Value Truncated*) whenever an overflow or underflow occurs. The assembler *does not* check for overflow or underflow in multiplication.

3.10.3 Well-Defined Expressions

Some assembler directives require well-defined expressions as operands. Well-defined expressions contain only symbols or assembly-time constants that are defined before they are encountered in the expression. The evaluation of a well-defined expression must be absolute.

This is an example of a well-defined expression:

```
1000h+X
```

where X was previously defined as an absolute symbol.

3.10.4 Conditional Expressions

The assembler supports relational operators that can be used in any expression; they are especially useful for conditional assembly. Relational operators include the following:

=	Equal to	!=	Not equal to
<	Less than	<=	Less than or equal to
>	Greater than	>=	Greater than or equal to

Conditional expressions evaluate to 1 if true and 0 if false and can be used only on operands of equivalent types; for example, absolute value compared to absolute value, but not absolute value compared to relocatable value.

3.11 Built-in Functions and Operators

The assembler supports built-in mathematical functions and built-in addressing operators.

3.11.1 Built-In Math and Trigonometric Functions

The assembler supports built-in functions for conversions and various math computations. [Table 3-4](#) describes the built-in functions. The *expr* must be a constant value.

The built-in substitution symbol functions are discussed in [Section 5.3.2](#).

Table 3-4. Built-In Mathematical Functions

Function	Description
\$acos(<i>expr</i>)	Returns the arc cosine of <i>expr</i> as a floating-point value
\$asin(<i>expr</i>)	Returns the arc sin of <i>expr</i> as a floating-point value
\$atan(<i>expr</i>)	Returns the arc tangent of <i>expr</i> as a floating-point value
\$atan2(<i>expr</i>, <i>y</i>)	Returns the arc tangent of <i>expr</i> as a floating-point value in range $[-\pi, \pi]$
\$ceil(<i>expr</i>)	Returns the smallest integer not less than <i>expr</i>
\$cos(<i>expr</i>)	Returns the cosine of <i>expr</i> as a floating-point value
\$cosh(<i>expr</i>)	Returns the hyperbolic cosine of <i>expr</i> as a floating-point value
\$cvf(<i>expr</i>)	Converts <i>expr</i> to a floating-point value
\$cvi(<i>expr</i>)	converts <i>expr</i> to integer value
\$exp(<i>expr</i>)	Returns the exponential function e^{expr}
\$fabs(<i>expr</i>)	Returns the absolute value of <i>expr</i> as a floating-point value
\$floor(<i>expr</i>)	Returns the largest integer not greater than <i>expr</i>
\$fmod(<i>expr</i>, <i>y</i>)	Returns the remainder of $expr1 \div expr2$
\$int(<i>expr</i>)	Returns 1 if <i>expr</i> has an integer value; else returns 0. Returns an integer.
\$ldexp(<i>expr</i>, <i>expr2</i>)	Multiplies <i>expr</i> by an integer power of 2. That is, $expr1 \times 2^{expr2}$
\$log(<i>expr</i>)	Returns the natural logarithm of <i>expr</i> , where $expr > 0$
\$log10(<i>expr</i>)	Returns the base 10 logarithm of <i>expr</i> , where $expr > 0$
\$max(<i>expr1</i>, <i>expr2</i>)	Returns the maximum of two values
\$min(<i>expr1</i>, <i>expr2</i>)	Returns the minimum of two values
\$pow(<i>expr1</i>, <i>expr2</i>)	Returns <i>expr1</i> raised to the power of <i>expr2</i>
\$round(<i>expr</i>)	Returns <i>expr</i> rounded to the nearest integer
\$sgn(<i>expr</i>)	Returns the sign of <i>expr</i> .
\$sin(<i>expr</i>)	Returns the sine of <i>expr</i>
\$sinh(<i>expr</i>)	Returns the hyperbolic sine of <i>expr</i> as a floating-point value
\$sqrt(<i>expr</i>)	Returns the square root of <i>expr</i> , $expr \geq 0$, as a floating-point value
\$strtod(<i>str</i>)	Converts a character string to a double precision floating-point value. The string contains a properly-formatted C99-style floating-point constant. C99-style constants are otherwise not accepted anywhere in the tools.
\$tan(<i>expr</i>)	Returns the tangent of <i>expr</i> as a floating-point value
\$tanh(<i>expr</i>)	Returns the hyperbolic tangent of <i>expr</i> as a floating-point value
\$trunc(<i>expr</i>)	Returns <i>expr</i> rounded toward 0

3.11.2 MSP430 Built-In ELF Relocation Generating Operators

The assembler supports MSP430-specific ELF relocation generating built-in operators. The operators are used in compiler-generated code to support symbolic addressing of objects.

\$HI16 and \$LO16 create an ELF relocation representing the high and low 16 bits respectively of a link-time constant (such as an address). These operators are sometimes necessary when treating a 20-bit data or function pointer as a 32-bit unsigned long value.

Example:

The following C function, when compiled for EABI in large data model, will generate the following assembly code to load the appropriate 32-bit value into the return registers.

```
/* cl430 --abi=eabi -ml -vmbspx */
extern int xyz;
unsigned long func() { return _symval(&xyz); }

    MOV.W  # $LO16(xyz), r12
    MOV.W  # $HI16(xyz), r13 ; after this instruction, the register
                           ; pair r13:r12 holds the 32-bit value of &x.
    RETA
```

3.12 Source Listings

A source listing shows source statements and the object code they produce. To obtain a listing file, invoke the assembler with the `--asm_listing` option (see [Section 3.3](#)).

Two banner lines, a blank line, and a title line are at the top of each source listing page. Any title supplied by the `.title` directive is printed on the title line. A page number is printed to the right of the title. If you do not use the `.title` directive, the name of the source file is printed. The assembler inserts a blank line below the title line.

Each line in the source file produces at least one line in the listing file. This line shows a source statement number, an SPC value, the object code assembled, and the source statement. and show these in actual listing files.

Each line in the source file produces at least one line in the listing file. This line shows a source statement number, an SPC value, the object code assembled, and the source statement. [Figure 3-2](#) shows these in an actual listing file.

Field 1: Source Statement Number

Line number

The source statement number is a decimal number. The assembler numbers source lines as it encounters them in the source file; some statements increment the line counter but are not listed. (For example, `.title` statements and statements following a `.nolist` are not listed.) The difference between two consecutive source line numbers indicates the number of intervening statements in the source file that are not listed.

Include file letter

A letter preceding the line number indicates the line is assembled from the include file designated by the letter.

Nesting level number

A number preceding the line number indicates the nesting level of macro expansions or loop blocks.

Field 2: Section Program Counter

This field contains the SPC value, which is hexadecimal. All sections (`.text`, `.data`, `.bss`, and named sections) maintain separate SPCs. Some directives do not affect the SPC and leave this field blank.

Field 3: Object Code

This field contains the hexadecimal representation of the object code. All machine instructions and directives use this field to list object code. This field also indicates the relocation type associated with an operand for this line of source code. If more than one operand is relocatable, this column indicates the relocation type for the first operand. The characters that can appear in this column and their associated relocation types are listed below:

```

!      undefined external reference
'      .text relocatable
+      .sect relocatable
"      .data relocatable
-      .bss, .usect relocatable
%      relocation expression

```

Field 4: Source Statement Field

This field contains the characters of the source statement as they were scanned by the assembler. The assembler accepts a maximum line length of 200 characters. Spacing in this field is determined by the spacing in the source statement.

Figure 3-2 shows an assembler listing with each of the four fields identified.

Figure 3-2. Example Assembler Listing

Include file letter	Line number	
	1	.copy "mac1.inc"
A	1	addfive .macro dst
A	2	ADD.W #5,dst
A	3	.endm
	2	
	3	.global var1
	4	
	5	
	6	0000 430B MOV.W #0,R11
	7	
	8	.loop 5
	9	addfive R11
	10	.endloop
1	0002	addfive R11
2	0002 503B	ADD.W #5,R11
	0004 0005	
1	0006	addfive R11
2	0006 503B	ADD.W #5,R11
	0008 0005	
1	000a	addfive R11
2	000a 503B	ADD.W #5,R11
	000c 0005	
1	000e	addfive R11
2	000e 503B	ADD.W #5,R11
	0010 0005	
1	0012	addfive R11
2	0012 503B	ADD.W #5,R11
	0014 0005	
	11	
	12	0016 4B82 MOV.W R11,&var1
		0018 0000!
Field 1	Field 2	Field 2
		Field 4

3.13 Debugging Assembly Source

When you invoke cl430 with `--symdebug:dwarf` (or `-g`) when compiling an assembly file, the assembler provides symbolic debugging information that allows you to step through your assembly code in a debugger rather than using the Disassembly window in Code Composer Studio. This enables you to view source comments and other source-code annotations while debugging.

The `.asmfunc` and `.endasmfunc` (see [Mark Function Boundaries](#)) directives enable you to use C characteristics in assembly code that makes the process of debugging an assembly file more closely resemble debugging a C/C++ source file.

The `.asmfunc` and `.endasmfunc` directives allow you to name certain areas of your code, and make these areas appear in the debugger as C functions. Contiguous sections of assembly code that are not enclosed by the `.asmfunc` and `.endasmfunc` directives are automatically placed in assembler-defined functions named with this syntax:

\$ filename : starting source line : ending source line \$

If you want to view your variables as a user-defined type in C code, the types must be declared and the variables must be defined in a C file. This C file can then be referenced in assembly code using the `.ref` directive (see [Identify Global Symbols](#)).

[Example 3-3](#) shows the `cvar.c` C program that defines a variable, `svar`, as the structure type `X`. The `svar` variable is then referenced in the `addfive.asm` assembly program in [Example 3-4](#) and 5 is added to `svar`'s second data member.

Compile both source files with the `--symdebug:dwarf` option (`-g`) and link them as follows:

```
cl430 --symdebug:dwarf cvars.c addfive.asm --run_linker --library=lnk.cmd --library=rts430.lib
      --output_file=addfive.out
```

When you load this program into a symbolic debugger, `addfive` appears as a C function. You can monitor the values in `svar` while stepping through `main` just as you would any regular C variable.

Example 3-3. Viewing Assembly Variables as C Types C Program

```
typedef struct
{
    int m1;
    int m2;
} X;
X svar = { 1, 2 };
```

Example 3-4. Assembly Program for [Example 3-3](#)

```
.ref    svar

.global addfive

addfive: .asmfunc
MOV    #5,R12
ADD    R12,&svar
ADD    R12,&svar + 2
RET
.endasmfunc
```

3.14 Cross-Reference Listings

A cross-reference listing shows symbols and their definitions. To obtain a cross-reference listing, invoke the assembler with the `--cross_reference` option (see [Section 3.3](#)) or use the `.option` directive with the `X` operand (see [Select Listing Options](#)). The assembler appends the cross-reference to the end of the source listing. [Example 3-5](#) shows the four fields contained in the cross-reference listing.

Example 3-5. An Assembler Cross-Reference Listing

LABEL	VALUE	DEFN	REF
.MSP430	0001	0	
.msp430	0001	0	
addfive	0000'	6	3
svar	REF	1	7 8

Label	column contains each symbol that was defined or referenced during the assembly.
Value	column contains an 8-digit hexadecimal number (which is the value assigned to the symbol) or a name that describes the symbol's attributes. A value may also be preceded by a character that describes the symbol's attributes. Table 3-5 lists these characters and names.
Definition	(DEFN) column contains the statement number that defines the symbol. This column is blank for undefined symbols.
Reference	(REF) column lists the line numbers of statements that reference the symbol. A blank in this column indicates that the symbol was never used.

Table 3-5. Symbol Attributes

Character or Name	Meaning
REF	External reference (global symbol)
UNDF	Undefined
'	Symbol defined in a .text section
"	Symbol defined in a .data section
+	Symbol defined in a .sect section
-	Symbol defined in a .bss or .usect section

Assembler Directives

Assembler directives supply data to the program and control the assembly process. Assembler directives enable you to do the following:

- Assemble code and data into specified sections
- Reserve space in memory for uninitialized variables
- Control the appearance of listings
- Initialize memory
- Assemble conditional blocks
- Define global variables
- Specify libraries from which the assembler can obtain macros
- Examine symbolic debugging information

This chapter is divided into two parts: the first part ([Section 4.1](#) through [Section 4.11](#)) describes the directives according to function, and the second part ([Section 4.12](#)) is an alphabetical reference.

Topic	Page
4.1 Directives Summary	52
4.2 Directives That Define Sections	56
4.3 Directives That Initialize Constants	58
4.4 Directives That Perform Alignment and Reserve Space	60
4.5 Directives That Format the Output Listings	61
4.6 Directives That Reference Other Files	62
4.7 Directives That Enable Conditional Assembly	62
4.8 Directives That Define Union or Structure Types	63
4.9 Directives That Define Enumerated Types	63
4.10 Directives That Define Symbols at Assembly Time	63
4.11 Miscellaneous Directives	64
4.12 Directives Reference	65

4.1 Directives Summary

Table 4-1 through Table 4-15 summarize the assembler directives.

Besides the assembler directives documented here, the MSP430 software tools support the following directives:

- The assembler uses several directives for macros. Macro directives are discussed in Chapter 5; they are not discussed in this chapter.
- The C compiler uses directives for symbolic debugging. Unlike other directives, symbolic debugging directives are not used in most assembly language programs. Appendix A discusses these directives; they are not discussed in this chapter.

Labels and Comments Are Not Shown in Syntaxes

NOTE: Any source statement that contains a directive can also contain a label and a comment. Labels begin in the first column (only labels and comments can appear in the first column), and comments must be preceded by a semicolon, or an asterisk if the comment is the only element in the line. To improve readability, labels and comments are not shown as part of the directive syntax.

Table 4-1. Directives That Define Sections

Mnemonic and Syntax	Description	See
.bss <i>symbol, size in bytes[, alignment]</i>	Reserves <i>size</i> bytes in the .bss (uninitialized data) section	.bss topic
.clink	Enables conditional linking for the current or specified section	.clink topic
.data	Assembles into the .data (initialized data) section	.data topic
.retain	Instructs the linker to include the current or specified section in the linked output file, regardless of whether the section is referenced or not	.retain topic
.sect "section name"	Assembles into a named (initialized) section	.sect topic
.text	Assembles into the .text (executable code) section	.text topic
<i>symbol</i> .usect "section name", <i>size in bytes</i> [, <i>alignment</i>]	Reserves <i>size</i> bytes in a named (uninitialized) section	.usect topic

Table 4-2. Directives That Initialize Values (Data and Memory)

Mnemonic and Syntax	Description	See
.byte <i>value₁[, ... , value_n]</i>	Initializes one or more successive bytes in the current section	.byte topic
.char <i>value₁[, ... , value_n]</i>	Initializes one or more successive bytes in the current section	.char topic
.cstring { <i>expr₁</i> "string ₁ "},{...},{ <i>expr_n</i> "string _n "}	Initializes one or more text strings	.string topic
.double <i>value₁[, ... , value_n]</i>	Initializes one or more 32-bit (COFF) or 64-bit (EABI), IEEE floating-point constants	.double topic
.field <i>value[, size]</i>	Initializes a field of <i>size</i> bits (1-32) with <i>value</i>	.field topic
.float <i>value₁[, ... , value_n]</i>	Initializes one or more 32-bit, IEEE single-precision, floating-point constants	.float topic
.half <i>value₁[, ... , value_n]</i>	Initializes one or more 16-bit integers (halfword)	.half topic
.int <i>value₁[, ... , value_n]</i>	Initializes one or more 16-bit integers	.int topic
.long <i>value₁[, ... , value_n]</i>	Initializes one or more 32-bit integers	.long topic
.short <i>value₁[, ... , value_n]</i>	Initializes one or more 16-bit integers (halfword)	.short topic
.string { <i>expr₁</i> "string ₁ "},{...},{ <i>expr_n</i> "string _n "}	Initializes one or more text strings	.string topic
.word <i>value₁[, ... , value_n]</i>	Initializes one or more 16-bit integers	.word topic

Table 4-3. Directives That Perform Alignment and Reserve Space

Mnemonic and Syntax	Description	See
.align [<i>size in bytes</i>]	Aligns the SPC on a boundary specified by <i>size in bytes</i> , which must be a power of 2; defaults to word (2-byte) boundary	.align topic
.bes <i>size</i>	Reserves <i>size</i> bytes in the current section; a label points to the end of the reserved space	.bes topic
.space <i>size</i>	Reserves <i>size</i> bytes in the current section; a label points to the beginning of the reserved space	.space topic

Table 4-4. Directives That Format the Output Listing

Mnemonic and Syntax	Description	See
.drlist	Enables listing of all directive lines (default)	.drlist topic
.drnolist	Suppresses listing of certain directive lines	.drnolist topic
.fclist	Allows false conditional code block listing (default)	.fclist topic
.fcnolist	Suppresses false conditional code block listing	.fcnolist topic
.length [<i>page length</i>]	Sets the page length of the source listing	.length topic
.list	Restarts the source listing	.list topic
.mlist	Allows macro listings and loop blocks (default)	.mlist topic
.mnolist	Suppresses macro listings and loop blocks	.mnolist topic
.nolist	Stops the source listing	.nolist topic
.option <i>option₁</i> [, <i>option₂</i> , . . .]	Selects output listing options; available options are A, B, H, M, N, O, R, T, W, and X	.option topic
.page	Ejects a page in the source listing	.page topic
.sslist	Allows expanded substitution symbol listing	.sslist topic
.ssnolist	Suppresses expanded substitution symbol listing (default)	.ssnolist topic
.tab <i>size</i>	Sets tab to <i>size</i> characters	.tab topic
.title " <i>string</i> "	Prints a title in the listing page heading	.title topic
.width [<i>page width</i>]	Sets the page width of the source listing	.width topic

Table 4-5. Directives That Reference Other Files

Mnemonic and Syntax	Description	See
.copy [" <i>filename</i> "]	Includes source statements from another file	.copy topic
.include [" <i>filename</i> "]	Includes source statements from another file	.include topic
.mlib [" <i>filename</i> "]	Specifies a macro library from which to retrieve macro definitions	.mlib topic

Table 4-6. Directives That Effect Symbol Linkage and Visibility

Mnemonic and Syntax	Description	See
.def <i>symbol₁</i> [, ... , <i>symbol_n</i>]	Identifies one or more symbols that are defined in the current module and that can be used in other modules	.def topic
.global <i>symbol₁</i> [, ... , <i>symbol_n</i>]	Identifies one or more global (external) symbols	.global topic
.ref <i>symbol₁</i> [, ... , <i>symbol_n</i>]	Identifies one or more symbols used in the current module that are defined in another module	.ref topic
.symdepend <i>dst symbol name</i> [, <i>src symbol name</i>]	Creates an artificial reference from a section to a symbol	.symdepend topic
.weak <i>symbol name</i>	Identifies a symbol used in the current module that is defined in another module	.weak topic

Table 4-7. Directives That Enable Conditional Assembly

Mnemonic and Syntax	Description	See
.break [<i>well-defined expression</i>]	Ends .loop assembly if <i>well-defined expression</i> is true. When using the .loop construct, the .break construct is optional.	.break topic
.else	Assembles code block if the .if <i>well-defined expression</i> is false. When using the .if construct, the .else construct is optional.	.else topic
.elseif <i>well-defined expression</i>	Assembles code block if the .if <i>well-defined expression</i> is false and the .elseif condition is true. When using the .if construct, the .elseif construct is optional.	.elseif topic
.endif	Ends .if code block	.endif topic
.endloop	Ends .loop code block	.endloop topic
.if <i>well-defined expression</i>	Assembles code block if the <i>well-defined expression</i> is true	.if topic
.loop [<i>well-defined expression</i>]	Begins repeatable assembly of a code block; the loop count is determined by the <i>well-defined expression</i> .	.loop topic

Table 4-8. Directives That Define Structure Types

Mnemonic and Syntax	Description	See
.emember	Sets up C-like enumerated types in assembly code	Section 4.9
.endenum	Sets up C-like enumerated types in assembly code	Section 4.9
.endstruct	Ends a structure definition	.struct topic
.enum	Sets up C-like enumerated types in assembly code	Section 4.9
.struct	Begins structure definition	.struct topic
.tag	Assigns structure attributes to a label	.struct topic

Table 4-9. Directives That Define Symbols at Assembly Time

Mnemonic and Syntax	Description	See
.asg [" <i>character string</i> "], <i>substitution symbol</i>	Assigns a character string to <i>substitution symbol</i>	.asg topic
<i>symbol</i> .equ <i>value</i>	Equates <i>value</i> with <i>symbol</i>	.equ topic
.elfsym <i>name</i> , SYM_SIZE(<i>size</i>)	Provides ELF symbol information	.elfsym topic
.eval <i>well-defined expression</i> , <i>substitution symbol</i>	Performs arithmetic on a numeric <i>substitution symbol</i>	.eval topic
.label <i>symbol</i>	Defines a load-time relocatable label in a section	.label topic
.newblock	Undefines local labels	.newblock topic
<i>symbol</i> .set <i>value</i>	Equates <i>value</i> with <i>symbol</i>	.set topic
.unasg <i>symbol</i>	Turns off assignment of <i>symbol</i> as a substitution symbol	.unasg topic
.undefine <i>symbol</i>	Turns off assignment of <i>symbol</i> as a substitution symbol	.unasg topic

Table 4-10. Directives That Define Common Data Sections

Mnemonic and Syntax	Description	See
.endgroup	Ends the group declaration	.endgroup topic
.gmember <i>section name</i>	Designates <i>section name</i> as a member of the group	.gmember topic
.group <i>group section name group type</i> :	Begins a group declaration	.group topic

Table 4-11. Directives That Create or Effect Macros

Mnemonic and Syntax	Description	See
.endm	End macro definition	.endm topic
.loop <i>[well-defined expression]</i>	Begins repeatable assembly of a code block; the loop count is determined by the <i>well-defined expression</i> .	.loop topic
<i>macname</i> .macro [<i>parameter₁</i>][<i>,... , parameter_n</i>]	Define macro by <i>macname</i>	.macro topic
.mexit	Go to .endm	Section 5.2
.mlib <i>filename</i>	Identify library containing macro definitions	.mlib topic
.var	Adds a local substitution symbol to a macro's parameter list	.var topic

Table 4-12. Directives That Control Diagnostics

Mnemonic and Syntax	Description	See
.emsg <i>string</i>	Sends user-defined error messages to the output device; produces no .obj file	.emsg topic
.mmsg <i>string</i>	Sends user-defined messages to the output device	.mmsg topic
.wmsg <i>string</i>	Sends user-defined warning messages to the output device	.wmsg topic

Table 4-13. Directives That Perform Assembly Source Debug

Mnemonic and Syntax	Description	See
.asmfunc	Identifies the beginning of a block of code that contains a function	.asmfunc topic
.endasmfunc	Identifies the end of a block of code that contains a function	.endasmfunc topic

Table 4-14. Directives That Are Used by the Absolute Lister

Mnemonic and Syntax	Description	See
.setsect	Produced by absolute lister; sets a section	Chapter 8
.setsym	Produced by the absolute lister; sets a symbol	Chapter 8

Table 4-15. Directives That Perform Miscellaneous Functions

Mnemonic and Syntax	Description	See
.cdecls [<i>options</i> ,]" <i>filename</i> "[, " <i>filename2</i> "[, ...]	Share C headers between C and assembly code	.cdecls topic
.end	Ends program	.end topic

In addition to the assembly directives that you can use in your code, the compiler produces several directives when it creates assembly code. These directives are to be used only by the compiler; do not attempt to use these directives.

- DWARF directives listed in [Section A.1](#)
- COFF/STABS directives listed in [Section A.2](#)
- The **.template** directive is used for early template instantiation. It encodes information about a template that has yet to be instantiated. This is a COFF C++ directive.
- The **.compiler_opts** directive indicates that the assembly code was produced by the compiler, and which build model options were used for this file.

4.2 Directives That Define Sections

These directives associate portions of an assembly language program with the appropriate sections:

- The **.bss** directive reserves space in the .bss section for uninitialized variables.
- The **.clink** directive can be used in the COFF ABI model to indicate that a section is eligible for removal at link-time via conditional linking. Thus if no other sections included in the link reference the current or specified section, then the section is not included in the link. The .clink directive can be applied to initialized or uninitialized sections.
- The **.data** directive identifies portions of code in the .data section. The .data section usually contains initialized data.
- The **.retain** directive can be used in the EABI model to indicate that the current or specified section must be included in the linked output. Thus even if no other sections included in the link reference the current or specified section, it is still included in the link.
- The **.sect** directive defines an initialized named section and associates subsequent code or data with that section. A section defined with .sect can contain code or data.
- The **.text** directive identifies portions of code in the .text section. The .text section usually contains executable code.
- The **.usect** directive reserves space in an uninitialized named section. The .usect directive is similar to the .bss directive, but it allows you to reserve space separately from the .bss section.

[Chapter 2](#) discusses these sections in detail.

[Example 4-1](#) shows how you can use sections directives to associate code and data with the proper sections. This is an output listing; column 1 shows line numbers, and column 2 shows the SPC values. (Each section has its own program counter, or SPC.) When code is first placed in a section, its SPC equals 0. When you resume assembling into a section after other code is assembled, the section's SPC resumes counting as if there had been no intervening code.

The directives in [Example 4-1](#) perform the following tasks:

.text	initializes words with the values 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, and 8.
.data	initializes words with the values 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, and 16.
var_defs	initializes words with the values 17 and 18.
.bss	reserves 19 bytes.
xy	reserves 20 bytes.

The .bss and .usect directives do not end the current section or begin new sections; they reserve the specified amount of space, and then the assembler resumes assembling code or data into the current section.

Example 4-1. Sections Directives

```

1          ; Comment1 here : Start assembling ....
2
3 0000          .text
4 0000 0001          .word   1,2
   0002 0002
5 0004 0003          .word   3,4
   0006 0004
6
7          ; Comment 2
8
9 0000          .data
10 0000 0009          .word   9,10
   0002 000A
11 0004 000B          .word   11,12
   0006 000C
12
13          ; Comment 3
14
15 0000          .sect    "var_defs"
16 0000 0011          .word   17,18
   0002 0012
17
18          ; Comment 4
19
20 0008          .data
21 0008 000D          .word   13,14
   000a 000E
22
23 0000          .bss     sym,19
24 000c 000F          .word   15,16
   000e 0010
25
26          ; Comment 5
27
28 0008          .text
29 0008 0005          .word   5,6
   000a 0006
30 0000 usym          .usect  "xy",20
31 000c 0007          .word   7,8
   000e 0008

```

4.3 Directives That Initialize Constants

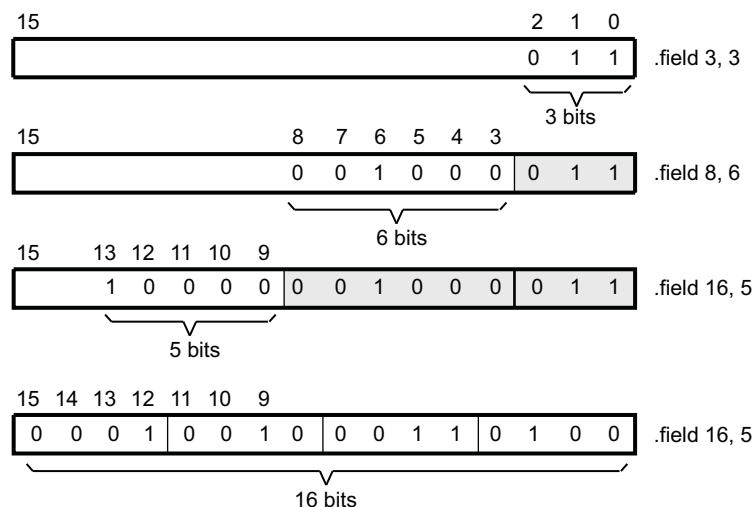
Several directives assemble values for the current section:

- The **.byte** and **.char** directives place one or more 8-bit values into consecutive bytes of the current section. These directives are similar to **.long** and **.word**, except that the width of each value is restricted to eight bits.
- The **.double** directive calculates the IEEE format representation of one or more values and stores them in the current section. For EABI, the stored value is an IEEE 64-bit double-precision floating-point value, and is stored in two words aligned to a word boundary [MSP430 has no alignment greater than word alignment]. For COFF, the stored value is an IEEE 32-bit single-precision floating-point value, and is stored in one word aligned to a word boundary.
- The **.field** directive places a single value into a specified number of bits in the current word. With **.field**, you can pack multiple fields into a single word; the assembler does not increment the SPC until a word is filled.

Figure 4-1 shows how fields are packed into a word. Using the following assembled code, notice that the SPC does not change for the first three fields (the fields are packed into the same word):

```
1 0000 0003      .field 3,3
2 0000 0043      .field 8,6
3 0000 2043      .field 16,5
4 0002 1234      .field 0x1234,16
```

Figure 4-1. The .field Directive



- The **.float** directive calculates the IEEE format representation of one or more values and stores them in the current section. The stored value is an IEEE 32-bit single-precision floating-point value, and is stored in one word aligned to a word boundary.
- The **.int** and **.word** directives place one or more 16-bit values into consecutive 16-bit values in the current section.
- The **.string** and **.cstring** directives place 8-bit characters from one or more character strings into the current section. The **.string** and **.cstring** directives are similar to **.byte**, placing an 8-bit character in each consecutive byte of the current section. The **.cstring** directive adds a NUL character needed by C; the **.string** directive does not add a NUL character.

Directives That Initialize Constants When Used in a .struct/.endstruct Sequence

NOTE: The **.byte**, **.char**, **.word**, **.int**, **.long**, **.string**, **.double**, **.float**, **.half**, **.short**, and **.field** directives do not initialize memory when they are part of a **.struct/ .endstruct** sequence; rather, they define a member's size. For more information, see the [.struct/.endstruct directives](#).

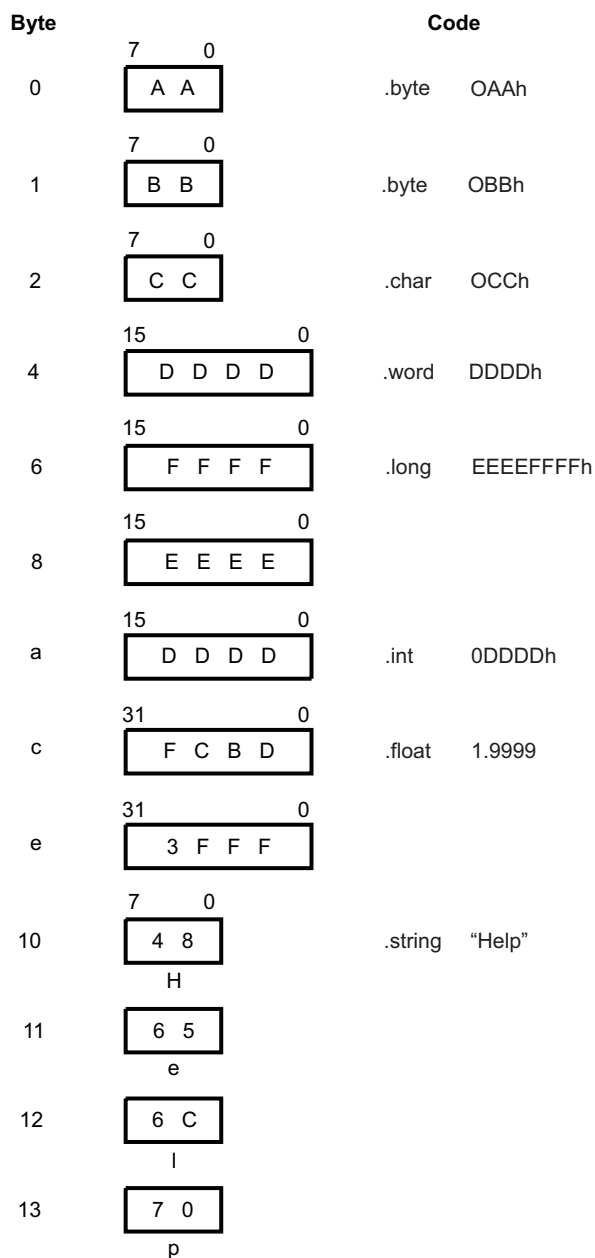
Figure 4-2 compares the .byte, .char, .int, .long, .float, .word, and .string directives. Using the following assembled code:

```

1 0000 00AA      .byte  0AAh,0BBh
   0001 00BB
2 0002 00CC      .char  0xCC
3 0004 DDDD      .word  0xDDDD
4 0006 FFFF      .long  0xFFFFFFFF
   0008 EEEE
5 000a DDDD      .int   0xDDDD
6 000c FCB9      .float  1.9999
   000e 3FFF
7 0010 0048      .string "Hello"
   0011 0065
   0012 006C
   0013 0070

```

Figure 4-2. Initialization Directives



4.4 Directives That Perform Alignment and Reserve Space

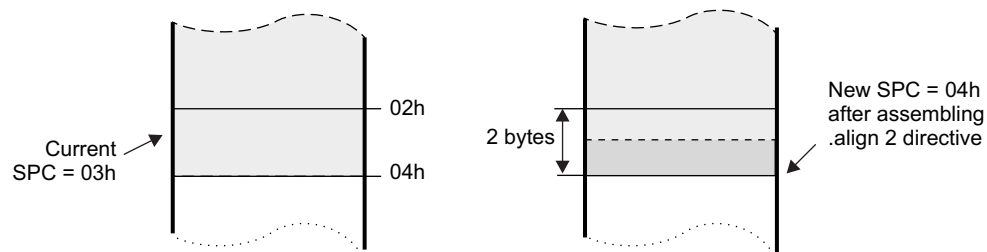
These directives align the section program counter (SPC) or reserve space in a section:

- The **.align** directive aligns the SPC at a 1-byte to 32K-byte boundary. This ensures that the code following the directive begins on the byte value that you specify. If the SPC is already aligned at the selected boundary, it is not incremented. Operands for the **.align** directive must equal a power of 2 between 2^0 and 2^{15} , inclusive.

Figure 4-3 demonstrates the **.align** directive. Using the following assembled code:

```
1 0000 0002      .field 2,3
2 0000 005A      .field 11,5
3                .align 2
4 0002 0045      .string "Err"
   0003 0072
   0004 0072
5                .align
6 0006 0004      .byte 4
```

Figure 4-3. The .align Directive



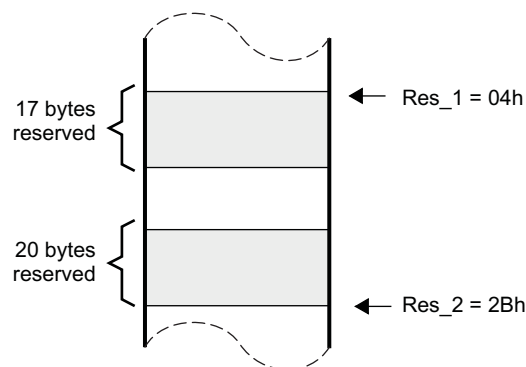
- The **.bes** and **.space** directives reserve a specified number of bytes in the current section. The assembler fills these reserved bytes with 0s.
 - When you use a label with **.space**, it points to the *first* byte that contains reserved bits.
 - When you use a label with **.bes**, it points to the *last* byte that contains reserved bits.

Figure 4-4 shows how the **.space** and **.bes** directives work for the following assembled code:

```
1 0000 0100      .word 0x100,0x200
   0002 0200
2 0004      Res_1 .space 17
3 0016 000F      .word 15
4 002b      Res_2 .bes 20
5 002c 00BA      .byte 0xBA
```

Res_1 points to the first byte in the space reserved by **.space**. Res_2 points to the last byte in the space reserved by **.bes**.

Figure 4-4. The .space and .bes Directives



4.5 Directives That Format the Output Listings

These directives format the listing file:

- The **.drlist** directive causes printing of the directive lines to the listing; the **.drnolist** directive turns it off for certain directives. You can use the **.drnolist** directive to suppress the printing of the following directives. You can use the **.drlist** directive to turn the listing on again.

.asg	.eval	.length	.mnolist	.var
.break	.fclist	.mlist	.sslist	.width
.emsg	.fcnolist	.mmsg	.ssnolist	.wmsg

- The source code listing includes false conditional blocks that do not generate code. The **.fclist** and **.fcnolist** directives turn this listing on and off. You can use the **.fclist** directive to list false conditional blocks exactly as they appear in the source code. You can use the **.fcnolist** directive to list only the conditional blocks that are actually assembled.
- The **.length** directive controls the page length of the listing file. You can use this directive to adjust listings for various output devices.
- The **.list** and **.nolist** directives turn the output listing on and off. You can use the **.nolist** directive to prevent the assembler from printing selected source statements in the listing file. Use the **.list** directive to turn the listing on again.
- The source code listing includes macro expansions and loop blocks. The **.mlist** and **.mnolist** directives turn this listing on and off. You can use the **.mlist** directive to print all macro expansions and loop blocks to the listing, and the **.mnolist** directive to suppress this listing.
- The **.option** directive controls certain features in the listing file. This directive has the following operands:

A	turns on listing of all directives and data, and subsequent expansions, macros, and blocks.
B	limits the listing of .byte and .char directives to one line.
H	limits the listing of .half and .short directives to one line.
M	turns off macro expansions in the listing.
N	turns off listing (performs .nolist).
O	turns on listing (performs .list).
R	resets the B , H , M , T , and W directives (turns off the limits of B , H , M , T , and W).
T	limits the listing of .string directives to one line.
W	limits the listing of .word and .int directives to one line.
X	produces a cross-reference listing of symbols. You can also obtain a cross-reference listing by invoking the assembler with the --cross_reference option (see Section 3.3).

- The **.page** directive causes a page eject in the output listing.
- The source code listing includes substitution symbol expansions. The **.sslist** and **.ssnolist** directives turn this listing on and off. You can use the **.sslist** directive to print all substitution symbol expansions to the listing, and the **.ssnolist** directive to suppress this listing. These directives are useful for debugging the expansion of substitution symbols.
- The **.tab** directive defines tab size.
- The **.title** directive supplies a title that the assembler prints at the top of each page.
- The **.width** directive controls the page width of the listing file. You can use this directive to adjust listings for various output devices.

4.6 Directives That Reference Other Files

These directives supply information for or about other files that can be used in the assembly of the current file:

- The **.copy** and **.include** directives tell the assembler to begin reading source statements from another file. When the assembler finishes reading the source statements in the copy/include file, it resumes reading source statements from the current file. The statements read from a copied file are printed in the listing file; the statements read from an included file are *not* printed in the listing file.
- The **.def** directive identifies a symbol that is defined in the current module and that can be used in another module. The assembler includes the symbol in the symbol table.
- The **.global** directive declares a symbol external so that it is available to other modules at link time. (For more information about global symbols, see [Section 2.7.1](#)). The **.global** directive does double duty, acting as a **.def** for defined symbols and as a **.ref** for undefined symbols. The linker resolves an undefined global symbol reference only if the symbol is used in the program. The **.global** directive declares a 16-bit symbol.
- The **.mlib** directive supplies the assembler with the name of an archive library that contains macro definitions. When the assembler encounters a macro that is not defined in the current module, it searches for it in the macro library specified with **.mlib**.
- The **.ref** directive identifies a symbol that is used in the current module but is defined in another module. The assembler marks the symbol as an undefined external symbol and enters it in the object symbol table so the linker can resolve its definition. The **.ref** directive forces the linker to resolve a symbol reference.
- The **.symdepend** directive creates an artificial reference from the section defining the source symbol name to the destination symbol. The **.symdepend** directive prevents the linker from removing the section containing the destination symbol if the source symbol section is included in the output module.

4.7 Directives That Enable Conditional Assembly

Conditional assembly directives enable you to instruct the assembler to assemble certain sections of code according to a true or false evaluation of an expression. Two sets of directives allow you to assemble conditional blocks of code:

- The **.if/.elseif/.else/.endif** directives tell the assembler to conditionally assemble a block of code according to the evaluation of an expression.

.if <i>well-defined expression</i>	marks the beginning of a conditional block and assembles code if the <i>well-defined expression</i> is true.
[.elseif <i>well-defined expression</i>]	marks a block of code to be assembled if the <i>well-defined expression</i> is false and the .elseif condition is true.
.else	marks a block of code to be assembled if the <i>well-defined expression</i> is false and any .elseif conditions are false.
.endif	marks the end of a conditional block and terminates the block.
- The **.loop/.break/.endloop** directives tell the assembler to repeatedly assemble a block of code according to the evaluation of an expression.

.loop [<i>well-defined expression</i>]	marks the beginning of a repeatable block of code. The optional expression evaluates to the loop count.
.break [<i>well-defined expression</i>]	tells the assembler to assemble repeatedly when the <i>well-defined expression</i> is false and to go to the code immediately after .endloop when the expression is true or omitted.
.endloop	marks the end of a repeatable block.

The assembler supports several relational operators that are useful for conditional expressions. For more information about relational operators, see [Section 3.10.4](#).

4.8 Directives That Define Union or Structure Types

These directives set up specialized types for later use with the `.tag` directive, allowing you to use symbolic names to refer to portions of a complex object. The types created are analogous to the struct and union types of the C language.

The `.struct` and `.union` directives group related data into an aggregate structure which is more easily accessed. These directives do not allocate space for any object. Objects must be separately allocated, and the `.tag` directive must be used to assign the type to the object.

```
type .struct          ; structure tag definition
X      .int
Y      .int
T_LEN  .endstruct

COORD .tag type       ; declare COORD (coordinate)

COORD .space T_LEN    ; actual memory allocation
LDR   R0, COORD.Y     ; load member Y of structure
                     ; COORD into register R0.
```

4.9 Directives That Define Enumerated Types

These directives set up specialized types for later use in expressions allowing you to use symbolic names to refer to compile-time constants. The types created are analogous to the enum type of the C language. This allows enumerated types to be shared between C and assembly code. See [Chapter 12](#).

See [Section 12.2.10](#) for an example of using `.enum`.

4.10 Directives That Define Symbols at Assembly Time

Assembly-time symbol directives equate meaningful symbol names to constant values or strings.

- The **`.asg`** directive assigns a character string to a substitution symbol. The value is stored in the substitution symbol table. When the assembler encounters a substitution symbol, it replaces the symbol with its character string value. Substitution symbols can be redefined.

```
.asg "10, 20, 30, 40", coefficients
    ; Assign string to substitution symbol.
.byte coefficients
    ; Place the symbol values 10, 20, 30, and 40
    ; into consecutive bytes in current section.
```

- The **`.eval`** directive evaluates a well-defined expression, translates the results into a character string, and assigns the character string to a substitution symbol. This directive is most useful for manipulating counters:

```
.asg      1 , x      ; x = 1
.loop     ; Begin conditional loop.
.byte     x*10h      ; Store value into current section.
.break    x = 4      ; Break loop if x = 4.
.eval     x+1, x      ; Increment x by 1.
.endloop   ; End conditional loop.
```

- The **`.define`** directive assigns a character string to a substitution symbol. The value is stored in the substitution symbol table. When the assembler encounters a substitution symbol, it replaces the symbol with its character string value. Substitution symbols created with `.define` cannot be redefined.
- The **`.label`** directive defines a special symbol that refers to the load-time address within the current section. This is useful when a section loads at one address but runs at a different address. For example, you may want to load a block of performance-critical code into slower off-chip memory to save space and move the code to high-speed on-chip memory to run. See the [.label topic](#) for an example using a load-time address label.

- The **.set** and **.equ** directives set a constant value to a symbol. The symbol is stored in the symbol table and cannot be redefined; for example:

```
bval .set 0100h    ; Set bval = 0100h
    .long bval, bval*2, bval+12
    ; Store the values 0100h, 0200h, and 010Ch
    ; into consecutive words in current section.
```

The **.set** and **.equ** directives produce no object code. The two directives are identical and can be used interchangeably.

- The **.unasmg** directive turns off substitution symbol assignment made with **.asg**.
- The **.undefine** directive turns off substitution symbol assignment made with **.define**.
- The **.var** directive allows you to use substitution symbols as local variables within a macro.

4.11 Miscellaneous Directives

These directives enable miscellaneous functions or features:

- The **.asmfunc** and **.endasmfunc** directives mark function boundaries. These directives are used with the compiler `--symdebug:dwarf (-g)` option to generate debug information for assembly functions.
- The **.cdecls** directive enables programmers in mixed assembly and C/C++ environments to share C headers containing declarations and prototypes between C and assembly code.
- The **.end** directive terminates assembly. If you use the **.end** directive, it should be the last source statement of a program. This directive has the same effect as an end-of-file character.
- The **.group**, **.gmember**, and **.endgroup** directives define a common data section for member of an ELF group section.
- The **.newblock** directive resets local labels. Local labels are symbols of the form `$n`, where `n` is a decimal digit, or of the form `NAME?`, where you specify `NAME`. They are defined when they appear in the label field. Local labels are temporary labels that can be used as operands for jump instructions. The **.newblock** directive limits the scope of local labels by resetting them after they are used. See [Section 3.9.2](#) for information on local labels.

These three directives enable you to define your own error and warning messages:

- The **.emsg** directive sends error messages to the standard output device. The **.emsg** directive generates errors in the same manner as the assembler, incrementing the error count and preventing the assembler from producing an object file.
- The **.mmsg** directive sends assembly-time messages to the standard output device. The **.mmsg** directive functions in the same manner as the **.emsg** and **.wmsg** directives but does not set the error count or the warning count. It does not affect the creation of the object file.
- The **.wmsg** directive sends warning messages to the standard output device. The **.wmsg** directive functions in the same manner as the **.emsg** directive but increments the warning count rather than the error count. It does not affect the creation of the object file.

For more information about using the error and warning directives in macros, see [Section 5.7](#).

4.12 Directives Reference

The remainder of this chapter is a reference. Generally, the directives are organized alphabetically, one directive per topic. Related directives (such as `.if/.else/.endif`), however, are presented together in one topic.

.align

Align SPC on the Next Boundary

Syntax

.align [*size in bytes*]

Description

The **.align** directive aligns the section program counter (SPC) on the next boundary, depending on the *size in bytes* parameter. The *size* can be any power of 2 between 2^0 and 2^{15} , inclusive. An operand of 2 aligns the SPC on the next word boundary, and this is the default if no size is given. For example:

```
2          aligns SPC to word boundary
4          aligns SPC to 2 word boundary
128       aligns SPC to 128-byte boundary
```

Using the `.align` directive has two effects:

- The assembler aligns the SPC on an x-byte boundary *within* the current section.
- The assembler sets a flag that forces the linker to align the section so that individual alignments remain intact when a section is loaded into memory.

Example

This example shows several types of alignment, including `.align 4`, `.align 8`, and a default `.align`.

```
1 0000 0004      .byte 4
2                .align 2
3 0002 0045      .string "Errorcnt"
  0003 0072
  0004 0072
  0005 006F
  0006 0072
  0007 0063
  0008 006E
  0009 0074
4                .align
5 000a 0003      .field 3,3
6 000a 002B      .field 5,4
7                .align 2
8 000c 0003      .field 3,3
9                .align 8
10 0010 0005     .field 5,4
11              .align
12 0012 0004     .byte 4
```

.asg/.define/.eval **Assign a Substitution Symbol**

Syntax

```
.asg "character string",substitution symbol
.define "character string",substitution symbol
.eval well-defined expression,substitution symbol
```

Description

The **.asg** and **.define** directives assign character strings to substitution symbols. Substitution symbols are stored in the substitution symbol table. The **.asg** directive can be used in many of the same ways as the **.set** directive, but while **.set** assigns a constant value (which cannot be redefined) to a symbol, **.asg** assigns a character string (which can be redefined) to a substitution symbol.

- The assembler assigns the *character string* to the substitution symbol.
- The *substitution symbol* must be a valid symbol name. The substitution symbol is up to 128 characters long and must begin with a letter. Remaining characters of the symbol can be a combination of alphanumeric characters, the underscore (`_`), and the dollar sign (`$`).

The **.define** directive functions in the same manner as the **.asg** directive, except that **.define** disallows creation of a substitution symbol that has the same name as a register symbol or mnemonic. It does not create a new symbol name space in the assembler, rather it uses the existing substitution symbol name space. The **.define** directive is used to prevent corruption of the assembly environment when converting C/C++ headers. See [Chapter 12](#) for more information about using C/C++ headers in assembly source.

The **.eval** directive performs arithmetic on substitution symbols, which are stored in the substitution symbol table. This directive evaluates the *well-defined expression* and assigns the string value of the result to the substitution symbol. The **.eval** directive is especially useful as a counter in **.loop/.endloop** blocks.

- The *well-defined expression* is an alphanumeric expression in which all symbols have been previously defined in the current source module, so that the result is an absolute.
- The *substitution symbol* must be a valid symbol name. The substitution symbol is up to 128 characters long and must begin with a letter. Remaining characters of the symbol can be a combination of alphanumeric characters, the underscore (`_`), and the dollar sign (`$`).

See the [.unasg/.undefine](#) topic for information on turning off a substitution symbol.

Example

This example shows how .asg and .eval can be used.

```

1          .sslist          ; show expanded sub. symbols
2                                ; using .asg and .eval
3
4          .asg      R12, LOCALSTACK
5          .asg      &, AND
6
7 0000 503C      ADD      #280 AND 255, LOCALSTACK
#          ADD      #280 & 255, R12
          0002 0018
8
9          .asg      0,x
10         .loop     5
11         .eval     x+1, x
12         .word     x
13         .endloop
1         .eval     x+1, x
#         .eval     0+1, x
1         0004 0001      .word     x
#         .word     1
1         .eval     x+1, x
#         .eval     1+1, x
1         0006 0002      .word     x
#         .word     2
1         .eval     x+1, x
#         .eval     2+1, x
1         0008 0003      .word     x
#         .word     3
1         .eval     x+1, x
#         .eval     3+1, x
1         000a 0004      .word     x
#         .word     4
1         .eval     x+1, x
#         .eval     4+1, x
1         000c 0005      .word     x
#         .word     5

```

.asmfunc/.endasmfunc *Mark Function Boundaries*

Syntax	<pre> <i>symbol</i> .asmfunc [<i>stack_usage</i>(<i>num</i>)] .endasmfunc </pre>
Description	<p>The .asmfunc and .endasmfunc directives mark function boundaries. These directives are used with the compiler -g option (--symdebug:dwarf) to allow assembly code sections to be debugged in the same manner as C/C++ functions.</p> <p>You should not use the same directives generated by the compiler (see Appendix A) to accomplish assembly debugging; those directives should be used only by the compiler to generate symbolic debugging information for C/C++ source files.</p> <p>The .asmfunc and .endasmfunc directives cannot be used when invoking the compiler with the backwards-compatibility --symdebug:coff option. This option instructs the compiler to use the obsolete COFF symbolic debugging format, which does not support these directives.</p> <p>The <i>symbol</i> is a label that must appear in the label field.</p> <p>The .asmfunc directive has an optional parameter, <i>stack_usage</i>, which sets the stack to <i>num</i> bytes.</p> <p>Consecutive ranges of assembly code that are not enclosed within a pair of .asmfunc and .endasmfunc directives are given a default name in the following format:</p> <pre>\$ filename : beginning source line : ending source line \$</pre>

.bss *Reserve Space in the .bss Section*

Syntax `.bss symbol, size in bytes[, alignment]`

Description

The **.bss** directive reserves space for variables in the .bss section. This directive is usually used to allocate space in RAM.

- The *symbol* is a required parameter. It defines a label that points to the first location reserved by the directive. The symbol name must correspond to the variable that you are reserving space for.
- The *size in bytes* is a required parameter; it must be an absolute expression. The assembler allocates size bytes in the .bss section. There is no default size.
- The *alignment* is an optional parameter that ensures that the space allocated to the symbol occurs on the specified boundary. The boundary indicates the size of the alignment in bytes and must be set to a power of 2 between 2⁰ and 2¹⁵, inclusive. If the SPC is aligned at the specified boundary, it is not incremented.

For more information about sections, see [Chapter 2](#).

Example

In this example, the .bss directive allocates space for two variables, TEMP and ARRAY. The symbol TEMP points to four bytes of uninitialized space (at .bss SPC = 0). The symbol ARRAY points to 100 bytes of uninitialized space (at .bss SPC = 04h). Symbols declared with the .bss directive can be referenced in the same manner as other symbols and can also be declared external.

```

1          *****
2          ** Start assembling into the .text section. **
3          *****
4 0000          .text
5 0000 430A      MOV      #0, R10
6
7          *****
8          ** Allocate 4 bytes in .bss for TEMP.      **
9          *****
10 0000 Var_1: .bss      TEMP, 4
11
12          *****
13          ** Still in .text.                          **
14          *****
15 0002 503B      ADD      #56h, R11
16 0004 0056
17 0006 5C0B      ADD      R12, R11
18
19          *****
20          ** Allocate 100 bytes in .bss for the symbol **
21          ** named ARRAY.                            **
22          *****
23 0004          .bss      ARRAY, 100, 4
24
25          *****
26          ** Assemble more code into .text.          **
27          *****
28 0008 4130      RET
29
30          *****
31          ** Declare external .bss symbols.          **
32          *****
33          .global ARRAY, TEMP
          .end

```

.byte/.char

Initialize Byte

Syntax

```
.byte value1[, ... , valuen]
```

```
.char value1[, ... , valuen]
```

Description

The **.byte** and **.char** directives place one or more values into consecutive bytes of the current section. A *value* can be one of the following:

- An expression that the assembler evaluates and treats as an 8-bit signed number
- A character string enclosed in double quotes. Each character in a string represents a separate value, and values are stored in consecutive bytes. The entire string *must* be enclosed in quotes.

The assembler truncates values greater than eight bits.

If you use a label, it points to the location of the first byte that is initialized.

When you use these directives in a **.struct/.endstruct** sequence, they define a member's size; they do not initialize memory. For more information, see the [.struct/.endstruct/.tag](#) topic.

Example

In this example, 8-bit values (10, -1, abc, and a) are placed into consecutive bytes in memory with **.byte**. Also, 8-bit values (8, -3, def, and b) are placed into consecutive bytes in memory with **.char**. The label STRX has the value 0h, which is the location of the first initialized byte. The label STRY has the value 6h, which is the first byte initialized by the **.char** directive.

```
1 0000                                .space 100h
2 0100 000A STRX .byte 10, -1, "abc", 'a'
   0101 00FF
   0102 0061
   0103 0062
   0104 0063
   0105 0061
3 0106 0008                                .char 8, -3, "def", 'b'
   0107 00FD
   0108 0064
   0109 0065
   010a 0066
   010b 0062
```

.cdecls *Share C Headers Between C and Assembly Code*

Syntax

Single Line:

```
.cdecls [options ,] " filename "[, " filename2 "[,...]]
```

Syntax

Multiple Lines:

```
.cdecls [options]
%{
/*-----*/
/* C/C++ code - Typically a list of #includes and a few defines */
/*-----*/
%}
```

Description

The **.cdecls** directive allows programmers in mixed assembly and C/C++ environments to share C headers containing declarations and prototypes between the C and assembly code. Any legal C/C++ can be used in a **.cdecls** block and the C/C++ declarations cause suitable assembly to be generated automatically, allowing you to reference the C/C++ constructs in assembly code; such as calling functions, allocating space, and accessing structure members; using the equivalent assembly mechanisms. While function and variable definitions are ignored, most common C/C++ elements are converted to assembly, for instance: enumerations, (non-function-like) macros, function and variable prototypes, structures, and unions.

The **.cdecls** options control whether the code is treated as C or C++ code; and how the **.cdecls** block and converted code are presented. Options must be separated by commas; they can appear in any order:

C	Treat the code in the .cdecls block as C source code (default).
CPP	Treat the code in the .cdecls block as C++ source code. This is the opposite of the C option.
NOLIST	Do not include the converted assembly code in any listing file generated for the containing assembly file (default).
LIST	Include the converted assembly code in any listing file generated for the containing assembly file. This is the opposite of the NOLIST option.
NOWARN	Do not emit warnings on STDERR about C/C++ constructs that cannot be converted while parsing the .cdecls source block (default).
WARN	Generate warnings on STDERR about C/C++ constructs that cannot be converted while parsing the .cdecls source block. This is the opposite of the NOWARN option.

In the single-line format, the options are followed by one or more filenames to include. The filenames and options are separated by commas. Each file listed acts as if **#include "filename"** was specified in the multiple-line format.

In the multiple-line format, the line following **.cdecls** must contain the opening **.cdecls** block indicator **%{**. Everything after the **%{**, up to the closing block indicator **%}**, is treated as C/C++ source and processed. Ordinary assembler processing then resumes on the line following the closing **%}**.

The text within **%{** and **%}** is passed to the C/C++ compiler to be converted into assembly language. Much of C language syntax, including function and variable definitions as well as function-like macros, is not supported and is ignored during the conversion. However, all of what traditionally appears in C header files is supported, including function and variable prototypes; structure and union declarations; non-function-like macros; enumerations; and **#define**'s.

The resulting assembly language is included in the assembly file at the point of the `.cdecls` directive. If the `LIST` option is used, the converted assembly statements are printed in the listing file.

The assembly resulting from the `.cdecls` directive is treated similarly to a `.include` file. Therefore the `.cdecls` directive can be nested within a file being copied or included. The assembler limits nesting to ten levels; the host operating system may set additional restrictions. The assembler precedes the line numbers of copied files with a letter code to identify the level of copying. An A indicates the first copied file, B indicates a second copied file, etc.

The `.cdecls` directive can appear anywhere in an assembly source file, and can occur multiple times within a file. However, the C/C++ environment created by one `.cdecls` is **not** inherited by a later `.cdecls`; the C/C++ environment starts new for each `.cdecls`.

See [Chapter 12](#) for more information on setting up and using the `.cdecls` directive with C header files.

Example

In this example, the `.cdecls` directive is used call the C header.h file.

C header file:

```
#define WANT_ID 10
#define NAME "John\n"

extern int a_variable;
extern float cvt_integer(int src);

struct myCstruct { int member_a; float member_b; };

enum status_enum { OK = 1, FAILED = 256, RUNNING = 0 };
```

Source file:

```
.cdecls C,LIST,"myheader.h"

size:      .int $sizeof(myCstruct)
aoffset:   .int myCstruct.member_a
boffset:   .int myCstruct.member_b
okvalue:   .int status_enum.OK
failval:   .int status_enum.FAILED
           .if $defined(WANT_ID)
id         .cstring NAME
           .endif
```

Listing File:

```

1          .cdecls C,LIST,"myheader.h"
A 1          ; -----
A 2          ; Assembly Generated from C/C++ Source Code
A 3          ; -----
A 4
A 5          ; ===== MACRO DEFINITIONS =====
A 6              .define "1",WANT_ID
A 7              .define "" "John\n" "",NAME
A 8              .define "1",_OPTIMIZE_FOR_SPACE
A 9
A 10         ; ===== TYPE DEFINITIONS =====
A 11         status_enum      .enum
A 12             0001 OK      .emember 1
A 13             0100 FAILED  .emember 256
A 14             0000 RUNNING .emember 0
A 15             .endenum
A 16
A 17         myCstruct        .struct 0,2          ; struct size=(6 bytes|48 bits), alignment=2
A 18             0000 member_a .field 16          ; int member_a -
offset 0 bytes, size (2 bytes|16 bits)
A 19             0002 member_b .field 32          ; float member_b -
offset 2 bytes, size (4 bytes|32 bits)
```



```

A 20      0006      .endstruct      ; final size=(6 bytes|48 bits)
A 21
A 22      ; ===== EXTERNAL FUNCTIONS =====
A 23      .global cvt_integer
A 24
A 25      ; ===== EXTERNAL VARIABLES =====
A 26      .global a_variable
2
3 0000 0006 size: .int $sizeof(myCstruct)
4 0002 0000 aoffset: .int myCstruct.member_a
5 0004 0002 boffset: .int myCstruct.member_b
6 0006 0001 okvalue: .int status_enum.OK
7 0008 0100 failval: .int status_enum.FAILED
8          .if $defined(WANT_ID)
9 000a 004A id      .cstring NAME
000b 006F
000c 0068
000d 006E
000e 000A
000f 0000
10          .endif

```

.clink/.retain

Conditionally Leave Section Out of Object Module Output

Syntax

.clink["section name"]

Description

The **.clink** directive enables conditional linking by telling the linker to leave a section out of the final object module output of the linker if there are no references found to any symbol in that section. The **.clink** directive can be applied to initialized sections.

The **.clink** directive is useful only with the COFF object file format. Under the COFF ABI model, the linker assumes that all sections are ineligible for removal via conditional linking by default. If you want to make a section eligible for removal, you must apply a **.clink** directive to it. In contrast, under the ELF EABI model, the linker assumes that all sections are eligible for removal via conditional linking. Therefore, the **.clink** directive has no effect under EABI.

A section in which the entry point of a C program is defined cannot be marked as a conditionally linked section.

The **.retain** directive indicates that the current or specified section is not eligible for removal via conditional linking. You can also override conditional linking for a given section with the **--retain** linker option. You can disable conditional linking entirely with the **--unused_section_elimination=off** linker option.

Since under the ELF EABI model the linker assumes that all sections are eligible for removal via conditional linking by default, the **.retain** directive becomes useful for overriding the default conditional linking behavior for those sections that you want to keep included in the link, even if the section is not referenced by any other section in the link. For example, you could apply a **.retain** directive to an interrupt function that you have written in assembly language, but which is not referenced from any normal entry point in the application.

Under the COFF ABI model, the linker assumes that all sections are not eligible for removal via conditional linking by default. So under the COFF ABI mode, the **.retain** directive does not have any real effect on the section.

Example

In this example, the Vars and Counts sections are set for conditional linking.

```

1          *****
2          ** Set Vars section for conditional linking. **
3          *****
4 0000          .sect "Vars"
5              .clink
6 0000 00AA X:   .word 0AAh
7 0002 00AA Y:   .word 0AAh
8 0004 00AA Z:   .word 0AAh
9          *****
10         ** Set Counts section for conditional linking. **
11         *****
12 0000          .sect "Counts"
13              .clink
14 0000 00AA XCount: .word 0AAh
15 0002 00AA YCount: .word 0AAh
16 0004 00AA ZCount: .word 0AAh
17         *****
18         ** .text is unconditionally linked by default. **
19         *****
20 0000          .text
21 0000 403B      MOV  #X_addr, R11
22 0002 0008!
23 0004 4B2B      MOV  @R11, R11
24 0006 5B0C      ADD  R11, R12
25 0008 0000! X_addr: .field X, 32
26 000a 0000
27         *****
28         ** The reference to symbol X causes the Vars **
29         ** section to be linked into the COFF output. **
30         *****

```

.copy/.include

Copy Source File

Syntax

```
.copy "filename"
```

```
.include "filename"
```

Description

The **.copy** and **.include** directives tell the assembler to read source statements from a different file. The statements that are assembled from a copy file are printed in the assembly listing. The statements that are assembled from an included file are *not* printed in the assembly listing, regardless of the number of **.list/.nolist** directives assembled.

When a **.copy** or **.include** directive is assembled, the assembler:

1. Stops assembling statements in the current source file
2. Assembles the statements in the copied/included file
3. Resumes assembling statements in the main source file, starting with the statement that follows the **.copy** or **.include** directive

The *filename* is a required parameter that names a source file. It is enclosed in double quotes and must follow operating system conventions.

You can specify a full pathname (for example, /320tools/file1.asm). If you do not specify a full pathname, the assembler searches for the file in:

1. The directory that contains the current source file
2. Any directories named with the **--include_path** assembler option
3. Any directories specified by the **MSP430_A_DIR** environment variable
4. Any directories specified by the **MSP430_C_DIR** environment variable

For more information about the **--include_path** option and **MSP430_A_DIR**, see [Section 3.5](#). For more information about **MSP430_C_DIR**, see the *MSP430 Optimizing C/C++ Compiler User's Guide*.

The **.copy** and **.include** directives can be nested within a file being copied or included. The assembler limits nesting to 32 levels; the host operating system may set additional restrictions. The assembler precedes the line numbers of copied files with a letter code to identify the level of copying. A indicates the first copied file, B indicates a second copied file, etc.

Example 1

In this example, the **.copy** directive is used to read and assemble source statements from other files; then, the assembler resumes assembling into the current file.

The original file, **copy.asm**, contains a **.copy** statement copying the file **byte.asm**. When **copy.asm** assembles, the assembler copies **byte.asm** into its place in the listing (note listing below). The copy file **byte.asm** contains a **.copy** statement for a second file, **word.asm**.

When it encounters the **.copy** statement for **word.asm**, the assembler switches to **word.asm** to continue copying and assembling. Then the assembler returns to its place in **byte.asm** to continue copying and assembling. After completing assembly of **byte.asm**, the assembler returns to **copy.asm** to assemble its remaining statement.

copy.asm (source file)	byte.asm (first copy file)	word.asm (second copy file)
<pre>.space 29 .copy "byte.asm" ** Back in original file .string "done"</pre>	<pre>** In byte.asm .byte 32,1+ 'A' .copy "word.asm" ** Back in byte.asm .byte 67h + 3q</pre>	<pre>** In word.asm .word 0ABCDh, 56q</pre>

Listing file:

```

1 0000          .space 29
2              .copy "byte.asm"
A 1              ** In byte.asm
A 2 001d 0020    .byte 32,1+ 'A'
    001e 0042
A 3              .copy "word.asm"
B 1              ** In word.asm
B 2 0020 ABCD    .word 0ABCDh, 56q
    0022 002E
A 4              ** Back in byte.asm
A 5 0024 006A    .byte 67h + 3q
    3
    4              ** Back in original file
5 0025 0064      .string "done"
    0026 006F
    0027 006E
    0028 0065

```

Example 2

In this example, the `.include` directive is used to read and assemble source statements from other files; then, the assembler resumes assembling into the current file. The mechanism is similar to the `.copy` directive, except that statements are not printed in the listing file.

include.asm (source file)	byte2.asm (first copy file)	word2.asm (second copy file)
<pre> .space 29 .include "byte2.asm" ** Back in original file .string "done" </pre>	<pre> ** In byte2.asm .byte 32,1+ 'A' .include "word2.asm" ** Back in byte2.asm .byte 67h + 3q </pre>	<pre> ** In word2.asm .word 0ABCDh, 56q </pre>

Listing file:

```

1 0000          .space 29
2              .include "byte2.asm"
3
4              **Back in original file
5 0025 0064      .string "done"
    0026 006F
    0027 006E
    0028 0065

```

.data *Assemble Into the .data Section*

Syntax

.data

Description

The **.data** directive tells the assembler to begin assembling source code into the .data section; .data becomes the current section. The .data section is normally used to contain tables of data or preinitialized variables.

For more information about sections, see [Chapter 2](#).

Example

In this example, code is assembled into the .data and .text sections.

```

1          ; Comments here
2 0000          .data
3 0000          .space 0xCC
4
5
6          ; Comments here
7 0000          .text
8 0000      INDEX      .set 0
9 0000 430B      MOV     #INDEX,R11
10
11
12
13          ; Comments here
14 00cc      Table:  .data
15 00cc FFFF          .word -1
16 00ce 00FF          .byte 0xFF
17
18
19
20          ; Comments here
21 0002          .text
22 0002 00CC! con    .field Table,16
23 0004 421B      MOV     &con,R11
24 0006 0002!
25 0008 5B1C      ADD     0(R11),R12
26 000a 0000
27 00cf          .data

```


.drlist/.drnolist *Control Listing of Directives*

Syntax

.drlist

.drnolist

Description

Two directives enable you to control the printing of assembler directives to the listing file:

The **.drlist** directive enables the printing of all directives to the listing file.

The **.drnolist** directive suppresses the printing of the following directives to the listing file. The **.drnolist** directive has no affect within macros.

- .asg
- .break
- .emsg
- .eval
- .fclist
- .fcnolist
- .mlist
- .mmsg
- .mnolist
- .sslist
- .ssnolist
- .var
- .wmsg

By default, the assembler acts as if the **.drlist** directive had been specified.

Example

This example shows how **.drnolist** inhibits the listing of the specified directives.

Source file:

```
.asg    0, x
.loop   2
.eval   x+1, x
.endloop
.drnolist
.asg    1, x
.loop   3
.eval   x+1, x
.endloop
```

Listing file:

```
1          .asg    0, x
2          .loop   2
3          .eval   x+1, x
4          .endloop
1          .eval   0+1, x
1          .eval   1+1, x
5
6          .drnolist
7
9          .loop   3
10         .eval   x+1, x
11        .endloop
```

.elfsym

ELF Symbol Information

Syntax

.elfsym *name*, **SYM_SIZE**(*size*)

Description

The .elfsym directive provides additional information for symbols in the ELF format. This directive is designed to convey different types of information, so the *type*, *data* pair is used to represent each type. Currently, this directive only supports the SYM_SIZE type.

SYM_SIZE indicates the allocation size (in bytes) of the symbol indicated by *name*.

Example

This example shows the use of the ELF symbol information directive.

```
.sect      ".examp"
.alignment 4
.elfsym    ex_sym, SYM_SIZE(4)
.ex_sym:
```

.emsg/.mmsg/.wmsg Define Messages

Syntax

.emsg *string*

.mmsg *string*

.wmsg *string*

Description

These directives allow you to define your own error and warning messages. When you use these directives, the assembler tracks the number of errors and warnings it encounters and prints these numbers on the last line of the listing file.

The **.emsg** directive sends an error message to the standard output device in the same manner as the assembler. It increments the error count and prevents the assembler from producing an object file.

The **.mmsg** directive sends an assembly-time message to the standard output device in the same manner as the .emsg and .wmsg directives. It does not, however, set the error or warning counts, and it does not prevent the assembler from producing an object file.

The **.wmsg** directive sends a warning message to the standard output device in the same manner as the .emsg directive. It increments the warning count rather than the error count, however. It does not prevent the assembler from producing an object file.

Example

In this example, the message ERROR -- MISSING PARAMETER is sent to the standard output device.

Source file:

```
MSG_EX .macro parml
        .if    $symlen(parml) = 0
        .emsg  "ERROR -- MISSING PARAMETER"
        .else
            ADD    parml, r7, r8
        .endif
        .endm
MSG_EX R11
MSG_EX
```


Listing file:

```

1          MSG_EX      .macro    parm1
2                      .if      $symlen(parm1)=0
3                      .emsg    "ERROR -- MISSING PARAMETER"
4                      .else
5                      ADD     parm1, r7
6                      .endif
7                      .endm
8
9 0000          MSG_EX R11
1                     .if      $symlen(parm1)=0
1                     .emsg    "ERROR -- MISSING PARAMETER"
1                     .else
1                     ADD     R11, r7
1                     .endif
10
11 0002        MSG_EX
1                     .if      $symlen(parm1)=0
1                     .emsg    "ERROR -- MISSING PARAMETER"
"emsg.asm", ERROR!  at line 11: [ ***** USER ERROR ***** - ] ERROR --
MISSING PARAMETER
1                     .else
1                     ADD     parm1, r7
1                     .endif

```

```
1 Assembly Error, No Assembly Warnings
```

In addition, the following messages are sent to standard output by the assembler:

```
*** ERROR!      line 11: ***** USER ERROR ***** - : ERROR -- MISSING PARAMETER
                  .emsg "ERROR -- MISSING PARAMETER"
```

```
1 Error, No Warnings
Errors in source - Assembler Aborted
```

.end *End Assembly*

Syntax `.end`

Description The **.end** directive is optional and terminates assembly. The assembler ignores any source statements that follow a **.end** directive. If you use the **.end** directive, it must be the last source statement of a program.

This directive has the same effect as an end-of-file character. You can use **.end** when you are debugging and you want to stop assembling at a specific point in your code.

Ending a Macro

NOTE: Do not use the **.end** directive to terminate a macro; use the **.endm** macro directive instead.

Example This example shows how the **.end** directive terminates assembly. If any source statements follow the **.end** directive, the assembler ignores them.

Source file:

```
START:  .space 300
TEMP    .set  15
        .bss  LOC1,0x48
LOCL_n  .word  LOC1
        MOV   #TEMP,R11
        MOV   &LOCL_n,R12
        MOV   0(R12),R13
        .end
        .byte  4
        .word  0xCCC
```

Listing file:

```
1 0000          START:  .space 300
2      000F  TEMP    .set  15
3 0000          .bss  LOC1,0x48
4 012c 0000! LOCL_n  .word  LOC1
5 012e 403B      MOV   #TEMP,R11
      0130 000F
6 0132 421C      MOV   &LOCL_n,R12
      0134 012C!
7 0136 4C1D      MOV   0(R12),R13
      0138 0000
8          .end
```

.fclist/.fcnolist **Control Listing of False Conditional Blocks**

Syntax

.fclist

.fcnolist

Description

Two directives enable you to control the listing of false conditional blocks:

The **.fclist** directive allows the listing of false conditional blocks (conditional blocks that do not produce code).

The **.fcnolist** directive suppresses the listing of false conditional blocks until a **.fclist** directive is encountered. With **.fcnolist**, only code in conditional blocks that are actually assembled appears in the listing. The **.if**, **.elseif**, **.else**, and **.endif** directives do not appear.

By default, all conditional blocks are listed; the assembler acts as if the **.fclist** directive had been used.

Example

This example shows the assembly language and listing files for code with and without the conditional blocks listed.

Source file:

```
AAA .set 1
BB .set 0
.fclist
.if AAA
ADD #1024,R11
.else
ADD #1024*10,R11
.endif
.fcnolist
.if AAA
ADD #1024,R11
.else
ADD #1024*10,R11
.endif
```

Listing file:

```
1      0001  AAA      .set 1
2      0000  BB       .set 0
3                               .fclist
4                               .if AAA
5 0000 503B      ADD #1024,R11
      0002 0400
6                               .else
7                               ADD #1024*10,R11
8                               .endif
9                               .fcnolist
11 0004 503B      ADD #1024,R11
      0006 0400
```

.field

Initialize Field

Syntax

```
.field value[, size in bits]
```

Description

The **.field** directive initializes a multiple-bit field within a single word (16 bits) of memory. This directive has two operands:

- The *value* is a required parameter; it is an expression that is evaluated and placed in the field. The value must be absolute.
- The *size in bits* is an optional parameter; it specifies a number from 1 to 32, which is the number of bits in the field. If you do not specify a size, the assembler assumes the size is 16 bits. If you specify a value that cannot fit in *size in bits*, the assembler truncates the value and issues a warning message. For example, **.field 3,1** causes the assembler to truncate the value 3 to 1; the assembler also prints the message:

```
*** WARNING! line 21: W0001: Field value truncated to 1
      .field 3, 1
```

Successive **.field** directives pack values into the specified number of bits.

You can use the **.align** directive to force the next **.field** directive to begin packing into a new word.

If you use a label, it points to the byte that contains the specified field.

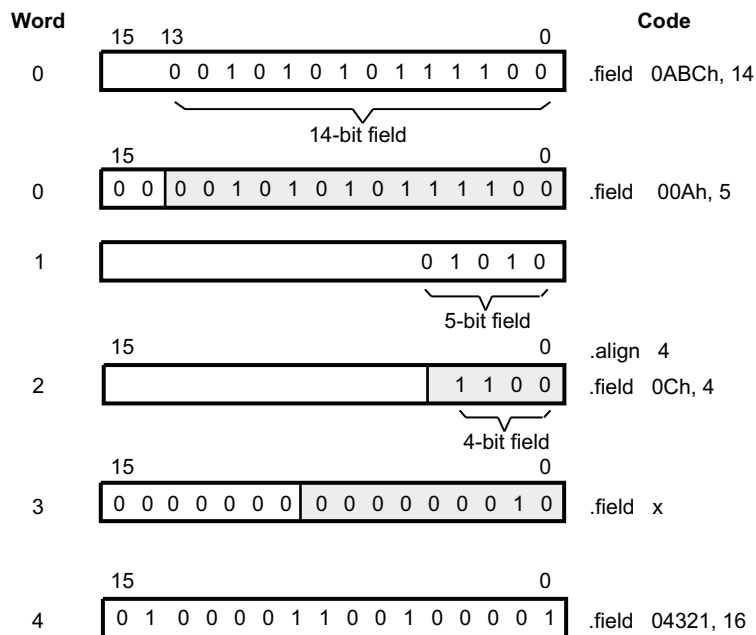
When you use **.field** in a **.struct/.endstruct** sequence, **.field** defines a member's size; it does not initialize memory. For more information, see the [.struct/.endstruct/.tag topic](#).

Example

This example shows how fields are packed into a word. The SPC does not change until a word is filled and the next word is begun. [Figure 4-7](#) shows how the directives in this example affect memory.

```
1          *****
2          **      Initialize a 14-bit field.  **
3          *****
4 0000 0ABC      .field  0ABCh, 14
5
6          *****
7          **      Initialize a 5-bit field   **
8          **      in the same word.         **
9          *****
10 0002 000A L_F: .field  0Ah, 5
11
12          *****
13          **      Write out the word.       **
14          *****
15          .align  4
16
17          *****
18          **      Initialize a 4-bit field.  **
19          **      This fields starts a new word. **
20          *****
21 0004 000C x:   .field  0Ch, 4
22
23          *****
24          **      16-bit relocatable field   **
25          **      in the next word.         **
26          *****
27 0006 0004!    .field  x
28
29          *****
30          **      Initialize a 16-bit field.  **
31          *****
32 0008 4321      .field  04321h, 16
```

Figure 4-7. The .field Directive



.global/.def/.ref

Identify Global Symbols

Syntax

```
.global symbol1[, ... , symboln]
```

```
.def symbol1[, ... , symboln]
```

```
.ref symbol1[, ... , symboln]
```

Description

Three directives identify global symbols that are defined externally or can be referenced externally:

The **.def** directive identifies a symbol that is defined in the current module and can be accessed by other files. The assembler places this symbol in the symbol table.

The **.ref** directive identifies a symbol that is used in the current module but is defined in another module. The linker resolves this symbol's definition at link time.

The **.global** directive acts as a **.ref** or a **.def**, as needed.

A global *symbol* is defined in the same manner as any other symbol; that is, it appears as a label or is defined by the **.set**, **.equ**, **.bss**, or **.usect** directive. As with all symbols, if a global symbol is defined more than once, the linker issues a multiple-definition error. The **.ref** directive always creates a symbol table entry for a symbol, whether the module uses the symbol or not; **.global**, however, creates an entry only if the module actually uses the symbol.

A symbol can be declared global for either of two reasons:

- If the symbol is *not defined in the current module* (which includes macro, copy, and include files), the **.global** or **.ref** directive tells the assembler that the symbol is defined in an external module. This prevents the assembler from issuing an unresolved reference error. At link time, the linker looks for the symbol's definition in other modules.
- If the symbol is *defined in the current module*, the **.global** or **.def** directive declares that the symbol and its definition can be used externally by other modules. These types of references are resolved at link time.

Example

This example shows four files. The file1.lst and file2.lst refer to each other for all symbols used; file3.lst and file4.lst are similarly related.

The **file1.lst** and **file3.lst** files are equivalent. Both files define the symbol INIT and make it available to other modules; both files use the external symbols X, Y, and Z. Also, file1.lst uses the **.global** directive to identify these global symbols; file3.lst uses **.ref** and **.def** to identify the symbols.

The **file2.lst** and **file4.lst** files are equivalent. Both files define the symbols X, Y, and Z and make them available to other modules; both files use the external symbol INIT. Also, file2.lst uses the **.global** directive to identify these global symbols; file4.lst uses **.ref** and **.def** to identify the symbols.

file1.lst

```

1          ; Global symbol defined in this file
2          .global INIT
3          ; Global symbols defined in file2.lst
4          .global X, Y, Z
5 0000     INIT:
6 0000 503B      ADD      #56h, R11
   0002 0056
7 0004 0000!      .word    X
8          ;
9          ;
10         ;
11         .end
```

file2.lst

```

1          ; Global symbols defined in this file
2          .global X, Y, Z
3          ; Global symbol defined in file1.lst
4          .global INIT
5 0001      X:      .set      1
6 0002      Y:      .set      2
7 0003      Z:      .set      3
8 0000 0000! .word    INIT
9          ;      .
10         ;      .
11         ;      .
12         .end

```

file3.lst

```

1          ; Global symbol defined in this file
2          .def INIT
3          ; Global symbols defined in file2.lst
4          .ref X, Y, Z
5 0000      INIT:
6 0000 503B      ADD     #56h, R11
7 0002 0056
7 0004 0000! .word    X
8          ;      .
9          ;      .
10         ;      .
11         .end

```

file4.lst

```

1          ; Global symbols defined in this file
2          .def X, Y, Z
3          ; Global symbol defined in file3.lst
4          .ref INIT
5 0001      X:      .set      1
6 0002      Y:      .set      2
7 0003      Z:      .set      3
8 0000 0000! .word    INIT
9          ;      .
10         ;      .
11         ;      .
12         .end

```

.group/.gmember/.endgroup *Define Common Data Section*

Syntax

```
.group  group section name group type
.gmember section name
.endgroup
```

Description

Three directives instruct the assembler to make certain sections members of an ELF group section (see ELF specification for more information on group sections).

The **.group** directive begins the group declaration. The *group section name* designates the name of the group section. The *group type* designates the type of the group. The following types are supported:

```
0x0      Regular ELF group
0x1      COMDAT ELF group
```

The **.gmember** directive designates *section name* as a member of the group.

The **.endgroup** directive ends the group declaration.

.half/.short

Initialize 16-Bit Integers

Syntax

```
.half value1[, ... , valuen]
```

```
.short value1[, ... , valuen]
```

Description

The **.half** and **.short** directives place one or more values into consecutive halfwords in the current section. A *value* can be either:

- An expression that the assembler evaluates and treats as a 16-bit signed or unsigned number
- A character string enclosed in double quotes. Each character in a string represents a separate value and is stored alone in the least significant eight bits of a 16-bit field, which is padded with 0s.

The assembler truncates values greater than 16 bits.

If you use a label with **.half** or **.short**, it points to the location where the assembler places the first byte.

These directives perform a word (16-bit) alignment before data is written to the section.

When you use **.half** or **.short** in a **.struct/.endstruct** sequence, they define a member's size; they do not initialize memory. For more information, see the [.struct/.endstruct/.tag](#) topic.

Example

In this example, **.half** is used to place 16-bit values (10, -1, abc, and a) into consecutive halfwords in memory; **.short** is used to place 16-bit values (8, -3, def, and b) into consecutive halfwords in memory. The label STRN has the value 100ch, which is the location of the first initialized halfword for **.short**.

```

1 0000                                .space 100h * 16
2 1000 000A                            .half 10, -1, "abc", 'a'
   1002 FFFF
   1004 0061
   1006 0062
   1008 0063
   100a 0061
3 100c 0008 STRN                      .short 8, -3, "def", 'b'
   100e FFFD
   1010 0064
   1012 0065
   1014 0066
   1016 0062
```

.if/.elseif/.else/.endif Assemble Conditional Blocks

Syntax

```
.if well-defined expression
[.elseif well-defined expression]
[.else]
.endif
```

Description

Four directives provide conditional assembly:

The **.if** directive marks the beginning of a conditional block. The *well-defined expression* is a required parameter.

- If the expression evaluates to true (nonzero), the assembler assembles the code that follows the expression (up to a **.elseif**, **.else**, or **.endif**).
- If the expression evaluates to false (0), the assembler assembles code that follows a **.elseif** (if present), **.else** (if present), or **.endif** (if no **.elseif** or **.else** is present).

The **.elseif** directive identifies a block of code to be assembled when the **.if** expression is false (0) and the **.elseif** expression is true (nonzero). When the **.elseif** expression is false, the assembler continues to the next **.elseif** (if present), **.else** (if present), or **.endif** (if no **.elseif** or **.else** is present). The **.elseif** directive is optional in the conditional block, and more than one **.elseif** can be used. If an expression is false and there is no **.elseif** statement, the assembler continues with the code that follows a **.else** (if present) or a **.endif**.

The **.else** directive identifies a block of code that the assembler assembles when the **.if** expression and all **.elseif** expressions are false (0). The **.else** directive is optional in the conditional block; if an expression is false and there is no **.else** statement, the assembler continues with the code that follows the **.endif**.

The **.endif** directive terminates a conditional block.

The **.elseif** and **.else** directives can be used in the same conditional assembly block, and the **.elseif** directive can be used more than once within a conditional assembly block.

See [Section 3.10.4](#) for information about relational operators.

Example

This example shows conditional assembly:

```

1      0001  SYM1  .set    1
2      0002  SYM2  .set    2
3      0003  SYM3  .set    3
4      0004  SYM4  .set    4
5
6      If_4:  .if      SYM4 = SYM2 * SYM2
7 0000 0004      .byte   SYM4          ; Equal values
8              .else
9              .byte   SYM2 * SYM2      ; Unequal values
10             .endif
11
12      If_5:  .if      SYM1 <= 10
13 0001 000A      .byte   10          ; Equal values
14              .else
15              .byte   SYM1          ; Unequal values
16             .endif
17
18      If_6:  .if      SYM3 * SYM2 != SYM4 + SYM2
19              .byte   SYM3 * SYM2      ; Unequal value
20              .else
21 0002 0008      .byte   SYM4 + SYM4      ; Equal values
22             .endif
23
24      If_7:  .if      SYM1 = SYM2
25              .byte   SYM1
```

```

26                                     .elseif SYM2 + SYM3 = 5
27 0003 0005                         .byte    SYM2 + SYM3
28                                     .endif

```

.int/.long

Initialize 16-Bit Integers

Syntax

```

.int value1[, ... , valuen]
.long value1[, ... , valuen]

```

Description

The **.int** and **.long** directives place one or more values into consecutive words in the current section. Each value is placed in a 16-bit word by itself and is aligned on a word boundary. A *value* can be either:

- An expression that the assembler evaluates and treats as a 16-bit signed or unsigned number
- A character string enclosed in double quotes. Each character in a string represents a separate value and is stored alone in the least significant eight bits of a 16-bit field, which is padded with 0s.

A value can be either an absolute or a relocatable expression. If an expression is relocatable, the assembler generates a relocation entry that refers to the appropriate symbol; the linker can then correctly patch (relocate) the reference. This allows you to initialize memory with pointers to variables or labels.

If you use a label with these directives, it points to the first word that is initialized.

When you use these directives in a **.struct/.endstruct** sequence, they define a member's size; they do not initialize memory. See the [.struct/.endstruct/.tag](#) topic.

Example

In this example, the **.int** and **.word** directives are used to initialize words. The symbol **WORDX** points to the first word that is reserved by **.word**.

```

1 0000                                     .space 73h
2 0000                                     .bss    PAGE, 128
3 0080                                     .bss    SYMPTR, 4
4 0074 403B INST: MOV    #056h, R11
   0076 0056
5 0078 000A                               .int    10, SYMPTR, -1, 35 + 'a', INST, "abc"
   007a 0080!
   007c FFFF
   007e 0084
   0080 0074!
   0082 0061
   0084 0062
   0086 0063
6 0000 0C80 WORDX: .word  3200, 1 + 'AB', -0AFh, 'X'
   0002 4242
   0004 FF51
   0006 0058

```

.label *Create a Load-Time Address Label*

Syntax `.label symbol`

Description The **.label** directive defines a special *symbol* that refers to the load-time address rather than the run-time address within the current section. Most sections created by the assembler have relocatable addresses. The assembler assembles each section as if it started at 0, and the linker relocates it to the address at which it loads and runs.

For some applications, it is desirable to have a section load at one address and run at a *different* address. For example, you may want to load a block of performance-critical code into slower memory to save space and then move the code to high-speed memory to run it. Such a section is assigned two addresses at link time: a load address and a run address. All labels defined in the section are relocated to refer to the run-time address so that references to the section (such as branches) are correct when the code runs.

The **.label** directive creates a special label that refers to the *load-time* address. This function is useful primarily to designate where the section was loaded for purposes of the code that relocates the section.

Example This example shows the use of a load-time address label.

```
sect ".examp"
    .label examp_load ; load address of section
start:                ; run address of section
    <code>
finish:               ; run address of section end
    .label examp_end ; load address of section end
```

See [Section 7.5.5](#) for more information about assigning run-time and load-time addresses in the linker.

.length/.width

Set Listing Page Size

Syntax

.length [*page length*]

.width [*page width*]

Description

Two directives allow you to control the size of the output listing file.

The **.length** directive sets the page length of the output listing file. It affects the current and following pages. You can reset the page length with another **.length** directive.

- Default length: 60 lines. If you do not use the **.length** directive or if you use the **.length** directive without specifying the *page length*, the output listing length defaults to 60 lines.
- Minimum length: 1 line
- Maximum length: 32 767 lines

The **.width** directive sets the page width of the output listing file. It affects the next line assembled and the lines following. You can reset the page width with another **.width** directive.

- Default width: 132 characters. If you do not use the **.width** directive or if you use the **.width** directive without specifying a *page width*, the output listing width defaults to 132 characters.
- Minimum width: 80 characters
- Maximum width: 200 characters

The width refers to a full line in a listing file; the line counter value, SPC value, and object code are counted as part of the width of a line. Comments and other portions of a source statement that extend beyond the page width are truncated in the listing.

The assembler does not list the **.width** and **.length** directives.

Example

The following example shows how to change the page length and width.

```
*****
**      Page length = 65 lines      **
**      Page width = 85 characters  **
*****
        .length    65
        .width     85

*****
**      Page length = 55 lines      **
**      Page width = 100 characters **
*****
        .length    55
        .width     100
```

.list/.nolist

Start/Stop Source Listing

Syntax

.list

.nolist

Description

Two directives enable you to control the printing of the source listing:

The **.list** directive allows the printing of the source listing.

The **.nolist** directive suppresses the source listing output until a **.list** directive is encountered. The **.nolist** directive can be used to reduce assembly time and the source listing size. It can be used in macro definitions to suppress the listing of the macro expansion.

The assembler does not print the **.list** or **.nolist** directives or the source statements that appear after a **.nolist** directive. However, it continues to increment the line counter. You can nest the **.list/.nolist** directives; each **.nolist** needs a matching **.list** to restore the listing.

By default, the source listing is printed to the listing file; the assembler acts as if the **.list** directive had been used. However, if you do not request a listing file when you invoke the assembler by including the **--asm_listing** option on the command line (see [Section 3.3](#)), the assembler ignores the **.list** directive.

Example

This example shows how the **.copy** directive inserts source statements from another file. The first time this directive is encountered, the assembler lists the copied source lines in the listing file. The second time this directive is encountered, the assembler does not list the copied source lines, because a **.nolist** directive was assembled. The **.nolist**, the second **.copy**, and the **.list** directives do not appear in the listing file. Also, the line counter is incremented, even when source statements are not listed.

Source file:

```
* Back in original file
NOP
.nolist
.copy "copy2.asm"
.list
* Back in original file
.string "Done"
```

Listing file:

```
1 .copy "copy2.asm"
A 1 * In copy2.asm (copy file)
A 2 0000 0020 .word 32, 1 + 'A'
0002 0042
2 * Back in original file
3 0004 4303 NOP
7 * Back in original file
8 000a 0044 .string "Done"
000b 006F
000c 006E
000d 0065
```

.long

Initialize 32-Bit Integer

Syntax

.long *value₁*, ... , *value_n*

Description

The .long directive places one or more values into consecutive words in the current section. A value can be either:

- An expression that the assembler evaluates and treats as a 32-bit signed or unsigned number
- A character string enclosed in double quotes. Each character in a string represents a separate value and is stored alone in the least significant eight bits of a 32-bit field, which is padded with 0s.

A value can be either an absolute or a relocatable expression. If an expression is relocatable, the assembler generates a relocation entry that refers to the appropriate symbol; the linker can then correctly patch (relocate) the reference. This allows you to initialize memory with pointers to variables or labels.

The .long directive performs a word (16-bit) alignment before any data is written to the section.

When you use .long directive in a .struct/.endstruct sequence, it defines a member's size; it does not initialize memory. See the [.struct/.endstruct/.tag](#) topic.

Example

This example shows how the .long directive initializes words. The symbol DAT1 points to the first word that is reserved.

```

1 0000 ABCD DAT1: .long 0ABCDh, 'A' + 100h, 'g', 'o'
   0002 0000
   0004 0141
   0006 0000
   0008 0067
   000a 0000
   000c 006F
   000e 0000
2 0010 0000!      .long DAT1, 0AABBCCDDh
   0012 0000
   0014 CCDD
   0016 AABB
3 0018          DAT2:

```

.loop/.endloop/.break Assemble Code Block Repeatedly

Syntax

```
.loop [well-defined expression]  
.break [well-defined expression]  
.endloop
```

Description Three directives allow you to repeatedly assemble a block of code:

The **.loop** directive begins a repeatable block of code. The optional expression evaluates to the loop count (the number of loops to be performed). If there is no *well-defined expression*, the loop count defaults to 1024, unless the assembler first encounters a **.break** directive with an expression that is true (nonzero) or omitted.

The **.break** directive, along with its expression, is optional. This means that when you use the **.loop** construct, you do not have to use the **.break** construct. The **.break** directive terminates a repeatable block of code only if the *well-defined expression* is true (nonzero) or omitted, and the assembler breaks the loop and assembles the code after the **.endloop** directive. If the expression is false (evaluates to 0), the loop continues.

The **.endloop** directive terminates a repeatable block of code; it executes when the **.break** directive is true (nonzero) or when the number of loops performed equals the loop count given by **.loop**.

Example This example illustrates how these directives can be used with the **.eval** directive. The code in the first six lines expands to the code immediately following those six lines.

```
1          .eval      0,x  
2      COEF .loop  
3          .word      x*100  
4          .eval      x+1, x  
5          .break     x = 6  
6          .endloop  
1      0000 0000      .word      0*100  
1          .eval      0+1, x  
1          .break     1 = 6  
1      0002 0064      .word      1*100  
1          .eval      1+1, x  
1          .break     2 = 6  
1      0004 00C8      .word      2*100  
1          .eval      2+1, x  
1          .break     3 = 6  
1      0006 012C      .word      3*100  
1          .eval      3+1, x  
1          .break     4 = 6  
1      0008 0190      .word      4*100  
1          .eval      4+1, x  
1          .break     5 = 6  
1      000a 01F4      .word      5*100  
1          .eval      5+1, x  
1          .break     6 = 6
```


.macro/.endm
Define Macro
Syntax

```

macname .macro [parameter1 [, ... , parametern]]
           model statements or macro directives
           .endm

```

Description

The **.macro** and **.endm** directives are used to define macros.

You can define a macro anywhere in your program, but you must define the macro before you can use it. Macros can be defined at the beginning of a source file, in an `.include/.copy` file, or in a macro library.

<i>macname</i>	names the macro. You must place the name in the source statement's label field.
.macro	identifies the source statement as the first line of a macro definition. You must place .macro in the opcode field.
[<i>parameters</i>]	are optional substitution symbols that appear as operands for the .macro directive.
<i>model statements</i>	are instructions or assembler directives that are executed each time the macro is called.
<i>macro directives</i>	are used to control macro expansion.
.endm	marks the end of the macro definition.

Macros are explained in further detail in [Chapter 5](#).

.mlib

Define Macro Library

Syntax

```
.mlib "filename"
```

Description

The **.mlib** directive provides the assembler with the *filename* of a macro library. A macro library is a collection of files that contain macro definitions. The macro definition files are bound into a single file (called a library or archive) by the archiver.

Each file in a macro library contains one macro definition that corresponds to the name of the file. The *filename* of a macro library member must be the same as the macro name, and its extension must be .asm. The filename must follow host operating system conventions; it can be enclosed in double quotes. You can specify a full pathname (for example, c:\320tools\macs.lib). If you do not specify a full pathname, the assembler searches for the file in the following locations in the order given:

1. The directory that contains the current source file
2. Any directories named with the --include_path assembler option
3. Any directories specified by the MSP430_A_DIR environment variable
4. Any directories specified by the MSP430_C_DIR environment variable

See [Section 3.5](#) for more information about the --include_path option.

When the assembler encounters a .mlib directive, it opens the library specified by the *filename* and creates a table of the library's contents. The assembler enters the names of the individual library members into the opcode table as library entries. This redefines any existing opcodes or macros that have the same name. If one of these macros is called, the assembler extracts the entry from the library and loads it into the macro table. The assembler expands the library entry in the same way it expands other macros, but it does not place the source code into the listing. Only macros that are actually called from the library are extracted, and they are extracted only once. See [Chapter 5](#).

Example

The code creates a macro library that defines two macros, inc4.asm and dec4.asm. The file inc4.asm contains the definition of inc4 and dec4.asm contains the definition of dec4.

inc4.asm	dec4.asm
<pre>* Macro for incrementing inc4 .macro reg ADD.W #1, reg ADD.W #1, reg ADD.W #1, reg ADD.W #1, reg .endm</pre>	<pre>* Macro for decrementing dec4 .macro reg SUB.W #1, reg SUB.W #1, reg SUB.W #1, reg SUB.W #1, reg .endm</pre>

Use the archiver to create a macro library:

```
ar430 -a mac inc4.asm dec4.asm
```

Now you can use the .mlib directive to reference the macro library and define the inc4.asm and dec4.asm macros:

```

1                                .mlist
2                                .mlib "mac.lib"
3                                ; Macro call
4 0000                inc4    R11, R12, R13, R14
1 0000 531B                ADD.W #1,R11
1 0002 531C                ADD.W #1,R12
1 0004 531D                ADD.W #1,R13
1 0006 531E                ADD.W #1,R14
5
6                                ; Macro call
7 0008                dec4    R11, R12, R13, R14
1 0008 831B                SUB.W #1,R11
1 000a 831C                SUB.W #1,R12
1 000c 831D                SUB.W #1,R13
1 000e 831E                SUB.W #1,R14
```

.mlist/.mnolist *Start/Stop Macro Expansion Listing*

Syntax

.mlist

.mnolist

Description

Two directives enable you to control the listing of macro and repeatable block expansions in the listing file:

The **.mlist** directive allows macro and .loop/.endloop block expansions in the listing file.

The **.mnolist** directive suppresses macro and .loop/.endloop block expansions in the listing file.

By default, the assembler behaves as if the .mlist directive had been specified.

See [Chapter 5](#) for more information on macros and macro libraries. See the [.loop/.break/.endloop](#) topic for information on conditional blocks.

Example

This example defines a macro named STR_3. The first time the macro is called, the macro expansion is listed (by default). The second time the macro is called, the macro expansion is not listed, because a .mnolist directive was assembled. The third time the macro is called, the macro expansion is again listed because a .mlist directive was assembled.

```

1          STR_3  .macro    P1, P2, P3
2                      .string ":p1:", ":p2:", ":p3:"
3                      .endm
4
5 0000          STR_3 "as", "I", "am"    ; Invoke STR_3 macro.
1 0000 003A          .string ":p1:", ":p2:", ":p3:"
   0001 0070
   0002 0031
   0003 003A
   0004 003A
   0005 0070
   0006 0032
   0007 003A
   0008 003A
   0009 0070
   000a 0033
   000b 003A
6          .mnolist                ; Suppress expansion.
7 000c          STR_3 "as", "I", "am"    ; Invoke STR_3 macro.
8          .mlist                    ; Show macro expansion.
9 0018          STR_3 "as", "I", "am"    ; Invoke STR_3 macro.
1 0018 003A          .string ":p1:", ":p2:", ":p3:"
   0019 0070
   001a 0031
   001b 003A
   001c 003A
   001d 0070
   001e 0032
   001f 003A
   0020 003A
   0021 0070
   0022 0033
   0023 003A

```

.newblock

Terminate Local Symbol Block

Syntax

.newblock

Description

The **.newblock** directive undefines any local labels currently defined. Local labels, by nature, are temporary; the **.newblock** directive resets them and terminates their scope.

A local label is a label in the form $\$n$, where n is a single decimal digit, or *name?*, where *name* is a legal symbol name. Unlike other labels, local labels are intended to be used locally, cannot be used in expressions, and do not qualify for branch expansion if used with a branch. They can be used only as operands in 8-bit jump instructions. Local labels are not included in the symbol table.

After a local label has been defined and (perhaps) used, you should use the **.newblock** directive to reset it. The **.text**, **.data**, and **.sect** directives also reset local labels. Local labels that are defined within an include file are not valid outside of the include file.

See [Section 3.9.2](#) for more information on the use of local labels.

Example

This example shows how the local label $\$1$ is declared, reset, and then declared again.

```

1          .global ADDRA,ADDRB,ADDRC
2
3 0000 403B Label1: MOV #ADDRA, R11 ; Load Address A to R11
   0002 0000!
4 0004 803B          SUB #ADDRB, R11 ; Subtract Address B.
   0006 0000!
5 0008 3803          JL $1           ; If < 0, branch to $1
6 000a 403B          MOV #ADDRB, R11 ; otherwise, load ADDRb to R11
   000c 0000!
7 000e 3C02          JMP $2           ; and branch to $2
8 0010 403B $1       MOV #ADDRA, R11 ; $1: load ADDRA to AC0.
   0012 0000!
9 0014 503B $2       ADD #ADDRC, R11 ; $2: add ADDRc.
   0016 0000!
10
11          .newblock                ; Undefine $1 so can be used again.
11 0018 3C02          JMP $1           ; If less than zero, branch to $1.
12 001a 4B82          MOV R11,&ADDRC  ; Store AC0 low in ADDRc.
   001c 0000!
13 001e 4303 $1       NOP

```

.option

Select Listing Options

Syntax

.option *option*₁[, *option*₂, . . .]

Description

The **.option** directive selects options for the assembler output listing. The *options* must be separated by commas; each option selects a listing feature. These are valid options:

- A** turns on listing of all directives and data, and subsequent expansions, macros, and blocks.
- B** limits the listing of **.byte** and **.char** directives to one line.
- H** limits the listing of **.half** and **.short** directives to one line.
- L** limits the listing of **.long** directives to one line.
- M** turns off macro expansions in the listing.
- N** turns off listing (performs **.nolist**).
- O** turns on listing (performs **.list**).
- R** resets any B, H, M, T, and, W (turns off the limits of B, H, M, T, and, W).
- T** limits the listing of **.string** directives to one line.
- W** limits the listing of **.word** and **.int** directives to one line.
- X** produces a cross-reference listing of symbols. You can also obtain a cross-reference listing by invoking the assembler with the **--cross_reference** option (see [Section 3.3](#)).

Options *are not* case sensitive.

Example

This example shows how to limit the listings of the **.byte**, **.char**, **.int**, **.long**, **.word**, and **.string** directives to one line each.

```

1          *****
2          ** Limit the listing of .byte, .char, .int, .long, **
3          ** .word, and .string directives to 1 line each. **
4          *****
5          .option B, W, T
6 0000 00BD      .byte   -'C', 0B0h, 5
7 0003 00BC      .char   -'D', 0C0h, 6
8 0006 000A      .int    10, 35 + 'a', "abc"
9 0010 CCDD      .long   0AABCCDDh, 536 + 'A'
10         0012 AABB
11         0014 0259
12         0016 0000
13 0018 15AA      .word   5546, 78h
14 001c 0045      .string "Extended Registers"
15
16          *****
17          **          Reset the listing options.          **
18          *****
19          .option R
20 002e 00BD      .byte   -'C', 0B0h, 5
21         002f 00B0
22         0030 0005
23 0031 00BC      .char   -'D', 0C0h, 6
24         0032 00C0
25         0033 0006
26 0034 000A      .int    10, 35 + 'a', "abc"
27         0036 0084
28         0038 0061
29         003a 0062
30         003c 0063
31 003e CCDD      .long   0AABCCDDh, 536 + 'A'
32         0040 AABB
33         0042 0259

```

```

0044 0000
21 0046 15AA      .word  5546, 78h
0048 0078
22 004a 0045      .string "Extended Registers"
004b 0078
004c 0074
004d 0065
004e 006E
004f 0064
0050 0065
0051 0064
0052 0020
0053 0052
0054 0065
0055 0067
0056 0069
0057 0073
0058 0074
0059 0065
005a 0072
005b 0073

```

.page

Eject Page in Listing

Syntax

.page

Description

The **.page** directive produces a page eject in the listing file. The .page directive is not printed in the source listing, but the assembler increments the line counter when it encounters the .page directive. Using the .page directive to divide the source listing into logical divisions improves program readability.

Example

This example shows how the .page directive causes the assembler to begin a new page of the source listing.

Source file:

```

Source file (generic)
.title      "**** Page Directive Example ****"
;          .
;          .
;          .
        .page

```

Listing file:

```

MSP430 COFF Assembler PC vx.x.x      Day      Time      Year

Tools Copyright (c) 2003-2011 Texas Instruments Incorporated
**** Page Directive Example ****                                           PAGE 1

      2          ;          .
      3          ;          .
      4          ;          .
MSP430 COFF Assembler PC vx.x.x      Day      Time      Year

Tools Copyright (c) 2003-2011 Texas Instruments Incorporated
**** Page Directive Example ****

```

.sect *Assemble Into Named Section*

Syntax `.sect " section name "`

Description The **.sect** directive defines a named section that can be used like the default **.text** and **.data** sections. The **.sect** directive tells the assembler to begin assembling source code into the named section.

The *section name* identifies the section. The section name must be enclosed in double quotes. A section name can contain a subsection name in the form *section name : subsection name*.

See [Chapter 2](#) for more information about sections.

Example This example defines a special-purpose section named **Vars** and assembles code into it.

```

1          *****
2          **      Begin assembling into .text section.      **
3          *****
4 0000          .text
5 0000 403B      MOV #0x78,R11
   0002 0078
6 0004 503B      ADD #0x78,R11
   0006 0078
7          *****
8          **      Begin assembling into Vars section.      **
9          *****
10 0000          .sect "Vars"
11 0000 CCCD      .float 0.05
   0002 3D4C
12 0004 00AA      X: .word 0xAA
13          *****
14          **      Resume assembling into .text section.      **
15          *****
16 0008          .text
17 0008 5B0C      ADD R11,R12
18          *****
19          **      Resume assembling into Vars section.      **
20          *****
21 0006          .sect "Vars"
22 0006 000D      .field 13
23 0008 000A      .field 0xA
24 000a 0010      .field 0x10

```

.set/.equ

Define Assembly-Time Constant

Syntax

symbol **.set** *value*

symbol **.equ** *value*

Description

The **.set** and **.equ** directives equate a constant value to a symbol. The symbol can then be used in place of a value in assembly source. This allows you to equate meaningful names with constants and other values. The **.set** and **.equ** directives are identical and can be used interchangeably.

- The *symbol* is a label that must appear in the label field.
- The *value* must be a well-defined expression, that is, all symbols in the expression must be previously defined in the current source module.

Undefined external symbols and symbols that are defined later in the module cannot be used in the expression. If the expression is relocatable, the symbol to which it is assigned is also relocatable.

The value of the expression appears in the object field of the listing. This value is not part of the actual object code and is not written to the output file.

Symbols defined with **.set** or **.equ** can be made externally visible with the **.def** or **.global** directive (see the [.global/.def/.ref topic](#)). In this way, you can define global absolute constants.

Example

This example shows how symbols can be assigned with **.set** and **.equ**.

```

1          *****
2          **   Equate symbol ACCUM to register R11 and use   **
3          **           it instead of the register.           **
4          *****
5 000B     ACCUM    .set R11
6 0000 401B          MOV 0x56, ACCUM
7          0002 0054
8
9          *****
10         **   Set symbol INDEX to an integer expression   **
11         **           and use it as an immediate operand.   **
12         *****
13 0035     INDEX    .equ 100/2 + 3
14         0004 503B          ADD #INDEX, ACCUM
15         0006 0035
16
17         *****
18         **   Set symbol SYMTAB to a relocatable expression **
19         **           and use it as a relocatable operand.   **
20         *****
21 0008 000A LABEL    .word 10
22         0009! SYMTAB .set LABEL + 1
23
24         *****
25         **   Set symbol NSYMS equal to the symbol INDEX   **
26         **           and use it as you would INDEX.       **
27         *****
28         0035 NSYMS    .set INDEX
29         000a 0035          .word NSYMS

```


.space/.bes

Reserve Space

Syntax

```
[label] .space size in bytes
```

```
[label] .bes size in bytes
```

Description

The **.space** and **.bes** directives reserve the number of bytes given by *size in bytes* in the current section and fill them with 0s. The section program counter is incremented to point to the word following the reserved space.

When you use a label with the **.space** directive, it points to the *first* byte reserved. When you use a label with the **.bes** directive, it points to the *last* reserved.

Example

This example shows how memory is reserved with the **.space** and **.bes** directives.

```

1          *****
2          **   Begin assembling into the .text section.   **
3          *****
4 0000          .text
5
6          *****
7          **   Reserve 0F0 bytes in the .text section.   **
8          *****
9 0000          .space  0F0h
10 00f0 0100    .word   100h, 200h
    00f2 0200
11
12          **   Begin assembling into the .data section.   **
13          *****
14 0000          .data
15 0000 0049    .string "In .data"
    0001 006E
    0002 0020
    0003 002E
    0004 0064
    0005 0061
    0006 0074
    0007 0061
16
17          ** Reserve 100 bytes in the .data section; RES_1 **
18          **   points to the first byte that contains     **
19          **   reserved bytes.                             **
20          *****
21 0008    RES_1: .space  100
22 006c 000F    .word   15
23 006e 0008!   .word   RES_1
24
25          ** Reserve 20 bits in the .data section; RES_2 **
26          **   points to the last byte that contains     **
27          **   reserved bytes.                             **
28          *****
29 0083    RES_2: .bes    20
30 0084 0036    .word   36h
31 0086 0083!   .word   RES_2

```

.sslist/.ssnolist **Control Listing of Substitution Symbols**

Syntax

.sslist

.ssnolist

Description

Two directives allow you to control substitution symbol expansion in the listing file:

The **.sslist** directive allows substitution symbol expansion in the listing file. The expanded line appears below the actual source line.

The **.ssnolist** directive suppresses substitution symbol expansion in the listing file.

By default, all substitution symbol expansion in the listing file is suppressed; the assembler acts as if the **.ssnolist** directive had been used.

Lines with the pound (#) character denote expanded substitution symbols.

Example

This example shows code that, by default, suppresses the listing of substitution symbol expansion, and it shows the **.sslist** directive assembled, instructing the assembler to list substitution symbol code expansion.

```

1          SHIFT  .macro  dst,amount
2          .loop   amount
3          RLA     dst
4          .endloop
5          .endm
6
7          .global value
8
9 0000          SHIFT  R5,3
1         .loop   3
1         RLA     dst
1         .endloop
2         0000 5505  RLA     R5
2         0002 5505  RLA     R5
2         0004 5505  RLA     R5
10        0006 5582  ADD     R5,&value
          0008 0000!
11
12          .sslist
13
14 000a          SHIFT  R5,3
1         .loop   amount
#         .loop   3
1         RLA     dst
1         .endloop
2         000a 5505  RLA     dst
#         RLA     R5
2         000c 5505  RLA     dst
#         RLA     R5
2         000e 5505  RLA     dst
#         RLA     R5

```

.string/.cstring

Initialize Text

Syntax

```
.string {expr1 | "string1" } [, ... , {exprn | "stringn" } ]
```

```
.cstring {expr1 | "string1" } [, ... , {exprn | "stringn" } ]
```

Description

The **.string** and **.cstring** directives place 8-bit characters from a character string into the current section. The *expr* or *string* can be one of the following:

- An expression that the assembler evaluates and treats as an 8-bit signed number.
- A character string enclosed in double quotes. Each character in a string represents a separate value, and values are stored in consecutive bytes. The entire string *must* be enclosed in quotes.

The **.cstring** directive adds a NUL character needed by C; the **.string** directive does not add a NUL character. In addition, **.cstring** interprets C escapes (`\\` `\a` `\b` `\f` `\n` `\r` `\t` `\v` `\<octal>`).

The assembler truncates any values that are greater than eight bits. Operands must fit on a single source statement line.

If you use a label, it points to the location of the first byte that is initialized.

When you use **.string** and **.cstring** in a **.struct/.endstruct** sequence, the directive only defines a member's size; it does not initialize memory. For more information, see the [.struct/.endstruct/.tag](#) topic.

Example

In this example, 8-bit values are placed into consecutive words in the current section.

```
1 0000 0041 Str_Ptr:  .string  "ABCD"
   0001 0042
   0002 0043
   0003 0044
2 0004 0041          .string  41h, 42h, 43h, 44h
   0005 0042
   0006 0043
   0007 0044
3 0008 0041          .string  "Austin", "Houston", "Dallas"
   0009 0075
   000a 0073
   000b 0074
   000c 0069
   000d 006E
   000e 0048
   000f 006F
   0010 0075
   0011 0073
   0012 0074
   0013 006F
   0014 006E
   0015 0044
   0016 0061
   0017 006C
   0018 006C
   0019 0061
   001a 0073
4 001b 0030          .string  36 + 12
```

.struct/.endstruct/.tag *Declare Structure Type*

Syntax

```
[stag]      .struct      [expr]
[mem0]     element      [expr0]
[mem1]     element      [expr1]
.           .           .
.           .           .
.           .           .
[memn]     .tag stag     [exprn]
.           .           .
.           .           .
.           .           .
[memN]     element      [exprN]
[size]      .endstruct
label       .tag         stag
```

Description

The **.struct** directive assigns symbolic offsets to the elements of a data structure definition. This allows you to group similar data elements together and let the assembler calculate the element offset. This is similar to a C structure or a Pascal record. The **.struct** directive does not allocate memory; it merely creates a symbolic template that can be used repeatedly.

The **.endstruct** directive terminates the structure definition.

The **.tag** directive gives structure characteristics to a *label*, simplifying the symbolic representation and providing the ability to define structures that contain other structures. The **.tag** directive does not allocate memory. The structure tag (*stag*) of a **.tag** directive must have been previously defined.

Following are descriptions of the parameters used with the **.struct**, **.endstruct**, and **.tag** directives:

- The *stag* is the structure's tag. Its value is associated with the beginning of the structure. If no *stag* is present, the assembler puts the structure members in the global symbol table with the value of their absolute offset from the top of the structure. A *.stag* is optional for **.struct**, but is required for **.tag**.
- The *expr* is an optional expression indicating the beginning offset of the structure. The default starting point for a structure is 0.
- The *mem_{n/N}* is an optional label for a member of the structure. This label is absolute and equates to the present offset from the beginning of the structure. A label for a structure member cannot be declared global.
- The *element* is one of the following descriptors: **.byte**, **.char**, **.word**, **.int**, **.long**, **.string**, **.double**, **.float**, **.half**, **.short**, **.field**, and **.tag**. All of these except **.tag** are typical directives that initialize memory. Following a **.struct** directive, these directives describe the structure element's size. They do not allocate memory. The **.tag** directive is a special case because *stag* must be used (as in the definition of *stag*).
- The *expr_{n/N}* is an optional expression for the number of elements described. This value defaults to 1. A **.string** element is considered to be one byte in size, and a **.field** element is one bit.
- The *size* is an optional label for the total size of the structure.

Directives That Can Appear in a .struct/.endstruct Sequence

NOTE: The only directives that can appear in a **.struct/.endstruct** sequence are element descriptors, conditional assembly directives, and the **.align** directive, which aligns the member offsets on word boundaries. Empty structures are illegal.

The following examples show various uses of the .struct, .tag, and .endstruct directives.

Example 1

```

1          REAL_REC  .struct                ;stag
2      0000  NOM      .int                  ;member1 = 0
3      0002  DEN      .int                  ;member2 = 2
4      0004  REAL_LEN .endstruct            ;real_len = 4
5
6 0000                                .bss    REAL, REAL_LEN
7
8 0000                                .text
9 0000 521B      ADD.W    &REAL + REAL_REC.DEN,R11
    0002 0002!
10

```

Example 2

```

11 0000                                .data
12          CPLX_REC  .struct
13      0000  REALI    .tag    REAL_REC      ; stag
14      0004  IMAGI    .tag    REAL_REC      ; member1 = 0
15      0008  CPLX_LEN .endstruct            ; cplx_len = 8
16
17          COMPLEX    .tag    CPLX_REC      ; assign structure attrib
18
19 0004                                .bss    COMPLEX, CPLX_LEN
20
21 0004                                .text
22 0004 521B      ADD     &COMPLEX.REALI,R11 ; access structure
    0006 0004!

```

Example 3

```

1 0000                                .data
2          .struct
3                                ; no stag puts mems into
                                ; global symbol table
4      0000  X        .int
5      0002  Y        .int
6      0004  Z        .int
7      0006          .endstruct

```

Example 4

```

1 0000                                .data
2          BIT_REC    .struct                ; stag
3      0000  STREAM    .string 64
4      0040  BIT7      .field 7              ; bits1 = 64
5      0040  BIT9      .field 9              ; bits2 = 64
6      0042  BIT10     .field 10             ; bits3 = 65
7      0044  X_INT     .int                  ; x_int = 66
8      0046  BIT_LEN   .endstruct            ; length = 67
9
10          BITS      .tag    BIT_REC
11
12 0000                                .bss    BITS, BIT_REC
13
14 0000                                .text
15 0000 521B      ADD     &BITS.BIT7,R11      ; move into R11
    0002 0040!
16 0004 F03B      AND     #127,R11            ; mask off garbage bits
    0006 007F

```

.symdepend/.weak *Effect Symbol Linkage and Visibility*

Syntax

.symdepend *dst symbol name*[, *src symbol name*]

.weak *symbol name*

Description

The **.symdepend** directive creates an artificial reference from the section defining *src symbol name* to the symbol *dst symbol name*. This prevents the linker from removing the section containing *dst symbol name* if the section defining *src symbol name* is included in the output module. If *src symbol name* is not specified, a reference from the current section is created.

The **.weak** directive identifies a symbol that is used in the current module but is defined in another module. The linker resolves this symbol's definition at link time. The **.weak** directive is equivalent to the **.ref** directive, except that the reference has weak linkage.

A global *symbol* is defined in the same manner as any other symbol; that is, it appears as a label or is defined by the **.set**, **.equ**, **.bss**, or **.usect** directive. As with all symbols, if a global symbol is defined more than once, the linker issues a multiple-definition error. The **.weak** directive always creates a symbol table entry for a symbol, whether the module uses the symbol or not; **.symdepend**, however, creates an entry only if the module actually uses the symbol.

A symbol can be declared global for either of two reasons:

- If the symbol is *not defined in the current module* (which includes macro, copy, and include files), the **.weak** directive tells the assembler that the symbol is defined in an external module. This prevents the assembler from issuing an unresolved reference error. At link time, the linker looks for the symbol's definition in other modules.
- If the symbol is *defined in the current module*, the **.symdepend** directive declares that the symbol and its definition can be used externally by other modules. These types of references are resolved at link time.

.tab

Define Tab Size

Syntax

.tab size

Description

The **.tab** directive defines the tab size. Tabs encountered in the source input are translated to size character spaces in the listing. The default tab size is eight spaces.

Example

In this example, each of the lines of code following a **.tab** statement consists of a single tab character followed by an NOP instruction.

Source file:

```
; default tab size
NOP
NOP
NOP
    .tab 4
NOP
NOP
NOP
    .tab 16
NOP
NOP
NOP
```

Listing file:

```
1          ; default tab size
2 0000 4303      NOP
3 0002 4303      NOP
4 0004 4303      NOP
5
7 0006 4303      NOP
8 0008 4303      NOP
9 000a 4303      NOP
10
12 000c 4303      NOP
13 000e 4303      NOP
14 0010 4303      NOP
```

.text *Assemble Into the .text Section*

Syntax

.text

Description

The **.text** directive tells the assembler to begin assembling into the .text section, which usually contains executable code. The section program counter is set to 0 if nothing has yet been assembled into the .text section. If code has already been assembled into the .text section, the section program counter is restored to its previous value in the section.

The .text section is the default section. Therefore, at the beginning of an assembly, the assembler assembles code into the .text section unless you use a .data or .sect directive to specify a different section.

For more information about sections, see [Chapter 2](#).

Example

This example assembles code into the .text and .data sections.

```

1          *****
2          * Begin assembling into the .data section. *
3          *****
4 0000          .data
5 0000 000A          .byte 0Ah, 0Bh
   0001 000B
6 0002 0011 coeff   .word 011h,0x22,0x33
   0004 0022
   0006 0033
7
8          *****
9          * Begin assembling into the .text section. *
10         *****
11 0000          .text
12 0000 0041 START: .string "A", "B", "C"
   0001 0042
   0002 0043
13 0003 0058 $END:  .string "X", "Y", "Z"
   0004 0059
   0005 005A
14 0006 403A          MOV.W   #0x1234,R10
   0008 1234
15 000a 521A          ADD.W   &coeff+1,R10
   000c 0003!
16
17         *****
18         * Resume assembling into .data section. *
19         *****
20 0008          .data
21 0008 000C          .byte  0Ch, 0Dh
   0009 000D
22
23         *****
24         * Resume assembling into .text section. *
25         *****
26 000e          .text
27 000e 0051          .string "QUIT"
   000f 0055
   0010 0049
   0011 0054

```


.title	Define Page Title
Syntax	.title "string"
Description	<p>The .title directive supplies a title that is printed in the heading on each listing page. The source statement itself is not printed, but the line counter is incremented.</p> <p>The <i>string</i> is a quote-enclosed title of up to 64 characters. If you supply more than 64 characters, the assembler truncates the string and issues a warning:</p> <pre>*** WARNING! line x: W0001: String is too long - will be truncated</pre> <p>The assembler prints the title on the page that follows the directive and on subsequent pages until another .title directive is processed. If you want a title on the first page, the first source statement must contain a .title directive.</p>
Example	<p>In this example, one title is printed on the first page and a different title is printed on succeeding pages.</p> <p>Source file:</p> <pre>.title "**** Fast Fourier Transforms ****" ; ; ; .title "**** Floating-Point Routines ****" .page</pre> <p>Listing file:</p> <pre>MSP430 COFF Assembler PC vx.x.x Day Time Year Tools Copyright (c) 2003-2011 Texas Instruments Incorporated **** Fast Fourier Transforms **** PAGE 1 2 ; . 3 ; . 4 ; . MSP430 COFF Assembler PC vx.x.x Day Time Year Tools Copyright (c) 2003-2011 Texas Instruments Incorporated **** Floating-Point Routines **** PAGE 2 No Errors, No Warnings</pre>

.usect	Reserve Uninitialized Space
Syntax	<i>symbol</i> .usect "section name", size in bytes[, alignment]
Description	<p>The .usect directive reserves space for variables in an uninitialized, named section. This directive is similar to the .bss directive; both simply reserve space for data and that space has no contents. However, .usect defines additional sections that can be placed anywhere in memory, independently of the .bss section.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The <i>symbol</i> points to the first location reserved by this invocation of the .usect directive. The symbol corresponds to the name of the variable for which you are reserving space. • The <i>section name</i> must be enclosed in double quotes. This parameter names the uninitialized section. A section name can contain a subsection name in the form <i>section name : subsection name</i>. • The <i>size in bytes</i> is an expression that defines the number of bytes that are reserved in <i>section name</i>. • The <i>alignment</i> is an optional parameter that ensures that the space allocated to the symbol occurs on the specified boundary. The boundary indicates the size of the slot in bytes and can be set to a power of 2 between 2^0 and 2^{15}, inclusive. If the SPC is aligned at the specified boundary, it is not incremented. <p>Initialized sections directives (.text, .data, and .sect) end the current section and tell the assembler to begin assembling into another section. A .usect or .bss directive encountered in the current section is simply assembled, and assembly continues in the current section.</p> <p>Variables that can be located contiguously in memory can be defined in the same specified section; to do so, repeat the .usect directive with the same section name and the subsequent symbol (variable name).</p> <p>For more information about sections, see Chapter 2.</p>
Example	<p>This example uses the .usect directive to define two uninitialized, named sections, var1 and var2. The symbol ptr points to the first byte reserved in the var1 section. The symbol array points to the first byte in a block of 100 bytes reserved in var1, and dflag points to the first byte in a block of 50 bytes in var1. The symbol vec points to the first byte reserved in the var2 section.</p>

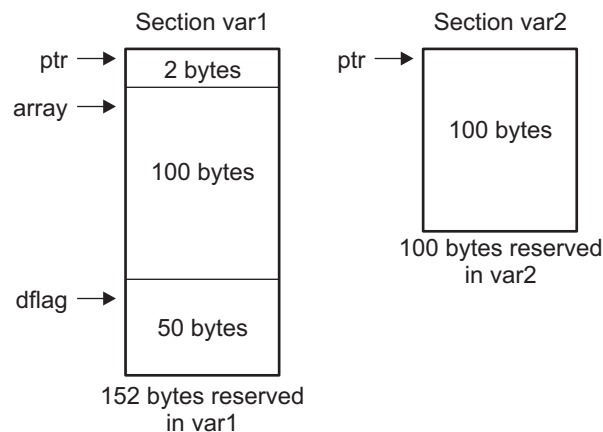
Figure 4-8 shows how this example reserves space in two uninitialized sections, var1 and var2.

```

1          *****
2          **      Assemble into the .text section.      **
3          *****
4 0000          .text
5 0000 403B      MOV #0x3,R11
   0002 0003
6
7          *****
8          **      Reserve 2 bytes in the var1 section.    **
9          *****
10 0000      ptr      .usect "var1",2
11
12          *****
13          **      Reserve 100 bytes in the var1 section.  **
14          *****
15 0002      array    .usect "var1",100
16
17 0004 503B      ADD #37,R11
   0006 0025
18
19          *****
20          **      Reserve 50 bytes in the var1 section.  **
21          *****
22 0066      dflag    .usect "var1",50
23
24 0008 503C      ADD #dflag-array,R12
   000a 0064
25
26          *****
27          ** Reserve 100 bytes in the var2 section. **
28          *****
29 0000      vec      .usect "var2",100
30
31 000c 5C0B      ADD R12,R11
32
33          *****
34          **      Declare a .usect symbol to be external.  **
35          *****
36          .global array

```

Figure 4-8. The .usect Directive



.unasg/.undefine **Turn Off Substitution Symbol**

Syntax

.unasg *symbol*

.undefine *symbol*

Description

The **.unasg** and **.undefine** directives remove the definition of a substitution symbol created using **.asg** or **.define**. The named *symbol* will be removed from the substitution symbol table from the point of the **.undefine** or **.unasg** to the end of the assembly file. See [Section 3.9.6](#) for more information on substitution symbols.

These directives can be used to remove from the assembly environment any C/C++ macros that may cause a problem. See [Chapter 12](#) for more information about using C/C++ headers in assembly source.

.var **Use Substitution Symbols as Local Variables**

Syntax

.var *sym₁* [, *sym₂* , ... , *sym_n*]

Description

The **.var** directive allows you to use substitution symbols as local variables within a macro. With this directive, you can define up to 32 local macro substitution symbols (including parameters) per macro.

The **.var** directive creates temporary substitution symbols with the initial value of the null string. These symbols are not passed in as parameters, and they are lost after expansion.

See [Section 3.9.6](#) for more information on substitution symbols. See [Chapter 5](#) for information on macros.

Macro Description

The MSP430 assembler supports a macro language that enables you to create your own instructions. This is especially useful when a program executes a particular task several times. The macro language lets you:

- Define your own macros and redefine existing macros
- Simplify long or complicated assembly code
- Access macro libraries created with the archiver
- Define conditional and repeatable blocks within a macro
- Manipulate strings within a macro
- Control expansion listing

Topic	Page
5.1 Using Macros	118
5.2 Defining Macros	118
5.3 Macro Parameters/Substitution Symbols	120
5.4 Macro Libraries	126
5.5 Using Conditional Assembly in Macros	127
5.6 Using Labels in Macros	129
5.7 Producing Messages in Macros	130
5.8 Using Directives to Format the Output Listing	131
5.9 Using Recursive and Nested Macros	132
5.10 Macro Directives Summary	133

5.1 Using Macros

Programs often contain routines that are executed several times. Instead of repeating the source statements for a routine, you can define the routine as a macro, then call the macro in the places where you would normally repeat the routine. This simplifies and shortens your source program.

If you want to call a macro several times but with different data each time, you can assign parameters within a macro. This enables you to pass different information to the macro each time you call it. The macro language supports a special symbol called a *substitution symbol*, which is used for macro parameters. See [Section 5.3](#) for more information.

Using a macro is a 3-step process.

- Step 1. **Define the macro.** You must define macros before you can use them in your program. There are two methods for defining macros:
 - (a) Macros can be defined at the beginning of a *source file* or in a copy/include file. See [Section 5.2, Defining Macros](#), for more information.
 - (b) Macros can also be defined in a *macro library*. A macro library is a collection of files in archive format created by the archiver. Each member of the archive file (macro library) may contain one macro definition corresponding to the member name. You can access a macro library by using the `.mlib` directive. For more information, see [Section 5.4](#).
- Step 2. **Call the macro.** After you have defined a macro, call it by using the macro name as a mnemonic in the source program. This is referred to as a *macro call*.
- Step 3. **Expand the macro.** The assembler expands your macros when the source program calls them. During expansion, the assembler passes arguments by variable to the macro parameters, replaces the macro call statement with the macro definition, then assembles the source code. By default, the macro expansions are printed in the listing file. You can turn off expansion listing by using the `.mnlis` directive. For more information, see [Section 5.8](#).

When the assembler encounters a macro definition, it places the macro name in the opcode table. This redefines any previously defined macro, library entry, directive, or instruction mnemonic that has the same name as the macro. This allows you to expand the functions of directives and instructions, as well as to add new instructions.

5.2 Defining Macros

You can define a macro anywhere in your program, but you must define the macro before you can use it. Macros can be defined at the beginning of a source file or in a `.copy/.include` file (see [Copy Source File](#)); they can also be defined in a macro library. For more information about macro libraries, see [Section 5.4](#).

Macro definitions can be nested, and they can call other macros, but all elements of the macro must be defined in the same file. Nested macros are discussed in [Section 5.9](#).

A macro definition is a series of source statements in the following format:

```

macname  .macro  [parameter1] [, ... , parametern]
           model statements or macro directives
           [.mexit]
           .endm
  
```

macname names the macro. You must place the name in the source statement's label field. Only the first 128 characters of a macro name are significant. The assembler places the macro name in the internal opcode table, replacing any instruction or previous macro definition with the same name.

.macro is the directive that identifies the source statement as the first line of a macro definition. You must place `.macro` in the opcode field.

*parameter*₁,
*parameter*_{*n*} are optional substitution symbols that appear as operands for the `.macro` directive. Parameters are discussed in [Section 5.3](#).

<i>model statements</i>	are instructions or assembler directives that are executed each time the macro is called.
<i>macro directives</i>	are used to control macro expansion.
.mexit	is a directive that functions as a <i>goto .endm</i> . The .mexit directive is useful when error testing confirms that macro expansion fails and completing the rest of the macro is unnecessary.
.endm	is the directive that terminates the macro definition.

If you want to include comments with your macro definition but *do not* want those comments to appear in the macro expansion, use an exclamation point to precede your comments. If you *do* want your comments to appear in the macro expansion, use an asterisk or semicolon. See [Section 5.7](#) for more information about macro comments.

[Example 5-1](#) shows the definition, call, and expansion of a macro.

Example 5-1. Macro Definition, Call, and Expansion

Macro definition: The following code defines a macro, add3, with four parameters:

```

1          add3      .macro   P1,P2,P3,SUM
2                      MOV     #0,SUM
3                      ADD     P1,SUM
4                      ADD     P2,SUM
5                      ADD     P3,SUM
6                      .endm

```

Macro call: The following code calls the add3 macro with four arguments:

```

7
8 0000          add3      R11,R12,R13,R14

```

Macro expansion: The following code shows the substitution of the macro definition for the macro call. The assembler substitutes R11, R12, R13, and R14 for the P1, P2, P3, and SUM parameters of add3.

```

1      0000 430E      MOV     #0,R14
1      0002 5B0E      ADD     R11,R14
1      0004 5C0E      ADD     R12,R14
1      0006 5D0E      ADD     R13,R14

```

5.3 Macro Parameters/Substitution Symbols

If you want to call a macro several times with different data each time, you can assign parameters within the macro. The macro language supports a special symbol, called a *substitution symbol*, which is used for macro parameters.

Macro parameters are substitution symbols that represent a character string. These symbols can also be used outside of macros to equate a character string to a symbol name (see [Section 3.9.6](#)).

Valid substitution symbols can be up to 128 characters long and *must begin with a letter*. The remainder of the symbol can be a combination of alphanumeric characters, underscores, and dollar signs.

Substitution symbols used as macro parameters are local to the macro they are defined in. You can define up to 32 local substitution symbols (including substitution symbols defined with the .var directive) per macro. For more information about the .var directive, see [Section 5.3.6](#).

During macro expansion, the assembler passes arguments by variable to the macro parameters. The character-string equivalent of each argument is assigned to the corresponding parameter. Parameters without corresponding arguments are set to the null string. If the number of arguments exceeds the number of parameters, the last parameter is assigned the character-string equivalent of all remaining arguments.

If you pass a list of arguments to one parameter or if you pass a comma or semicolon to a parameter, you must surround these terms with quotation marks.

At assembly time, the assembler replaces the macro parameter/substitution symbol with its corresponding character string, then translates the source code into object code.

[Example 5-2](#) shows the expansion of a macro with varying numbers of arguments.

Example 5-2. Calling a Macro With Varying Numbers of Arguments

Macro definition:

```

Parms      .macro      a,b,c
;           a = :a:
;           b = :b:
;           c = :c:
           .endm

```

Calling the macro:

<pre> Parms 100,label ; a = 100 ; b = label ; c = " " </pre>	<pre> Parms 100,label,x,y ; a = 100 ; b = label ; c = x,y </pre>
<pre> Parms 100, , x ; a = 100 ; b = " " ; c = x </pre>	<pre> Parms "100,200,300",x,y ; a = 100,200,300 ; b = x ; c = y </pre>
<pre> Parms ""string"",x,y ; a = "string" ; b = x ; c = y </pre>	

5.3.1 Directives That Define Substitution Symbols

You can manipulate substitution symbols with the **.asg** and **.eval** directives.

- The **.asg** directive assigns a character string to a substitution symbol.

For the **.asg** directive, the quotation marks are optional. If there are no quotation marks, the assembler reads characters up to the first comma and removes leading and trailing blanks. In either case, a character string is read and assigned to the *substitution symbol*. The syntax of the **.asg** directive is:

```
.asg["]character string["], substitution symbol
```

[Example 5-3](#) shows character strings being assigned to substitution symbols.

Example 5-3. The .asg Directive

```
.asg R13, stack_ptr ; stack pointer
```

- The **.eval** directive performs arithmetic on numeric substitution symbols.

The **.eval** directive evaluates the *expression* and assigns the string value of the result to the *substitution symbol*. If the expression is not well defined, the assembler generates an error and assigns the null string to the symbol. The syntax of the **.eval** directive is:

```
.eval well-defined expression , substitution symbol
```

[Example 5-4](#) shows arithmetic being performed on substitution symbols.

Example 5-4. The .eval Directive

```
.asg 1,counter
.loop 100
.word counter
.eval counter + 1,counter
.endloop
```

In [Example 5-4](#), the **.asg** directive could be replaced with the **.eval** directive (**.eval 1, counter**) without changing the output. In simple cases like this, you can use **.eval** and **.asg** interchangeably. However, you must use **.eval** if you want to calculate a *value* from an expression. While **.asg** only assigns a character string to a substitution symbol, **.eval** evaluates an expression and then assigns the character string equivalent to a substitution symbol.

See [Assign a Substitution Symbol](#) for more information about the **.asg** and **.eval** assembler directives.

5.3.2 Built-In Substitution Symbol Functions

The following built-in substitution symbol functions enable you to make decisions on the basis of the string value of substitution symbols. These functions always return a value, and they can be used in expressions. Built-in substitution symbol functions are especially useful in conditional assembly expressions. Parameters of these functions are substitution symbols or character-string constants.

In the function definitions shown in [Table 5-1](#), *a* and *b* are parameters that represent substitution symbols or character-string constants. The term *string* refers to the string value of the parameter. The symbol *ch* represents a character constant.

Table 5-1. Substitution Symbol Functions and Return Values

Function	Return Value
\$symlen (<i>a</i>)	Length of string <i>a</i>
\$symcmp (<i>a,b</i>)	< 0 if <i>a</i> < <i>b</i> ; 0 if <i>a</i> = <i>b</i> ; > 0 if <i>a</i> > <i>b</i>
\$firstch (<i>a,ch</i>)	Index of the first occurrence of character constant <i>ch</i> in string <i>a</i>
\$lastch (<i>a,ch</i>)	Index of the last occurrence of character constant <i>ch</i> in string <i>a</i>
\$isdefed (<i>a</i>)	1 if string <i>a</i> is defined in the symbol table 0 if string <i>a</i> is not defined in the symbol table
\$ismember (<i>a,b</i>)	Top member of list <i>b</i> is assigned to string <i>a</i> 0 if <i>b</i> is a null string
\$iscons (<i>a</i>)	1 if string <i>a</i> is a binary constant 2 if string <i>a</i> is an octal constant 3 if string <i>a</i> is a hexadecimal constant 4 if string <i>a</i> is a character constant 5 if string <i>a</i> is a decimal constant
\$isname (<i>a</i>)	1 if string <i>a</i> is a valid symbol name 0 if string <i>a</i> is not a valid symbol name
\$isreg (<i>a</i>) ⁽¹⁾	1 if string <i>a</i> is a valid predefined register name 0 if string <i>a</i> is not a valid predefined register name

⁽¹⁾ For more information about predefined register names, see [Section 3.9.5](#).

[Example 5-5](#) shows built-in substitution symbol functions.

Example 5-5. Using Built-In Substitution Symbol Functions

```
.asg    label, ADDR                ; ADDR = label
.if     ($symcmp(ADDR, "label") = 0) ; evaluates to true
MOV     #ADDR, R4
.endif
.asg     "x,y,z" , list             ; list = x,y,z
.if     ($ismember(ADDR,list))      ; ADDR = x, list = y,z
SUB     #4, R4                      ; sub x
.endif
```

5.3.3 Recursive Substitution Symbols

When the assembler encounters a substitution symbol, it attempts to substitute the corresponding character string. If that string is also a substitution symbol, the assembler performs substitution again. The assembler continues doing this until it encounters a token that is not a substitution symbol or until it encounters a substitution symbol that it has already encountered during this evaluation.

In [Example 5-6](#), the x is substituted for z; z is substituted for y; and y is substituted for x. The assembler recognizes this as infinite recursion and ceases substitution.

Example 5-6. Recursive Substitution

```
.asg "x",z ; declare z and assign z = "x"
.asg "z",y ; declare y and assign y = "z"
.asg "y",x ; declare x and assign x = "y"
MOV #x, R11
```

5.3.4 Forced Substitution

In some cases, substitution symbols are not recognizable to the assembler. The forced substitution operator, which is a set of colons surrounding the symbol, enables you to force the substitution of a symbol's character string. Simply enclose a symbol with colons to force the substitution. Do not include any spaces between the colons and the symbol.

The syntax for the forced substitution operator is:

```
:symbol:
```

The assembler expands substitution symbols surrounded by colons before expanding other substitution symbols.

You can use the forced substitution operator only inside macros, and you cannot nest a forced substitution operator within another forced substitution operator.

[Example 5-7](#) shows how the forced substitution operator is used.

Example 5-7. Using the Forced Substitution Operator

```

1          force .macro
2              .asg 0,x
3              .loop 8
4          AUX:x: .set x
5              .eval x+1,x
6              .endloop
7              .endm
8
9 00000000      force
1             .asg 0,x
1             .loop 8
1             AUX:x: .set x
1             .eval x+1,x
1             .endloop
2 00000000 AUX0 .set 0
2             .eval 0+1,x
2 00000001 AUX1 .set 1
2             .eval 1+1,x
2 00000002 AUX2 .set 2
2             .eval 2+1,x
2 00000003 AUX3 .set 3
2             .eval 3+1,x
2 00000004 AUX4 .set 4
2             .eval 4+1,x
2 00000005 AUX5 .set 5
2             .eval 5+1,x
2 00000006 AUX6 .set 6
2             .eval 6+1,x
2 00000007 AUX7 .set 7
2             .eval 7+1,x

```

5.3.5 Accessing Individual Characters of Subscripted Substitution Symbols

In a macro, you can access the individual characters (substrings) of a substitution symbol with subscripted substitution symbols. You must use the forced substitution operator for clarity.

You can access substrings in two ways:

- `:symbol (well-defined expression)`:

This method of subscripting evaluates to a character string with one character.

- `:symbol (well-defined expression1, well-defined expression2)`:

In this method, expression₁ represents the substring's starting position, and expression₂ represents the substring's length. You can specify exactly where to begin subscripting and the exact length of the resulting character string. *The index of substring characters begins with 1, not 0.*

[Example 5-8](#) and [Example 5-9](#) show built-in substitution symbol functions used with subscripted substitution symbols.

In [Example 5-8](#), subscripted substitution symbols redefine the ADD instruction so that it handles short immediate values. In [Example 5-9](#), the subscripted substitution symbol is used to find a substring strg1 beginning at position start in the string strg2. The position of the substring strg1 is assigned to the substitution symbol pos.

Example 5-8. Using Subscripted Substitution Symbols to Redefine an Instruction

```

ADDX      .macro      dst, imm
          .var         TMP
          .asg         :imm(1):, TMP
          .if          $symcmp(TMP,"#") = 0
          ADD          imm, dst
          .else
          .emsg        "Bad Macro Parameter"
          .endif
          .endm

          ADDX         R9, #100          ; macro call
          ADDX         R9, R8           ; macro call

```

Example 5-9. Using Subscripted Substitution Symbols to Find Substrings

```

substr    .macro      start, strg1, strg2, pos
          .var         LEN1, LEN2, I, TMP
          .if          $symlen(start) = 0
          .eval        1, start
          .endif
          .eval        0, pos
          .eval        1, i
          .eval        $symlen(strg1), LEN1
          .eval        $symlen(strg2), LEN2
          .loop
          .break       i = (LEN2 - LEN1 + 1)
          .asg         ":strg2(I, LEN1):", TMP
          .eval        i, pos
          .break
          .else
          .eval        i + 1, i
          .endif
          .endloop
          .endm

          .asg         0, pos
          .asg         "ar1 ar2 ar3 ar4", regs
          substr        1, "ar2", regs, pos
          .word        pos

```

5.3.6 Substitution Symbols as Local Variables in Macros

If you want to use substitution symbols as local variables within a macro, you can use the **.var** directive to define up to 32 local macro substitution symbols (including parameters) per macro. The **.var** directive creates temporary substitution symbols with the initial value of the null string. These symbols are not passed in as parameters, and they are lost after expansion.

```
.var    sym1 [,sym2 , ... ,symn ]
```

The **.var** directive is used in [Example 5-8](#) and [Example 5-9](#).

5.4 Macro Libraries

One way to define macros is by creating a macro library. A macro library is a collection of files that contain macro definitions. You must use the archiver to collect these files, or members, into a single file (called an archive). Each member of a macro library contains one macro definition. The files in a macro library must be unassembled source files. The macro name and the member name must be the same, and the macro filename's extension must be .asm. For example:

Macro Name	Filename in Macro Library
simple	simple.asm
add3	add3.asm

You can access the macro library by using the .mlib assembler directive (described in [Define Macro Library](#)). The syntax is:

```
.mlib filename
```

When the assembler encounters the .mlib directive, it opens the library named by filename and creates a table of the library's contents. The assembler enters the names of the individual members within the library into the opcode tables as library entries; this redefines any existing opcodes or macros that have the same name. If one of these macros is called, the assembler extracts the entry from the library and loads it into the macro table.

The assembler expands the library entry in the same way it expands other macros. See [Section 5.1](#) for how the assembler expands macros. You can control the listing of library entry expansions with the .mlist directive. For more information about the .mlist directive, see [Section 5.8](#) and [Start/Stop Macro Expansion Listing](#). Only macros that are actually called from the library are extracted, and they are extracted only once.

You can use the archiver to create a macro library by including the desired files in an archive. A macro library is no different from any other archive, except that the assembler expects the macro library to contain macro definitions. The assembler expects *only* macro definitions in a macro library; putting object code or miscellaneous source files into the library may produce undesirable results. For information about creating a macro library archive, see [Section 6.1](#).

5.5 Using Conditional Assembly in Macros

The conditional assembly directives are **.if/.elseif/.else/.endif** and **.loop/.break/.endloop**. They can be nested within each other up to 32 levels deep. The format of a conditional block is:

```
.if well-defined expression
[.elseif well-defined expression]
[.else]
.endif
```

The **.elseif** and **.else** directives are optional in conditional assembly. The **.elseif** directive can be used more than once within a conditional assembly code block. When **.elseif** and **.else** are omitted and when the **.if** expression is false (0), the assembler continues to the code following the **.endif** directive. See [Assemble Conditional Blocks](#) for more information on the **.if/.elseif/.else/.endif** directives.

The **.loop/.break/.endloop** directives enable you to assemble a code block repeatedly. The format of a repeatable block is:

```
.loop [well-defined expression]
[.break [well-defined expression]]
.endloop
```

The **.loop** directive's optional *well-defined expression* evaluates to the loop count (the number of loops to be performed). If the expression is omitted, the loop count defaults to 1024 unless the assembler encounters a **.break** directive with an expression that is true (nonzero). See [Assemble Conditional Blocks Repeatedly](#) for more information on the **.loop/.break/.endloop** directives.

The **.break** directive and its expression are optional in repetitive assembly. If the expression evaluates to false, the loop continues. The assembler breaks the loop when the **.break** expression evaluates to true or when the **.break** expression is omitted. When the loop is broken, the assembler continues with the code after the **.endloop** directive.

For more information, see [Section 4.7](#).

[Example 5-10](#), [Example 5-11](#), and [Example 5-12](#) show the **.loop/.break/.endloop** directives, properly nested conditional assembly directives, and built-in substitution symbol functions used in a conditional assembly code block.

Example 5-10. The .loop/.break/.endloop Directives

```
.asg    1,x
.loop

.break  (x == 10) ; if x == 10, quit loop/break with expression

.eval   x+1,x
.endloop
```

Example 5-11. Nested Conditional Assembly Directives

```
.asg    1,x
.loop

.if     (x == 10) ; if x == 10, quit loop
.break  (x == 10) ; force break
.endif

.eval   x+1,x
.endloop
```

Example 5-12. Built-In Substitution Symbol Functions in a Conditional Assembly Code Block

```
.fcno list

* Increment or decrement

INCDEC .macro OP,dst
    .if     $symcmp(OP,"+")
    ADD     #1,dst
    .elseif $symcmp(OP,"-")
    SUB     #1,dst
    .else
    .emsg    "Incorrect Operator Parameter"
    .endif
    .endm

* Macro Call

INCDEC  +,R11
```


5.6 Using Labels in Macros

All labels in an assembly language program must be unique. This includes labels in macros. If a macro is expanded more than once, its labels are defined more than once. *Defining a label more than once is illegal.* The macro language provides a method of defining labels in macros so that the labels are unique. Simply follow each label with a question mark, and the assembler replaces the question mark with a period followed by a unique number. When the macro is expanded, *you do not see the unique number in the listing file.* Your label appears with the question mark as it did in the macro definition. You cannot declare this label as global. The syntax for a unique label is:

<i>label ?</i>

[Example 5-13](#) shows unique label generation in a macro. The maximum label length is shortened to allow for the unique suffix. For example, if the macro is expanded fewer than 10 times, the maximum label length is 126 characters. If the macro is expanded from 10 to 99 times, the maximum label length is 125. The label with its unique suffix is shown in the cross-listing file. To obtain a cross-listing file, invoke the assembler with the --cross_reference option (see [Section 3.3](#)).

Example 5-13. Unique Labels in a Macro

```

1          * Define macro to find minimum
2
3          MIN      .macro   src1,src2,dst
4                  CMP      src1,src2
5                  JL       m1?
6                  MOV      src1,dst
7                  JMP      m2?
8          m1?     MOV      src2,dst
9          m2?
10         .endm
11
12 0000          MIN      R11,R12,R13
1 0000 9B0C      CMP      R11,R12
1 0002 3802      JL       m1?
1 0004 4B0D      MOV      R11,R13
1 0006 3C01      JMP      m2?
1 0008 4C0D      MOV      R12,R13
1              m1?
              m2?
```

5.7 Producing Messages in Macros

The macro language supports three directives that enable you to define your own assembly-time error and warning messages. These directives are especially useful when you want to create messages specific to your needs. The last line of the listing file shows the error and warning counts. These counts alert you to problems in your code and are especially useful during debugging.

- .emsg** sends error messages to the listing file. The .emsg directive generates errors in the same manner as the assembler, incrementing the error count and preventing the assembler from producing an object file.
- .mmsg** sends assembly-time messages to the listing file. The .mmsg directive functions in the same manner as the .emsg directive but does not set the error count or prevent the creation of an object file.
- .wmsg** sends warning messages to the listing file. The .wmsg directive functions in the same manner as the .emsg directive, but it increments the warning count and does not prevent the generation of an object file.

Macro comments are comments that appear in the definition of the macro *but do not show up in the expansion of the macro*. An exclamation point in column 1 identifies a macro comment. If you want your comments to appear in the macro expansion, precede your comment with an asterisk or semicolon.

[Example 5-14](#) shows user messages in macros and macro comments that do not appear in the macro expansion.

For more information about the .emsg, .mmsg, and .wmsg assembler directives, see [Define Messages](#).

Example 5-14. Producing Messages in a Macro

```

1          MUL_I    .macro x,y
2                  .if ($symlen(x) == 0)
3                      .emsg "ERROR -- Missing Parameter"
4                      .mexit
5                      .elseif ($symlen(y) == 0)
6                      .emsg "ERROR -- Missing Parameter"
7                      .mexit
8                      .else
9                          MOV    x, R11
10                         MOV    y, R12
11                     .endif
12                 .endm
13
14 0000          MUL_I #50, #51
1          .if ($symlen(x) == 0)
1              .emsg "ERROR -- Missing Parameter"
1              .mexit
1              .elseif ($symlen(y) == 0)
1              .emsg "ERROR -- Missing Parameter"
1              .mexit
1              .else
1                  MOV    #50, R11
1                  MOV    #51, R12
1                  .endif
15
16 0008          MUL_I
1          .if ($symlen(x) == 0)
1              .emsg "ERROR -- Missing Parameter"
"macromsg.asm", ERROR!   at line 16: [ ***** USER ERROR ***** - ] ERROR -- Missing Parameter
1              .mexit
17
18
1 Assembly Error, No Assembly Warnings

```

5.8 Using Directives to Format the Output Listing

Macros, substitution symbols, and conditional assembly directives may hide information. You may need to see this hidden information, so the macro language supports an expanded listing capability.

By default, the assembler shows macro expansions and false conditional blocks in the list output file. You may want to turn this listing off or on within your listing file. Four sets of directives enable you to control the listing of this information:

- **Macro and loop expansion listing**

.mlist expands macros and .loop/.endloop blocks. The .mlist directive prints all code encountered in those blocks.

.mnolist suppresses the listing of macro expansions and .loop/ .endloop blocks.

For macro and loop expansion listing, .mlist is the default.

- **False conditional block listing**

.fclist causes the assembler to include in the listing file all conditional blocks that do not generate code (false conditional blocks). Conditional blocks appear in the listing exactly as they appear in the source code.

.fcnolist suppresses the listing of false conditional blocks. Only the code in conditional blocks that actually assemble appears in the listing. The .if, .elseif, .else, and .endif directives do not appear in the listing.

For false conditional block listing, .fclist is the default.

- **Substitution symbol expansion listing**

.sslist expands substitution symbols in the listing. This is useful for debugging the expansion of substitution symbols. The expanded line appears below the actual source line.

.ssnolist turns off substitution symbol expansion in the listing.

For substitution symbol expansion listing, .ssnolist is the default.

- **Directive listing**

.drlist causes the assembler to print to the listing file all directive lines.

.drnolist suppresses the printing of certain directives in the listing file. These directives are .asg, .eval, .var, .sslist, .mlist, .fclist, .ssnolist, .mnolist, .fcnolist, .emsg, .wmsg, .mmsg, .length, .width, and .break.

For directive listing, .drlist is the default.

5.9 Using Recursive and Nested Macros

The macro language supports recursive and nested macro calls. This means that you can call other macros in a macro definition. You can nest macros up to 32 levels deep. When you use recursive macros, you call a macro from its own definition (the macro calls itself).

When you create recursive or nested macros, you should pay close attention to the arguments that you pass to macro parameters because the assembler uses dynamic scoping for parameters. This means that the called macro uses the environment of the macro from which it was called.

[Example 5-15](#) shows nested macros. The `y` in the `in_block` macro hides the `y` in the `out_block` macro. The `x` and `z` from the `out_block` macro, however, are accessible to the `in_block` macro.

Example 5-15. Using Nested Macros

```
in_block .macro y,a
    .
    ; visible parameters are y,a and x,z from the calling macro
    .endm

out_block .macro x,y,z
    .
    ; visible parameters are x,y,z
    .
    in_block x,y ; macro call with x and y as arguments
    .
    .endm
    out_block ; macro call
```

[Example 5-16](#) shows recursive and fact macros. The `fact` macro produces assembly code necessary to calculate the factorial of `n`, where `n` is an immediate value. The result is placed in data memory address `loc`. The `fact` macro accomplishes this by calling `fact1`, which calls itself recursively.

Example 5-16. Using Recursive Macros

```
fact .macro N,loc
    .if N < 2
    MOV #1,&loc
    .else
    MOV #N,&loc
    .eval N-1,N
    fact1
    .endif
    .endm

fact1 .macro
    .if N > 1
    MOV #N,R12 ; Assume MPY requires args to be in R12,R13
    MOV &loc,R13
    CALL MPY
    MOV R12,&loc ; Assume MPY returns product in R12
    .eval N - 1,N
    fact1
    .endif
    .endm

.global fact_result
.global MPY

fact 5,fact_result
```

5.10 Macro Directives Summary

The directives listed in [Table 5-2](#) through [Table 5-6](#) can be used with macros. The .macro, .mexit, .endm and .var directives are valid only with macros; the remaining directives are general assembly language directives.

Table 5-2. Creating Macros

Mnemonic and Syntax	Description	See	
		Macro Use	Directive
.endm	End macro definition	Section 5.2	.endm
macname .macro [parameter ₁] [, ... , parameter _n]	Define macro by macname	Section 5.2	.macro
.mexit	Go to .endm	Section 5.2	Section 5.2
.mlib filename	Identify library containing macro definitions	Section 5.4	.mlib

Table 5-3. Manipulating Substitution Symbols

Mnemonic and Syntax	Description	See	
		Macro Use	Directive
.asg ["character string"], substitution symbol	Assign character string to substitution symbol	Section 5.3.1	.asg
.eval well-defined expression, substitution symbol	Perform arithmetic on numeric substitution symbols	Section 5.3.1	.eval
.var sym ₁ [, sym ₂ , ..., sym _n]	Define local macro symbols	Section 5.3.6	.var

Table 5-4. Conditional Assembly

Mnemonic and Syntax	Description	See	
		Macro Use	Directive
.break [well-defined expression]	Optional repeatable block assembly	Section 5.5	.break
.endif	End conditional assembly	Section 5.5	.endif
.endloop	End repeatable block assembly	Section 5.5	.endloop
.else	Optional conditional assembly block	Section 5.5	.else
.elseif well-defined expression	Optional conditional assembly block	Section 5.5	.elseif
.if well-defined expression	Begin conditional assembly	Section 5.5	.if
.loop [well-defined expression]	Begin repeatable block assembly	Section 5.5	.loop

Table 5-5. Producing Assembly-Time Messages

Mnemonic and Syntax	Description	See	
		Macro Use	Directive
.emsg	Send error message to standard output	Section 5.7	.emsg
.mmsg	Send assembly-time message to standard output	Section 5.7	.mmsg
.wmsg	Send warning message to standard output	Section 5.7	.wmsg

Table 5-6. Formatting the Listing

Mnemonic and Syntax	Description	See	
		Macro Use	Directive
.fclist	Allow false conditional code block listing (default)	Section 5.8	.fclist
.fcnolist	Suppress false conditional code block listing	Section 5.8	.fcnolist
.mlist	Allow macro listings (default)	Section 5.8	.mlist
.mnolist	Suppress macro listings	Section 5.8	.mnolist
.sslist	Allow expanded substitution symbol listing	Section 5.8	.sslist
.ssnolist	Suppress expanded substitution symbol listing (default)	Section 5.8	.ssnolist

Archiver Description

The MSP430 archiver lets you combine several individual files into a single archive file. For example, you can collect several macros into a macro library. The assembler searches the library and uses the members that are called as macros by the source file. You can also use the archiver to collect a group of object files into an object library. The linker includes in the library the members that resolve external references during the link. The archiver allows you to modify a library by deleting, replacing, extracting, or adding members.

Topic	Page
6.1 Archiver Overview	135
6.2 The Archiver's Role in the Software Development Flow	136
6.3 Invoking the Archiver	137
6.4 Archiver Examples	138
6.5 Library Information Archiver Description	140

6.1 Archiver Overview

You can build libraries from any type of files. Both the assembler and the linker accept archive libraries as input; the assembler can use libraries that contain individual source files, and the linker can use libraries that contain individual object files.

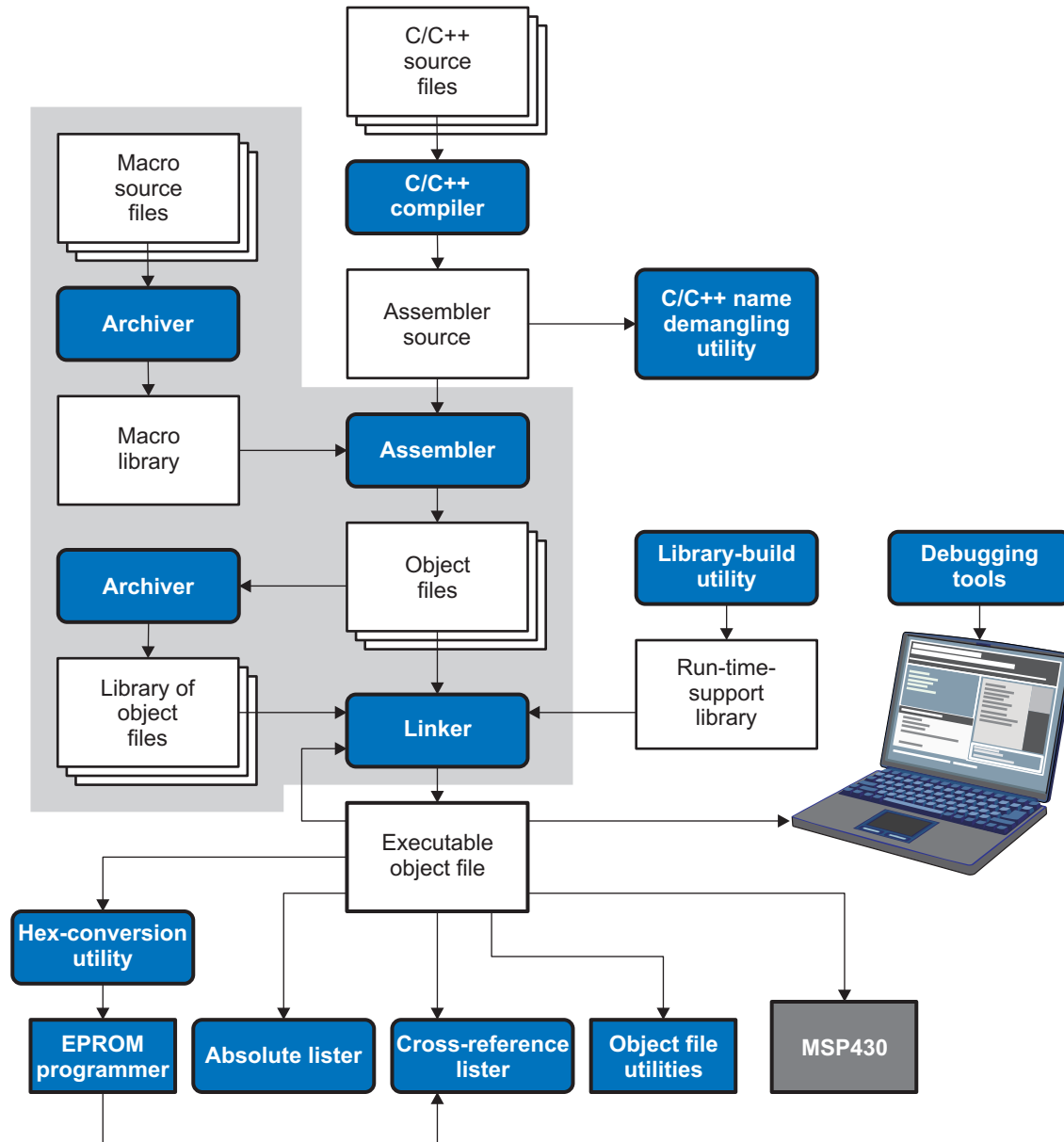
One of the most useful applications of the archiver is building libraries of object modules. For example, you can write several arithmetic routines, assemble them, and use the archiver to collect the object files into a single, logical group. You can then specify the object library as linker input. The linker searches the library and includes members that resolve external references.

You can also use the archiver to build macro libraries. You can create several source files, each of which contains a single macro, and use the archiver to collect these macros into a single, functional group. You can use the `.mlib` directive during assembly to specify that macro library to be searched for the macros that you call. [Chapter 5](#) discusses macros and macro libraries in detail, while this chapter explains how to use the archiver to build libraries.

6.2 The Archiver's Role in the Software Development Flow

Figure 6-1 shows the archiver's role in the software development process. The shaded portion highlights the most common archiver development path. Both the assembler and the linker accept libraries as input.

Figure 6-1. The Archiver in the MSP430 Software Development Flow



6.3 Invoking the Archiver

To invoke the archiver, enter:

ar430 [-]command [options] libname [filename₁ ... filename_n]

ar430	is the command that invokes the archiver.
[-]command	tells the archiver how to manipulate the existing library members and any specified. A command can be preceded by an optional hyphen. You must use one of the following commands when you invoke the archiver, but you can use only one command per invocation. The archiver commands are as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> @ uses the contents of the specified file instead of command line entries. You can use this command to avoid limitations on command line length imposed by the host operating system. Use a ; at the beginning of a line in the command file to include comments. (See Example 6-1 for an example using an archiver command file.) a adds the specified files to the library. This command does not replace an existing member that has the same name as an added file; it simply <i>appends</i> new members to the end of the archive. d deletes the specified members from the library. r replaces the specified members in the library. If you do not specify filenames, the archiver replaces the library members with files of the same name in the current directory. If the specified file is not found in the library, the archiver adds it instead of replacing it. t prints a table of contents of the library. If you specify filenames, only those files are listed. If you do not specify any filenames, the archiver lists all the members in the specified library. x extracts the specified files. If you do not specify member names, the archiver extracts all library members. When the archiver extracts a member, it simply copies the member into the current directory; it <i>does not</i> remove it from the library.
options	In addition to one of the <i>commands</i> , you can specify options. To use options, combine them with a command; for example, to use the a command and the s option, enter -as or as. The hyphen is optional for archiver options only. These are the archiver options: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> -q (quiet) suppresses the banner and status messages. -s prints a list of the global symbols that are defined in the library. (This option is valid only with the a, r, and d commands.) -u replaces library members only if the replacement has a more recent modification date. You must use the r command with the -u option to specify which members to replace. -v (verbose) provides a file-by-file description of the creation of a new library from an old library and its members.
libname	names the archive library to be built or modified. If you do not specify an extension for <i>libname</i> , the archiver uses the default extension <i>.lib</i> .
filenames	names individual files to be manipulated. These files can be existing library members or new files to be added to the library. When you enter a filename, you must enter a complete filename including extension, if applicable.

Naming Library Members

NOTE: It is possible (but not desirable) for a library to contain several members with the same name. If you attempt to delete, replace, or extract a member whose name is the same as another library member, the archiver deletes, replaces, or extracts the first library member with that name.

6.4 Archiver Examples

The following are examples of typical archiver operations:

- If you want to create a library called `function.lib` that contains the files `sine.obj`, `cos.obj`, and `flt.obj`, enter:

```
ar430 -a function sine.obj cos.obj flt.obj
```

The archiver responds as follows:

```
==> new archive 'function.lib' ==> building new archive 'function.lib'
```

- You can print a table of contents of `function.lib` with the `-t` command, enter:

```
ar430 -t function
```

The archiver responds as follows:

FILE NAME	SIZE	DATE
sine.obj	300	Wed Jun 15 10:00:24 2011
cos.obj	300	Wed Jun 15 10:00:30 2011
flt.obj	300	Wed Jun 15 09:59:56 2011

- If you want to add new members to the library, enter:

```
ar430 -as function atan.obj
```

The archiver responds as follows:

```
==> symbol defined: '_sin'
==> symbol defined: '_cos'
==> symbol defined: '_tan'
==> symbol defined: '_atan'
==> building archive 'function.lib'
```

Because this example does not specify an extension for the libname, the archiver adds the files to the library called `function.lib`. If `function.lib` does not exist, the archiver creates it. (The `-s` option tells the archiver to list the global symbols that are defined in the library.)

- If you want to modify a library member, you can extract it, edit it, and replace it. In this example, assume there is a library named `macros.lib` that contains the members `push.asm`, `pop.asm`, and `swap.asm`.

```
ar430 -x macros push.asm
```

The archiver makes a copy of `push.asm` and places it in the current directory; it does not remove `push.asm` from the library. Now you can edit the extracted file. To replace the copy of `push.asm` in the library with the edited copy, enter:

```
ar430 -r macros push.asm
```

- If you want to use a command file, specify the command filename after the `-@` command. For example:

```
ar430 -@modules.cmd
```

The archiver responds as follows:

```
==> building archive 'modules.lib'
```

Example 6-1 is the `modules.cmd` command file. The `r` command specifies that the filenames given in the command file replace files of the same name in the `modules.lib` library. The `-u` option specifies that these files are replaced only when the current file has a more recent revision date than the file that is in the library.

Example 6-1. Archiver Command File

```
; Command file to replace members of the
;   modules library with updated files
; Use r command and u option:
ru
; Specify library name:
modules.lib
; List filenames to be replaced if updated:
align.asm
bss.asm
data.asm
text.asm
sect.asm
clink.asm
copy.asm
double.asm
drnolist.asm
emsg.asm
end.asm
```

6.5 Library Information Archiver Description

[Section 6.1](#) explains how to use the archiver to create libraries of object files for use in the linker of one or more applications. You can have multiple versions of the same object file libraries, each built with different sets of build options. For example, you might have different versions of your object file library for big and little endian, for different architecture revisions, or for different ABIs depending on the typical build environments of client applications. Unfortunately, if there are several different versions of your library it can become cumbersome to keep track of which version of the library needs to be linked in for a particular application.

When several versions of a single library are available, the library information archiver can be used to create an index library of all of the object file library versions. This index library is used in the linker in place of a particular version of your object file library. The linker looks at the build options of the application being linked, and uses the specified index library to determine which version of your object file library to include in the linker. If one or more compatible libraries were found in the index library, the most suitable compatible library is linked in for your application.

6.5.1 Invoking the Library Information Archiver

To invoke the library information archiver, enter:

```
libinfo430 [options] -o=libname libname1 [libname2 ... libnamen]
```

libinfo430 is the command that invokes the library information archiver.

options changes the default behavior of the library information archiver. These options are:

- o libname** specifies the name of the index library to create or update. This option is required.
- u** updates any existing information in the index library specified with the -o option instead of creating a new index.

libnames names individual object file libraries to be manipulated. When you enter a libname, you must enter a complete filename including extension, if applicable.

6.5.2 Library Information Archiver Example

Consider these object file libraries that all have the same members, but are built with different build options:

Object File Library Name	Build Options
mylib_msp_small.lib	--silicon_version=msp
mylib_mspcx_small.lib	--silicon_version=mspcx --data_model=small
mylib_mspcx_restricted.lib	--silicon_version=mspcx --data_model=restricted
mylib_mspcx_large_eh.lib	--silicon_version=mspcx --data_model=large --exceptions

Using the library information archiver, you can create an index library called mylib.lib from the above libraries:

```
libinfo430 -o mylib.lib mylib_msp_small.lib mylib_mspcx_small.lib
mylib_mspcx_restricted.lib mylib_mspcx_large.lib
```

You can now specify mylib.lib as a library for the linker of an application. The linker uses the index library to choose the appropriate version of the library to use. If the --issue_remarks option is specified before the --run_linker option, the linker reports which library was chosen.

- **Example 1 (MSP430X, Restricted data model):**

```
cl470 -silicon_version=mspcx -data_model=restricted --issue_remarks main.c -z -l lnx.cmd
./mylib.lib
<Linking>
remark: linking in "mylib_mspcx_restricted.lib" in place of "mylib.lib"
```

- **Example 2 (MSP430X, Large data model):**

```
cl470 -silicon_version=mspx -data_model=large --issue_remarks main.c -z -l lnk.cmd ./mylib.lib
Linking>
remark: linking in "mylib_mspx_large_eh.lib" in place of "mylib.lib"
```

In Example 2, a library with exception handling is linked in, since there is no large data model library without exception handling.

6.5.3 Listing the Contents of an Index Library

The archiver's `-t` option can be used on an index library to list the archives indexed by an index library:

```
ar430 t mylib.lib
      SIZE      DATE
-----
      133      Fri Jul 9 00:38:52 2010      mylib_msp_small.lib.libinfo
      133      Fri Jul 9 00:38:53 2010      mylib_mspx_small.lib.libinfo
      133      Fri Jul 9 00:38:53 2010      mylib_mspx_restricted.lib.libinfo
      135      Fri Jul 9 00:38:54 2010      mylib_mspx_large_eh.lib.libinfo
      0        Fri Jul 9 00:38:55 2010      __TI__$LIBINFO
```

The indexed object file libraries have an additional `.libinfo` extension in the archiver listing. The `__TI__$LIBINFO` member is a special member that designates *mylib.lib* as an index library, rather than a regular library.

If the archiver's `-d` command is used on an index library to delete a `.libinfo` member, the linker will no longer choose the corresponding library when the index library is specified.

Using any other archiver option with an index library, or using `-d` to remove the `__TI__$LIBINFO` member, results in undefined behavior, and is not supported.

6.5.4 Requirements

You must follow these requirements to use library index files:

- At least one of the application's object files must appear on the linker command line before the index library.
- Each object file library specified as input to the library information archiver must only contain object file members that are built with the same build options.
- The linker expects the index library and all of the libraries it indexes to be in a single directory.

Linker Description

The MSP430 linker creates executable object files by combining object modules. This chapter describes the linker options, directives, and statements used to create executable object files. Object libraries, command files, and other key concepts are discussed as well.

The concept of sections is basic to linker operation; [Chapter 2](#) discusses the object module sections in detail.

Topic	Page
7.1 Linker Overview	143
7.2 The Linker's Role in the Software Development Flow	144
7.3 Invoking the Linker	145
7.4 Linker Options	146
7.5 Linker Command Files	164
7.6 Object Libraries	196
7.7 Default Allocation Algorithm	197
7.8 Linker-Generated Copy Tables	198
7.9 Partial (Incremental) Linking	212
7.10 Linking C/C++ Code	213
7.11 Linker Example	216

7.1 Linker Overview

The MSP430 linker allows you to configure system memory by allocating output sections efficiently into the memory map. As the linker combines object files, it performs the following tasks:

- Allocates sections into the target system's configured memory
- Relocates symbols and sections to assign them to final addresses
- Resolves undefined external references between input files

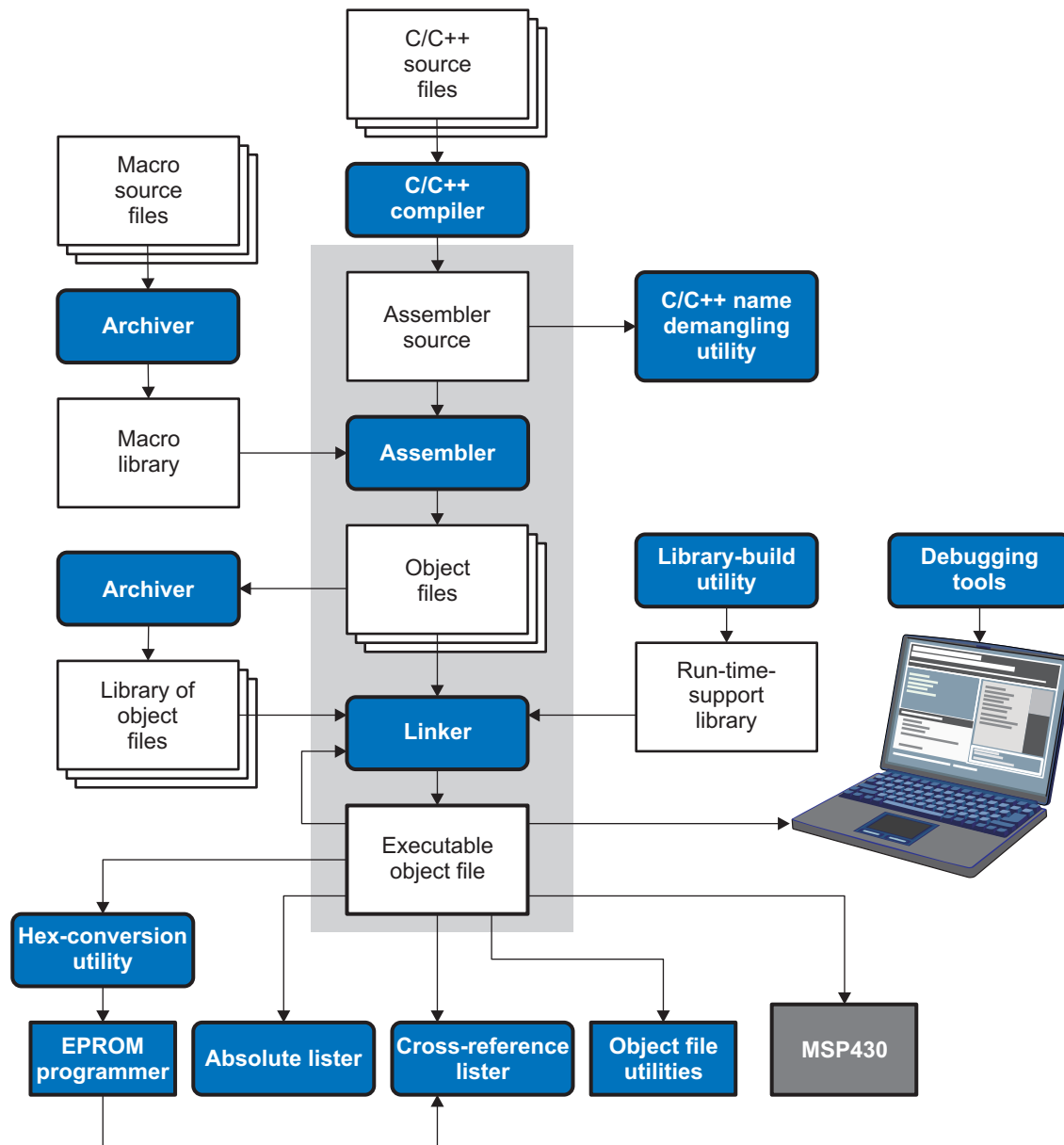
The linker command language controls memory configuration, output section definition, and address binding. The language supports expression assignment and evaluation. You configure system memory by defining and creating a memory model that you design. Two powerful directives, `MEMORY` and `SECTIONS`, allow you to:

- Allocate sections into specific areas of memory
- Combine object file sections
- Define or redefine global symbols at link time

7.2 The Linker's Role in the Software Development Flow

Figure 7-1 illustrates the linker's role in the software development process. The linker accepts several types of files as input, including object files, command files, libraries, and partially linked files. The linker creates an executable object module that can be downloaded to one of several development tools or executed by a MSP430 device.

Figure 7-1. The Linker in the MSP430 Software Development Flow



7.3 Invoking the Linker

The general syntax for invoking the linker is:

```
cl430 --run_linker [options] filename1 .... filenamen
```

cl430 --run_linker	is the command that invokes the linker. The --run_linker option's short form is -Z.
<i>options</i>	can appear anywhere on the command line or in a link command file. (Options are discussed in Section 7.4 .)
<i>filename</i> ₁ , <i>filename</i> _n	can be object files, link command files, or archive libraries. The default extension for all input files is .obj; any other extension must be explicitly specified. The linker can determine whether the input file is an object or ASCII file that contains linker commands. The default output filename is a.out, unless you use the --output_file option to name the output file.

There are two methods for invoking the linker:

- Specify options and filenames on the command line. This example links two files, file1.obj and file2.obj, and creates an output module named link.out.

```
cl430 --run_linker file1.obj file2.obj --output_file=link.out
```

- Put filenames and options in a link command file. Filenames that are specified inside a link command file must begin with a letter. For example, assume the file linker.cmd contains the following lines:

```
--output_file=link.out file1.obj file2.obj
```

Now you can invoke the linker from the command line; specify the command filename as an input file:

```
cl430 --run_linker linker.cmd
```

When you use a command file, you can also specify other options and files on the command line. For example, you could enter:

```
cl430 --run_linker --map_file=link.map linker.cmd file3.obj
```

The linker reads and processes a command file as soon as it encounters the filename on the command line, so it links the files in this order: file1.obj, file2.obj, and file3.obj. This example creates an output file called link.out and a map file called link.map.

For information on invoking the linker for C/C++ files, see [Section 7.10](#).

7.4 Linker Options

Linker options control linking operations. They can be placed on the command line or in a command file. Linker options must be preceded by a hyphen (-). Options can be separated from arguments (if they have them) by an optional space. [Table 7-1](#) summarizes the linker options.

Table 7-1. Basic Options Summary

Option	Alias	Description	Section
--output_file	-o	Names the executable output module. The default filename is a.out.	Section 7.4.19
--map_file	-m	Produces a map or listing of the input and output sections, including holes, and places the listing in <i>filename</i>	Section 7.4.14
--stack_size	-stack	Sets C system stack size to <i>size</i> bytes and defines a global symbol that specifies the stack size. Default = 128 bytes	Section 7.4.24
--heap_size	-heap	Sets heap size (for the dynamic memory allocation in C) to <i>size</i> bytes and defines a global symbol that specifies the heap size. Default = 128 bytes	Section 7.4.10
--use_hw_mpy[={16 32 F5}]		Replaces all references to the default integer/long multiply routine with the version of the multiply routine that uses the hardware multiplier support.	Section 7.4.28

Table 7-2. File Search Path Options Summary

Option	Alias	Description	Section
--library	-l	Names an archive library or link command <i>filename</i> as linker input	Section 7.4.12
--search_path	-i	Alters library-search algorithms to look in a directory named with <i>pathname</i> before looking in the default location. This option must appear before the --library option.	Section 7.4.12.1
--priority	-priority	Satisfies unresolved references by the first library that contains a definition for that symbol	Section 7.4.12.3
--reread_libs	-x	Forces rereading of libraries, which resolves back references	Section 7.4.12.3
--disable_auto_rts		Disables the automatic selection of a run-time-support library	Section 7.4.5

Table 7-3. Command File Preprocessing Options Summary

Option	Alias	Description	Section
--define		Predefines <i>name</i> as a preprocessor macro.	Section 7.4.7
--undefine		Removes the preprocessor macro <i>name</i> .	Section 7.4.7
--disable_pp		Disables preprocessing for command files	Section 7.4.7

Table 7-4. Diagnostic Options Summary

Option	Alias	Description	Section
--diag_error		Categorizes the diagnostic identified by <i>num</i> as an error	Section 7.4.4
--diag_remark		Categorizes the diagnostic identified by <i>num</i> as a remark	Section 7.4.4
--diag_suppress		Suppresses the diagnostic identified by <i>num</i>	Section 7.4.4
--diag_warning		Categorizes the diagnostic identified by <i>num</i> as a warning	Section 7.4.4
--display_error_number		Displays a diagnostic's identifiers along with its text	Section 7.4.4
--emit_warnings_as_errors	-pdew	Treats warnings as errors	Section 7.4.4
--issue_remarks		Issues remarks (nonserious warnings)	Section 7.4.4
--no_demangle		Disables demangling of symbol names in diagnostics	Section 7.4.16
--no_warnings		Suppresses warning diagnostics (errors are still issued)	Section 7.4.4
--set_error_limit		Sets the error limit to <i>num</i> . The linker abandons linking after this number of errors. (The default is 100.)	Section 7.4.4
--verbose_diagnostics		Provides verbose diagnostics that display the original source with line-wrap	Section 7.4.4
--warn_sections	-w	Displays a message when an undefined output section is created	Section 7.4.29

Table 7-5. Linker Output Options Summary

Option	Alias	Description	Section
--absolute_exe	-a	Produces an absolute, executable module. This is the default; if neither --absolute_exe nor --relocatable is specified, the linker acts as if --absolute_exe were specified.	Section 7.4.2.1
--mapfile_contents		Controls the information that appears in the map file.	Section 7.4.15
--relocatable	-r	Produces a nonexecutable, relocatable output module	Section 7.4.2.2
--rom	-r	Create a ROM object	
--run_abs	-abs	Produces an absolute listing file	Section 7.4.22
--xml_link_info		Generates a well-formed XML <i>file</i> containing detailed information about the result of a link	Section 7.4.30

Table 7-6. Symbol Management Options Summary

Option	Alias	Description	Section
--entry_point	-e	Defines a global symbol that specifies the primary entry point for the output module	Section 7.4.8
--globalize		Changes the symbol linkage to global for symbols that match <i>pattern</i>	Section 7.4.13
--hide		Hides global symbols that match <i>pattern</i>	Section 7.4.11
--localize		Changes the symbol linkage to local for symbols that match <i>pattern</i>	Section 7.4.13
--make_global	-g	Makes <i>symbol</i> global (overrides -h)	Section 7.4.13.2
--make_static	-h	Makes all global symbols static	Section 7.4.13.1
--no_sym_merge	-b	Disables merge of symbolic debugging information in COFF object files	Section 7.4.17
--no_symtable	-s	Strips symbol table information and line number entries from the output module	Section 7.4.18
--scan_libraries	-scanlibs	Scans all libraries for duplicate symbol definitions	Section 7.4.23
--symbol_map		Maps symbol references to a symbol definition of a different name	Section 7.4.26
--undef_sym	-u	Places an unresolved external <i>symbol</i> into the output module's symbol table	Section 7.4.27
--unhide		Reveals (un-hides) global symbols that match <i>pattern</i>	Section 7.4.11

Table 7-7. Run-Time Environment Options Summary

Option	Alias	Description	Section
--use_hw_mpy[={16 32 F5}]		Replaces all references to the default integer/long multiply routine with the version of the multiply routine that uses the hardware multiplier support.	Section 7.4.28
--arg_size	--args	Allocates memory to be used by the loader to pass arguments	Section 7.4.3
--fill_value	-f	Sets default fill values for holes within output sections; <i>fill_value</i> is a 32-bit constant	Section 7.4.9
--ram_model	-cr	Initializes variables at load time	Section 7.4.20
--rom_model	-c	Autoinitializes variables at run time	Section 7.4.20

Table 7-8. Miscellaneous Options Summary

Option	Alias	Description	Section
--disable_clink	-j	Disables conditional linking of COFF object modules	Section 7.4.6
--linker_help	-help	Displays information about syntax and available options	–
--preferred_order		Prioritizes placement of functions	
--strict_compatibility		Performs more conservative and rigorous compatibility checking of input object files	Section 7.4.25

7.4.1 Wild Cards in File, Section, and Symbol Patterns

The linker allows file, section, and symbol names to be specified using the asterisk (*) and question mark (?) wild cards. Using * matches any number of characters and using ? matches a single character. Using wild cards can make it easier to handle related objects, provided they follow a suitable naming convention.

For example:

```
mp3*.obj    /* matches anything .obj that begins with mp3    */
task?.o*    /* matches task1.obj, task2.obj, taskX.o55, etc. */
```

```
SECTIONS
{
    .fast_code: { *.obj(*fast*) }          > FAST_MEM
    .vectors   : { vectors.obj(.vector:part1:*) > 0xFFFFFFFF00
    .str_code  : { rts*.lib<str*.obj>(.text) } > S1ROM
}
```

7.4.2 Relocation Capabilities (--absolute_exe and --relocatable Options)

The linker performs relocation, which is the process of adjusting all references to a symbol when the symbol's address changes. The linker supports two options (--absolute_exe and --relocatable) that allow you to produce an absolute or a relocatable output module. The linker also supports a third option (-ar) that allows you to produce an executable, relocatable output module.

When the linker encounters a file that contains no relocation or symbol table information, it issues a warning message (but continues executing). Relinking an absolute file can be successful only if each input file contains no information that needs to be relocated (that is, each file has no unresolved references and is bound to the same virtual address that it was bound to when the linker created it).

7.4.2.1 Producing an Absolute Output Module (--absolute_exe option)

When you use the --absolute_exe option without the --relocatable option, the linker produces an *absolute, executable* output module. Absolute files contain *no* relocation information. Executable files contain the following:

- Special symbols defined by the linker (see [Section 7.5.8.4](#))
- An optional header that describes information such as the program entry point
- No unresolved references

The following example links file1.obj and file2.obj and creates an absolute output module called a.out:

```
c1430 --run_linker --absolute_exe file1.obj file2.obj
```

The --absolute_exe and --relocatable Options

NOTE: If you do not use the --absolute_exe or the --relocatable option, the linker acts as if you specified --absolute_exe.

7.4.2.2 Producing a Relocatable Output Module (--relocatable option)

When you use the `--relocatable` option, the linker retains relocation entries in the output module. If the output module is relocated (at load time) or relinked (by another linker execution), use `--relocatable` to retain the relocation entries.

The linker produces a file that is not executable when you use the `--relocatable` option without the `--absolute_exe` option. A file that is not executable does not contain special linker symbols or an optional header. The file can contain unresolved references, but these references do not prevent creation of an output module.

This example links `file1.obj` and `file2.obj` and creates a relocatable output module called `a.out`:

```
cl430 --run_linker --relocatable file1.obj file2.obj
```

The output file `a.out` can be relinked with other object files or relocated at load time. (Linking a file that will be relinked with other files is called partial linking. For more information, see [Section 7.9](#).)

7.4.2.3 Producing an Executable, Relocatable Output Module (-ar Option)

If you invoke the linker with both the `--absolute_exe` and `--relocatable` options, the linker produces an *executable, relocatable* object module. The output file contains the special linker symbols, an optional header, and all resolved symbol references; however, the relocation information is retained.

This example links `file1.obj` and `file2.obj` and creates an executable, relocatable output module called `xr.out`:

```
cl430 --run_linker -ar file1.obj file2.obj --output_file=xr.out
```

7.4.3 Allocate Memory for Use by the Loader to Pass Arguments (--arg_size Option)

The `--arg_size` option instructs the linker to allocate memory to be used by the loader to pass arguments from the command line of the loader to the program. The syntax of the `--arg_size` option is:

--arg_size= size

The *size* is a number representing the number of bytes to be allocated in target memory for command-line arguments.

By default, the linker creates the `__c_args__` symbol and sets it to -1. When you specify `--arg_size=size`, the following occur:

- The linker creates an uninitialized section named `.args` of *size* bytes.
- The `__c_args__` symbol contains the address of the `.args` section.

The loader and the target boot code use the `.args` section and the `__c_args__` symbol to determine whether and how to pass arguments from the host to the target program. See the *MSP430 Optimizing C/C++ Compiler User's Guide* for information about the loader.

7.4.4 Control Linker Diagnostics

The linker uses certain C/C++ compiler options to control linker-generated diagnostics. The diagnostic options must be specified before the `--run_linker` option.

--diag_error=num	Categorizes the diagnostic identified by <i>num</i> as an error. To determine the numeric identifier of a diagnostic message, use the <code>--display_error_number</code> option first in a separate link. Then use <code>--diag_error=num</code> to recategorize the diagnostic as an error. You can only alter the severity of discretionary diagnostics.
--diag_remark=num	Categorizes the diagnostic identified by <i>num</i> as a remark. To determine the numeric identifier of a diagnostic message, use the <code>--display_error_number</code> option first in a separate link. Then use <code>--diag_remark=num</code> to recategorize the diagnostic as a remark. You can only alter the severity of discretionary diagnostics.
--diag_suppress=num	Suppresses the diagnostic identified by <i>num</i> . To determine the numeric identifier of a diagnostic message, use the <code>--display_error_number</code> option first in a separate link. Then use <code>--diag_suppress=num</code> to suppress the diagnostic. You can only suppress discretionary diagnostics.
--diag_warning=num	Categorizes the diagnostic identified by <i>num</i> as a warning. To determine the numeric identifier of a diagnostic message, use the <code>--display_error_number</code> option first in a separate link. Then use <code>--diag_warning=num</code> to recategorize the diagnostic as a warning. You can only alter the severity of discretionary diagnostics.
--display_error_number	Displays a diagnostic's numeric identifier along with its text. Use this option in determining which arguments you need to supply to the diagnostic suppression options (<code>--diag_suppress</code> , <code>--diag_error</code> , <code>--diag_remark</code> , and <code>--diag_warning</code>). This option also indicates whether a diagnostic is discretionary. A discretionary diagnostic is one whose severity can be overridden. A discretionary diagnostic includes the suffix <code>-D</code> ; otherwise, no suffix is present. See the <i>MSP430 Optimizing C/C++ Compiler User's Guide</i> for more information on understanding diagnostic messages.
--emit_warnings_as_errors	Treats all warnings as errors. This option cannot be used with the <code>--no_warnings</code> option. The <code>--diag_remark</code> option takes precedence over this option. This option takes precedence over the <code>--diag_warning</code> option.
--issue_remarks	Issues remarks (nonserious warnings), which are suppressed by default.
--no_warnings	Suppresses warning diagnostics (errors are still issued).
--set_error_limit=num	Sets the error limit to <i>num</i> , which can be any decimal value. The linker abandons linking after this number of errors. (The default is 100.)
--verbose_diagnostics	Provides verbose diagnostics that display the original source with line-wrap and indicate the position of the error in the source line

7.4.5 Disable Automatic Library Selection (`--disable_auto_rts` Option)

The `--disable_auto_rts` option disables the automatic selection of a run-time-support library. See the *MSP430 Optimizing C/C++ Compiler User's Guide* for details on the automatic selection process.

7.4.6 Disable Conditional Linking (`--disable_clink` Option)

The `--disable_clink` option disables removal of unreferenced sections in COFF object modules. Only sections marked as candidates for removal with the `.clink` assembler directive are affected by conditional linking. See [Conditionally Leave Section Out of Object Module Output](#) for details on setting up conditional linking using the `.clink` directive.

7.4.7 Link Command File Preprocessing (**--disable_pp**, **--define** and **--undefine** Options)

The linker preprocesses link command files using a standard C preprocessor. Therefore, the command files can contain well-known preprocessing directives such as `#define`, `#include`, and `#if / #endif`.

Three linker options control the preprocessor:

--disable_pp	Disables preprocessing for command files
--define=<i>name</i>[=<i>val</i>]	Predefines <i>name</i> as a preprocessor macro
--undefine=<i>name</i>	Removes the macro <i>name</i>

The compiler has `--define` and `--undefine` options with the same meanings. However, the linker options are distinct; only `--define` and `--undefine` options specified after `--run_linker` are passed to the linker. For example:

```
c1430 --define=FOO=1 main.c --run_linker --define=BAR=2 lnk.cmd
```

The linker sees only the `--define` for `BAR`; the compiler only sees the `--define` for `FOO`.

When one command file `#include`s another, preprocessing context is carried from parent to child in the usual way (that is, macros defined in the parent are visible in the child). However, when a command file is invoked other than through `#include`, either on the command line or by the typical way of being named in another command file, preprocessing context is **not** carried into the nested file. The exception to this is `--define` and `--undefine` options, which apply globally from the point they are encountered. For example:

```
--define GLOBAL
#define LOCAL

#include "incfile.cmd"      /* sees GLOBAL and LOCAL */
nestfile.cmd              /* only sees GLOBAL      */
```

Two cautions apply to the use of `--define` and `--undefine` in command files. First, they have global effect as mentioned above. Second, since they are not actually preprocessing directives themselves, they are subject to macro substitution, probably with unintended consequences. This effect can be defeated by quoting the symbol name. For example:

```
--define MYSYM=123
--undefine MYSYM      /* expands to --undefine 123 (!) */
--undefine "MYSYM"    /* ahh, that's better          */
```

The linker uses the same search paths to find `#include` files as it does to find libraries. That is, `#include` files are searched in the following places:

1. If the `#include` file name is in quotes (rather than `<brackets>`), in the directory of the current file
2. In the list of directories specified with `--library` options or environment variables (see [Section 7.4.12](#))

There are two exceptions: relative pathnames (such as `../name`) always search the current directory; and absolute pathnames (such as `/usr/tools/name`) bypass search paths entirely.

The linker has the standard built-in definitions for the macros `__FILE__`, `__DATE__`, and `__TIME__`. It does not, however, have the compiler-specific options for the target (`__MSP430__`), version (`__TI_COMPILER_VERSION__`), run-time model, and so on.

7.4.8 Define an Entry Point (`--entry_point` Option)

The memory address at which a program begins executing is called the *entry point*. When a loader loads a program into target memory, the program counter (PC) must be initialized to the entry point; the PC then points to the beginning of the program.

The linker can assign one of four values to the entry point. These values are listed below in the order in which the linker tries to use them. If you use one of the first three values, it must be an external symbol in the symbol table.

- The value specified by the `--entry_point` option. The syntax is:
`--entry_point= global_symbol`
where *global_symbol* defines the entry point and must be defined as an external symbol of the input files. The external symbol name of C or C++ objects may be different than the name as declared in the source language; refer to the *MSP430 Optimizing C/C++ Compiler User's Guide*.
- The value of symbol `_c_int00` (if present). The `_c_int00` symbol *must* be the entry point if you are linking code produced by the C compiler.
- The value of symbol `main` (if present)
- 0 (default value)

This example links `file1.obj` and `file2.obj`. The symbol `begin` is the entry point; `begin` must be defined as external in `file1` or `file2`.

```
cl430 --run_linker --entry_point=begin file1.obj file2.obj
```

7.4.9 Set Default Fill Value (`--fill_value` Option)

The `--fill_value` option fills the holes formed within output sections. The syntax for the option is:

`--fill_value= value`

The argument *value* is a 32-bit constant (up to eight hexadecimal digits). If you do not use `--fill_value`, the linker uses 0 as the default fill value.

This example fills holes with the hexadecimal value `ABCDABCD`:

```
cl430 --run_linker --fill_value=0xABCDABCD file1.obj file2.obj
```

7.4.10 Define Heap Size (`--heap_size` Option)

The C/C++ compiler uses an uninitialized section called `.system` for the C run-time memory pool used by `malloc()`. You can set the size of this memory pool at link time by using the `--heap_size` option. The syntax for the `--heap_size` option is:

`--heap_size= size`

The *size* must be a constant. This example defines a 4K byte heap:

```
cl430 --run_linker --heap_size=0x1000 /* defines a 4k heap (.system section)*/
```

The linker creates the `.system` section only if there is a `.system` section in an input file.

The linker also creates a global symbol `__SYSTEM_SIZE` and assigns it a value equal to the size of the heap. The default size is 128 bytes.

For more information about C/C++ linking, see [Section 7.10](#).

7.4.11 Hiding Symbols

Symbol hiding prevents the symbol from being listed in the output file's symbol table. While localization is used to prevent name space clashes in a link unit, symbol hiding is used to obscure symbols which should not be visible outside a link unit. Such symbol's names appear only as empty strings or "no name" in object file readers. The linker supports symbol hiding through the `--hide` and `--unhide` options.

The syntax for these options are:

`--hide='pattern'`

`--unhide='pattern'`

The *pattern* is a string with optional wildcards `?` or `*`. Use `?` to match a single character and use `*` to match zero or more characters.

The `--hide` option hides global symbols which have a linkname matching the *pattern*. It hides the symbols matching the pattern by changing the name to an empty string. A global symbol which is hidden is also localized.

The `--unhide` option reveals (un-hides) global symbols that match the *pattern* that are hidden by the `--hide` option. The `--unhide` option excludes symbols that match pattern from symbol hiding provided the pattern defined by `--unhide` is more restrictive than the pattern defined by `--hide`.

These options have the following properties:

- The `--hide` and `--unhide` options can be specified more than once on the command line.
- The order of `--hide` and `--unhide` has no significance.
- A symbol is matched by only one pattern defined by either `--hide` or `--unhide`.
- A symbol is matched by the most restrictive pattern. Pattern A is considered more restrictive than Pattern B, if Pattern A matches a narrower set than Pattern B.
- It is an error if a symbol matches patterns from `--hide` and `--unhide` and if one does not supersede other. Pattern A supersedes pattern B if A can match everything B can, and some more. If Pattern A supersedes Pattern B, then Pattern B is said to more restrictive than Pattern A.
- These options affect final and partial linking.

In map files these symbols are listed under the Hidden Symbols heading.

7.4.12 Alter the Library Search Algorithm (--library Option, --search_path Option, and MSP430_C_DIR Environment Variable)

Usually, when you want to specify a file as linker input, you simply enter the filename; the linker looks for the file in the current directory. For example, suppose the current directory contains the library object.lib. Assume that this library defines symbols that are referenced in the file file1.obj. This is how you link the files:

```
cl430 --run_linker file1.obj object.lib
```

If you want to use a file that is not in the current directory, use the --library linker option. The --library option's short form is -l. The syntax for this option is:

--library=[pathname] filename

The *filename* is the name of an archive, an object file, or link command file. You can specify up to 128 search paths.

The --library option is not required when one or more members of an object library are specified for input to an output section. For more information about allocating archive members, see [Section 7.5.4.5](#).

You can augment the linker's directory search algorithm by using the --search_path linker option or the MSP430_C_DIR environment variable. The linker searches for object libraries and command files in the following order:

1. It searches directories named with the --search_path linker option. The --search_path option must appear before the --library option on the command line or in a command file.
2. It searches directories named with MSP430_C_DIR.
3. If MSP430_C_DIR is not set, it searches directories named with the assembler's MSP430_A_DIR environment variable.
4. It searches the current directory.

7.4.12.1 Name an Alternate Library Directory (--search_path Option)

The --search_path option names an alternate directory that contains input files. The --search_path option's short form is -I. The syntax for this option is:

--search_path= pathname

The *pathname* names a directory that contains input files.

When the linker is searching for input files named with the --library option, it searches through directories named with --search_path first. Each --search_path option specifies only one directory, but you can have several --search_path options per invocation. When you use the --search_path option to name an alternate directory, it must precede any --library option used on the command line or in a command file.

For example, assume that there are two archive libraries called r.lib and lib2.lib that reside in ld and ld2 directories. The table below shows the directories that r.lib and lib2.lib reside in, how to set environment variable, and how to use both libraries during a link. Select the row for your operating system:

Operating System	Enter
UNIX (Bourne shell)	cl430 --run_linker f1.obj f2.obj --search_path=/ld --search_path=/ld2
	--library=r.lib --library=lib2.lib
Windows	cl430 --run_linker f1.obj f2.obj --search_path=ld --search_path=ld2
	--library=r.lib --library=lib2.lib

7.4.12.2 Name an Alternate Library Directory (MSP430_C_DIR Environment Variable)

An environment variable is a system symbol that you define and assign a string to. The linker uses an environment variable named MSP430_C_DIR to name alternate directories that contain object libraries. The command syntaxes for assigning the environment variable are:

Operating System	Enter
UNIX (Bourne shell)	MSP430_C_DIR=" <i>pathname₁</i> ; <i>pathname₂</i> ; . . . ;" ; export MSP430_C_DIR
Windows	set MSP430_C_DIR= <i>pathname₁</i> ; <i>pathname₂</i> ; . . .

The *pathnames* are directories that contain input files. Use the --library linker option on the command line or in a command file to tell the linker which library or link command file to search for. The pathnames must follow these constraints:

- Pathnames must be separated with a semicolon.
- Spaces or tabs at the beginning or end of a path are ignored. For example the space before and after the semicolon in the following is ignored:

```
set MSP430_C_DIR= c:\path\one\to\tools ; c:\path\two\to\tools
```

- Spaces and tabs are allowed within paths to accommodate Windows directories that contain spaces. For example, the pathnames in the following are valid:

```
set MSP430_C_DIR=c:\first path\to\tools;d:\second path\to\tools
```

In the example below, assume that two archive libraries called r.lib and lib2.lib reside in ld and ld2 directories. The table below shows how to set the environment variable, and how to use both libraries during a link. Select the row for your operating system:

Operating System	Invocation Command
UNIX (Bourne shell)	MSP430_C_DIR="/ld ;/ld2"; export MSP430_C_DIR; cl430 --run_linker f1.obj f2.obj --library=r.lib --library=lib2.lib
Windows	MSP430_C_DIR=ld;ld2 cl430 --run linker f1.obj f2.obj --library=r.lib --library=lib2.lib

The environment variable remains set until you reboot the system or reset the variable by entering:

Operating System	Enter
UNIX (Bourne shell)	unset MSP430_C_DIR
Windows	set MSP430_C_DIR=

The assembler uses an environment variable named MSP430_A_DIR to name alternate directories that contain copy/include files or macro libraries. If MSP430_C_DIR is not set, the linker searches for object libraries in the directories named with MSP430_A_DIR. For information about MSP430_A_DIR, see [Section 3.5.2](#). For more information about object libraries, see [Section 7.6](#).

7.4.12.3 Exhaustively Read and Search Libraries (--reread_libs and --priority Options)

There are two ways to exhaustively search for unresolved symbols:

- Reread libraries if you cannot resolve a symbol reference (--reread_libs).
- Search libraries in the order that they are specified (--priority).

The linker normally reads input files, including archive libraries, only once when they are encountered on the command line or in the command file. When an archive is read, any members that resolve references to undefined symbols are included in the link. If an input file later references a symbol defined in a previously read archive library, the reference is not resolved.

With the `--reread_libs` option, you can force the linker to reread all libraries. The linker rereads libraries until no more references can be resolved. Linking using `--reread_libs` may be slower, so you should use it only as needed. For example, if `a.lib` contains a reference to a symbol defined in `b.lib`, and `b.lib` contains a reference to a symbol defined in `a.lib`, you can resolve the mutual dependencies by listing one of the libraries twice, as in:

```
cl430 --run_linker --library=a.lib --library=b.lib --library=a.lib
```

or you can force the linker to do it for you:

```
cl430 --run_linker --reread_libs --library=a.lib --library=b.lib
```

The `--priority` option provides an alternate search mechanism for libraries. Using `--priority` causes each unresolved reference to be satisfied by the first library that contains a definition for that symbol. For example:

```
objfile  references A
lib1     defines B
lib2     defines A, B; obj defining A references B
% cl430 --run_linker objfile lib1 lib2
```

Under the existing model, `objfile` resolves its reference to `A` in `lib2`, pulling in a reference to `B`, which resolves to the `B` in `lib2`.

Under `--priority`, `objfile` resolves its reference to `A` in `lib2`, pulling in a reference to `B`, but now `B` is resolved by searching the libraries in order and resolves `B` to the first definition it finds, namely the one in `lib1`.

The `--priority` option is useful for libraries that provide overriding definitions for related sets of functions in other libraries without having to provide a complete version of the whole library.

For example, suppose you want to override versions of `malloc` and `free` defined in the `rts430.lib` without providing a full replacement for `rts430.lib`. Using `--priority` and linking your new library before `rts430.lib` guarantees that all references to `malloc` and `free` resolve to the new library.

The `--priority` option is intended to support linking programs with SYS/BIOS where situations like the one illustrated above occur.

7.4.13 Change Symbol Localization

Symbol localization changes symbol linkage from global to local (static). This is used to obscure global symbols in a library which should not be visible outside the library, but must be global because they are accessed by several modules in the library. The linker supports symbol localization through the `--localize` and `--globalize` linker options.

The syntax for these options are:

`--localize='pattern'`

`--globalize='pattern'`

The *pattern* is a string with optional wild cards `?` or `*`. Use `?` to match a single character and use `*` to match zero or more characters.

The `--localize` option changes the symbol linkage to local for symbols matching the *pattern*.

The `--globalize` option changes the symbol linkage to global for symbols matching the *pattern*. The `--globalize` option only affects symbols that are localized by the `--localize` option. The `--globalize` option excludes symbols that match the pattern from symbol localization, provided the pattern defined by `--globalize` is more restrictive than the pattern defined by `--localize`.

Specifying C/C++ Symbols with `--localize` and `--globalize`

NOTE: For COFF and EABI, the link-time symbol is the same as the C/C++ identifier name.

These options have the following properties:

- The `--localize` and `--globalize` options can be specified more than once on the command line.
- The order of `--localize` and `--globalize` options has no significance.

- A symbol is matched by only one pattern defined by either `--localize` or `--globalize`.
- A symbol is matched by the most restrictive pattern. Pattern A is considered more restrictive than Pattern B, if Pattern A matches a narrower set than Pattern B.
- It is an error if a symbol matches patterns from `--localize` and `--globalize` and if one does not supersede other. Pattern A supersedes pattern B if A can match everything B can, and some more. If Pattern A supersedes Pattern B, then Pattern B is said to more restrictive than Pattern A.
- These options affect final and partial linking.

In map files these symbols are listed under the Localized Symbols heading.

7.4.13.1 Make All Global Symbols Static (`--make_static` Option)

The `--make_static` option makes all global symbols static. Static symbols are not visible to externally linked modules. By making global symbols static, global symbols are essentially hidden. This allows external symbols with the same name (in different files) to be treated as unique.

The `--make_static` option effectively nullifies all `.global` assembler directives. All symbols become local to the module in which they are defined, so no external references are possible. For example, assume `file1.obj` and `file2.obj` both define global symbols called `EXT`. By using the `--make_static` option, you can link these files without conflict. The symbol `EXT` defined in `file1.obj` is treated separately from the symbol `EXT` defined in `file2.obj`.

```
cl430 --run_linker --make_static file1.obj file2.obj
```

7.4.13.2 Make a Symbol Global (`--make_global` Option)

The `--make_static` option makes all global symbols static. If you have a symbol that you want to remain global and you use the `--make_static` option, you can use the `--make_global` option to declare that symbol to be global. The `--make_global` option overrides the effect of the `--make_static` option for the symbol that you specify. The syntax for the `--make_global` option is:

```
--make_global= global_symbol
```

7.4.14 Create a Map File (`--map_file` Option)

The syntax for the `--map_file` option is:

```
--map_file= filename
```

The linker map describes:

- Memory configuration
- Input and output section allocation
- Linker-generated copy tables
- The addresses of external symbols after they have been relocated
- Hidden and localized symbols

The map file contains the name of the output module and the entry point; it can also contain up to three tables:

- A table showing the new memory configuration if any nondefault memory is specified (memory configuration). The table has the following columns; this information is generated on the basis of the information in the `MEMORY` directive in the link command file:
 - **Name.** This is the name of the memory range specified with the `MEMORY` directive.
 - **Origin.** This specifies the starting address of a memory range.
 - **Length.** This specifies the length of a memory range.
 - **Unused.** This specifies the total amount of unused (available) memory in that memory area.
 - **Attributes.** This specifies one to four attributes associated with the named range:

- R specifies that the memory can be read.
- W specifies that the memory can be written to.
- X specifies that the memory can contain executable code.
- I specifies that the memory can be initialized.

For more information about the MEMORY directive, see [Section 7.5.3](#).

- A table showing the linked addresses of each output section and the input sections that make up the output sections (section allocation map). This table has the following columns; this information is generated on the basis of the information in the SECTIONS directive in the link command file:
 - **Output section.** This is the name of the output section specified with the SECTIONS directive.
 - **Origin.** The first origin listed for each output section is the starting address of that output section. The indented origin value is the starting address of that portion of the output section.
 - **Length.** The first length listed for each output section is the length of that output section. The indented length value is the length of that portion of the output section.
 - **Attributes/input sections.** This lists the input file or value associated with an output section. If the input section could not be allocated, the map file will indicate this with "FAILED TO ALLOCATE".

For more information about the SECTIONS directive, see [Section 7.5.4](#).

- A table showing each external symbol and its address sorted by symbol name.
- A table showing each external symbol and its address sorted by symbol address.

The following example links file1.obj and file2.obj and creates a map file called map.out:

```
cl430 --run_linker file1.obj file2.obj --map_file=map.out
```

[Example 7-26](#) shows an example of a map file.

7.4.15 Managing Map File Contents (--mapfile_contents Option)

The --mapfile_contents option assists with managing the content of linker-generated map files. The syntax for the --mapfile_contents option is:

--mapfile_contents= *filter*[, *filter*]

When the --map_file option is specified, the linker produces a map file containing information about memory usage, placement information about sections that were created during a link, details about linker-generated copy tables, and symbol values.

The new --mapfile_contents option provides a mechanism for you to control what information is included in or excluded from a map file. When you specify --mapfile_contents=help from the command line, a help screen listing available filter options is displayed.

The following filter options are available:

Attribute	Description	Default State
copytables	Copy tables	On
entry	Entry point	On
load_addr	Display load addresses	Off
memory	Memory ranges	On
sections	Sections	On
sym_defs	Defined symbols per file	Off
sym_name	Symbols sorted by name	On
sym_runaddr	Symbols sorted by run address	On
all	Enables all attributes	
none	Disables all attributes	

The `--mapfile_contents` option controls display filter settings by specifying a comma-delimited list of display attributes. When prefixed with the word `no`, an attribute is disabled instead of enabled. For example:

```
--mapfile_contents=copytables,noentry
--mapfile_contents=all,nocopytables
--mapfile_contents=none,entry
```

By default, those sections that are currently included in the map file when the `--map_file` option is specified are included. The filters specified in the `--mapfile_contents` options are processed in the order that they appear in the command line. In the third example above, the first filter, `none`, clears all map file content. The second filter, `entry`, then enables information about entry points to be included in the generated map file. That is, when `--mapfile_contents=none,entry` is specified, the map file contains *only* information about entry points.

There are two new filters included with the `--mapfile_contents` option, `load_addr` and `sym_defs`. These are both disabled by default. If you turn on the `load_addr` filter, the map file includes the load address of symbols that are included in the symbol list in addition to the run address (if the load address is different from the run address).

The `sym_defs` filter can be used to include information about all static and global symbols defined in an application on a file by file basis. You may find it useful to replace the `sym_name` and `sym_runaddr` sections of the map file with the `sym_defs` section by specifying the following `--mapfile_contents` option:

```
--mapfile_contents=nosym_name,nosym_runaddr,sym_defs
```

7.4.16 Disable Name Demangling (`--no_demangle`)

By default, the linker uses demangled symbol names in diagnostics. For example:

undefined symbol	first referenced in file
<code>ANewClass::getValue()</code>	<code>test.obj</code>

The `--no_demangle` option disables the demangling of symbol names in diagnostics. For example:

undefined symbol	first referenced in file
<code>_ZN9ANewClass8getValueEv</code>	<code>test.obj</code>

7.4.17 Disable Merge of Symbolic Debugging Information (`--no_sym_merge` Option)

By default, the linker eliminates duplicate entries of symbolic debugging information. Such duplicate information is commonly generated when a C program is compiled for debugging. For example:

```
-[ header.h ]-
typedef struct
{
    <define some structure members>
} XYZ;

-[ f1.c ]-
#include "header.h"
...

-[ f2.c ]-
#include "header.h"
...
```

When these files are compiled for debugging, both `f1.obj` and `f2.obj` have symbolic debugging entries to describe type `XYZ`. For the final output file, only one set of these entries is necessary. The linker eliminates the duplicate entries automatically.

Use the COFF only `--no_sym_merge` option if you want the linker to keep such duplicate entries in COFF object files. Using the `--no_sym_merge` option has the effect of the linker running faster and using less host memory during linking, but the resulting executable file may be very large due to duplicated debug information.

7.4.18 Strip Symbolic Information (`--no_symtable` Option)

The `--no_symtable` option creates a smaller output module by omitting symbol table information and line number entries. The `--no_sym_table` option is useful for production applications when you do not want to disclose symbolic information to the consumer.

This example links `file1.obj` and `file2.obj` and creates an output module, stripped of line numbers and symbol table information, named `nosym.out`:

```
cl430 --run_linker --output_file=nosym.out --no_symtable file1.obj file2.obj
```

Using the `--no_symtable` option limits later use of a symbolic debugger.

Stripping Symbolic Information

NOTE: The `--no_symtable` option is deprecated. To remove symbol table information, use the `strip430` utility as described in [Section 10.4](#).

7.4.19 Name an Output Module (`--output_file` Option)

The linker creates an output module when no errors are encountered. If you do not specify a filename for the output module, the linker gives it the default name `a.out`. If you want to write the output module to a different file, use the `--output_file` option. The syntax for the `--output_file` option is:

`--output_file=` *filename*

The *filename* is the new output module name.

This example links `file1.obj` and `file2.obj` and creates an output module named `run.out`:

```
cl430 --run_linker --output_file=run.out file1.obj file2.obj
```

7.4.20 C Language Options (`--ram_model` and `--rom_model` Options)

The `--ram_model` and `--rom_model` options cause the linker to use linking conventions that are required by the C compiler.

- The `--ram_model` option tells the linker to initialize variables at load time.
- The `--rom_model` option tells the linker to autoinitialize variables at run time.

For more information, see [Section 7.10](#), [Section 7.10.4](#), and [Section 7.10.5](#).

7.4.21 Retain Discarded Sections (--retain Option)

When `--unused_section_elimination` is on, the ELF linker does not include a section in the final link if it is not needed in the executable to resolve references. The `--retain` option tells the linker to retain a list of sections that would otherwise not be retained. This option accepts the wildcards `'*'` and `'?'`. When wildcards are used, the argument should be in quotes. The syntax for this option is:

--retain=sym_or_scn_spec

The `--retain` option take one of the following forms:

- **--retain= symbol_spec**

Specifying the symbol format retains sections that define *symbol_spec*. For example, this code retains sections that define symbols that start with `init`:

```
--retain='init*'
```

You cannot specify `--retain='*'`.

- **--retain= file_spec(scn_spec[, scn_spec, ...])**

Specifying the file format retains sections that match one or more *scn_spec* from files matching the *file_spec*. For example, this code retains `.initvec` sections from all input files:

```
--retain='init*'
```

You can specify `--retain='(*)'` to retain all sections from all input files. However, this does not prevent sections from library members from being optimized out.

- **--retain= ar_spec<mem_spec, [mem_spec, ...]>(scn_spec[, scn_spec, ...])**

Specifying the archive format retains sections matching one or more *scn_spec* from members matching one or more *mem_spec* from archive files matching *ar_spec*. For example, this code retains the `.text` sections from `printf.obj` in the `rts430_eabi.lib` library:

```
--retain=rts430_eabi.lib<printf.obj>(.text)
```

If the library is specified with the `--library` option (`--library=rts64plus_eabi.lib`) the library search path is used to search for the library. You cannot specify `'*<*>(*)'`.

7.4.22 Create an Absolute Listing File (--run_abs Option)

The `--run_abs` option produces an output file for each file that was linked. These files are named with the input filenames and an extension of `.abs`. Header files, however, do not generate a corresponding `.abs` file.

7.4.23 Scan All Libraries for Duplicate Symbol Definitions (--scan_libraries)

The `--scan_libraries` option scans all libraries during a link looking for duplicate symbol definitions to those symbols that are actually included in the link. The scan does not consider absolute symbols or symbols defined in COMDAT sections. The `--scan_libraries` option helps determine those symbols that were actually chosen by the linker over other existing definitions of the same symbol in a library.

The library scanning feature can be used to check against unintended resolution of a symbol reference to a definition when multiple definitions are available in the libraries.

7.4.24 Define Stack Size (**--stack_size** Option)

The MSP430 C/C++ compiler uses an uninitialized section, `.stack`, to allocate space for the run-time stack. You can set the size of this section in bytes at link time with the `--stack_size` option. The syntax for the `--stack_size` option is:

--stack_size= *size*

The *size* must be a constant and is in bytes. This example defines a 4K byte stack:

```
cl430 --run_linker --stack_size=0x1000 /* defines a 4K heap (.stack section)*/
```

If you specified a different stack size in an input section, the input section stack size is ignored. Any symbols defined in the input section remain valid; only the stack size is different.

When the linker defines the `.stack` section, it also defines a global symbol, `__STACK_SIZE`, and assigns it a value equal to the size of the section. The default software stack size is 128 bytes.

7.4.25 Enforce Strict Compatibility (**--strict_compatibility** Option)

The linker performs more conservative and rigorous compatibility checking of input object files when you specify the `--strict_compatibility` option. Using this option guards against additional potential compatibility issues, but may signal false compatibility errors when linking in object files built with an older toolset, or with object files built with another compiler vendor's toolset. To avoid issues with legacy libraries, the `--strict_compatibility` option is turned off by default.

7.4.26 Mapping of Symbols (**--symbol_map** Option)

Symbol mapping allows a symbol reference to be resolved by a symbol with a different name. Symbol mapping allows functions to be overridden with alternate definitions. This feature can be used to patch in alternate implementations, which provide patches (bug fixes) or alternate functionality. The syntax for the `--symbol_map` option is:

--symbol_map= *refname=defname*

For example, the following code makes the linker resolve any references to `foo` by the definition `foo_patch`:

```
--symbol_map='foo=foo_patch'
```

7.4.27 Introduce an Unresolved Symbol (**--undef_sym** Option)

The `--undef_sym` option introduces the linkname for an unresolved symbol into the linker's symbol table. This forces the linker to search a library and include the member that defines the symbol. The linker must encounter the `--undef_sym` option *before* it links in the member that defines the symbol. The syntax for the `--undef_sym` option is:

--undef_sym= *symbol*

For example, suppose a library named `rts430.lib` contains a member that defines the symbol `syntab`; none of the object files being linked reference `syntab`. However, suppose you plan to relink the output module and you want to include the library member that defines `syntab` in this link. Using the `--undef_sym` option as shown below forces the linker to search `rts430.lib` for the member that defines `syntab` and to link in the member.

```
cl430 --run_linker --undef_sym=syntab file1.obj file2.obj rts430.lib
```

If you do not use `--undef_sym`, this member is not included, because there is no explicit reference to it in `file1.obj` or `file2.obj`.

7.4.28 Replace Multiply Routine With Hardware Multiplier Routine (--use_hw_mpy)

MSP430 devices do not have a multiply instruction, and some have no hardware multiply at all. Multiplication is performed with a library function which either uses the hardware multiply capability or simulates it in software. If your MSP430 device has multiply hardware, you can choose at link time to use the library routine matching your hardware for best performance.

There are multiple versions of each multiply routine included in the run-time library. By default the compiler generates references to the version that does not use the hardware multiplier peripheral that is available on some versions of the MSP430 device. When compiling for a device where the hardware multiplier is available, use the --use_hw_mpy linker option. The syntax for the --use_hw_mpy option is:

--use_hw_mpy[={16|32|F5}]

The --use_hw_mpy option causes the linker to replace all references to the default multiply routine with the version of the multiply routine that uses the hardware multiplier support. The optional argument indicates which version of the hardware multiply is being used and must be one of the following:

16	16-bit hardware multiplier (default)
32	F4xxx 32-bit hardware multiplier
F5	F5xxx 32-bit hardware multiplier

For more information regarding the hardware multiplier, see the *MSP430x1xx Family User's Guide*, the *MSP430x3xx Family User's Guide*, the *MSP430x4xx Family User's Guide*, and the *MSP430x5xx Family User's Guide*.

7.4.29 Display a Message When an Undefined Output Section Is Created (--warn_sections Option)

In a link command file, you can set up a SECTIONS directive that describes how input sections are combined into output sections. However, if the linker encounters one or more input sections that do not have a corresponding output section defined in the SECTIONS directive, the linker combines the input sections that have the same name into an output section with that name. By default, the linker does not display a message to tell you that this occurred.

You can use the --warn_sections option to cause the linker to display a message when it creates a new output section.

For more information about the SECTIONS directive, see [Section 7.5.4](#). For more information about the default actions of the linker, see [Section 7.7](#).

7.4.30 Generate XML Link Information File (--xml_link_info Option)

The linker supports the generation of an XML link information file through the --xml_link_info=file option. This option causes the linker to generate a well-formed XML file containing detailed information about the result of a link. The information included in this file includes all of the information that is currently produced in a linker generated map file.

See [Appendix B](#) for specifics on the contents of the generated XML file.

7.4.31 Zero Initialization (--zero_init Option)

In ANSI C, global and static variables that are not explicitly initialized must be set to 0 before program execution. The C/C++ EABI compiler supports preinitialization of uninitialized variables by default. This can be turned off by specifying the linker option --zero_init=off. COFF ABI does not support zero initialization.

The syntax for the --zero_init option is:

--zero_init[={on|off}]

7.5 Linker Command Files

Linker command files allow you to put linking information in a file; this is useful when you invoke the linker often with the same information. Linker command files are also useful because they allow you to use the MEMORY and SECTIONS directives to customize your application. You must use these directives in a command file; you cannot use them on the command line.

Linker command files are ASCII files that contain one or more of the following:

- Input filenames, which specify object files, archive libraries, or other command files. (If a command file calls another command file as input, this statement must be the *last* statement in the calling command file. The linker does not return from called command files.)
- Linker options, which can be used in the command file in the same manner that they are used on the command line
- The MEMORY and SECTIONS linker directives. The MEMORY directive defines the target memory configuration (see [Section 7.5.3](#)). The SECTIONS directive controls how sections are built and allocated (see [Section 7.5.4](#).)
- Assignment statements, which define and assign values to global symbols

To invoke the linker with a command file, enter the cl430 --run_linker command and follow it with the name of the command file:

```
cl430 --run_linker command_filename
```

The linker processes input files in the order that it encounters them. If the linker recognizes a file as an object file, it links the file. Otherwise, it assumes that a file is a command file and begins reading and processing commands from it. Command filenames are case sensitive, regardless of the system used.

[Example 7-1](#) shows a sample link command file called link.cmd.

Example 7-1. Linker Command File

```
a.obj          /* First input filename      */
b.obj          /* Second input filename       */
--output_file=prog.out /* Option to specify output file */
--map_file=prog.map  /* Option to specify map file    */
```

The sample file in [Example 7-1](#) contains only filenames and options. (You can place comments in a command file by delimiting them with /* and */.) To invoke the linker with this command file, enter:

```
cl430 --run_linker link.cmd
```

You can place other parameters on the command line when you use a command file:

```
cl430 --run_linker --relocatable link.cmd c.obj d.obj
```

The linker processes the command file as soon as it encounters the filename, so a.obj and b.obj are linked into the output module before c.obj and d.obj.

You can specify multiple command files. If, for example, you have a file called names.lst that contains filenames and another file called dir.cmd that contains linker directives, you could enter:

```
cl430 --run_linker names.lst dir.cmd
```

One command file can call another command file; this type of nesting is limited to 16 levels. If a command file calls another command file as input, this statement must be the *last* statement in the calling command file.

Blanks and blank lines are insignificant in a command file except as delimiters. This also applies to the format of linker directives in a command file. [Example 7-2](#) shows a sample command file that contains linker directives.

Example 7-2. Command File With Linker Directives

```
a.obj b.obj c.obj          /* Input filenames      */
--output_file=prog.out     /* Options        */
--map_file=prog.map

MEMORY                     /* MEMORY directive */
{
    RAM:      origin = 0x0200    length = 0x0100
    EXT_MEM:  origin = 0x1000    length = 0x1000
}

SECTIONS                   /* SECTIONS directive */
{
    .text:    > EXT_MEM
    .data:    > EXT_MEM
    .bss:     > RAM
}
```

For more information, see [Section 7.5.3](#) for the MEMORY directive, and [Section 7.5.4](#) for the SECTIONS directive.

7.5.1 Reserved Names in Linker Command Files

The following names (in lowercase also) are reserved as keywords for linker directives. Do not use them as symbol or section names in a command file.

ALIGN	FILL	LOAD_SIZE	PAGE	START
ATTR	GROUP	LOAD_START	PALIGN	TABLE
BLOCK	HIGH	MEMORY	RUN	TYPE
COMPRESSION	l (lowercase L)	NOINIT	RUN_END	UNION
COPY	len	NOLOAD	RUN_SIZE	UNORDERED
DSECT	LENGTH	o	RUN_START	VECT_INIT
END	LOAD	org	SECTIONS	
f	LOAD_END	ORIGIN	SIZE	

7.5.2 Constants in Linker Command Files

You can specify constants with either of two syntax schemes: the scheme used for specifying decimal, octal, or hexadecimal constants used in the assembler (see [Section 3.7](#)) or the scheme used for integer constants in C syntax.

Examples:

Format	Decimal	Octal	Hexadecimal
Assembler format	32	40q	020h
C format	32	040	0x20

7.5.3 The MEMORY Directive

The linker determines where output sections are allocated into memory; it must have a model of target memory to accomplish this. The MEMORY directive allows you to specify a model of target memory so that you can define the types of memory your system contains and the address ranges they occupy. The linker maintains the model as it allocates output sections and uses it to determine which memory locations can be used for object code.

The memory configurations of MSP430 systems differ from application to application. The MEMORY directive allows you to specify a variety of configurations. After you use MEMORY to define a memory model, you can use the SECTIONS directive to allocate output sections into defined memory.

For more information, see [Section 2.3](#) and [Section 2.4](#).

7.5.3.1 Default Memory Model

The assembler inserts a field in the output file's header, identifying the MSP430 device. The linker reads this information from the object file's header. If you do not use the MEMORY directive, the linker uses a default memory model specific to the named device. For more information about the default memory model, see [Section 7.7](#).

7.5.3.2 MEMORY Directive Syntax

The MEMORY directive identifies ranges of memory that are physically present in the target system and can be used by a program. Each range has several characteristics:

- Name
- Starting address
- Length
- Optional set of attributes
- Optional fill specification

When you use the MEMORY directive, be sure to identify all memory ranges that are available for loading code. Memory defined by the MEMORY directive is configured; any memory that you do not explicitly account for with MEMORY is unconfigured. The linker does not place any part of a program into unconfigured memory. You can represent nonexistent memory spaces by simply not including an address range in a MEMORY directive statement.

The MEMORY directive is specified in a command file by the word MEMORY (uppercase), followed by a list of memory range specifications enclosed in braces. The MEMORY directive in [Example 7-3](#) defines a system that has 0xEEEO bytes of flash memory at address 0x1100 and 0x0800 bytes of RAM at address 0x0200. It also demonstrates the use of memory range expressions as well as start/end/size address operators (see [Example 7-4](#)).

Example 7-3. The MEMORY Directive

```

/*****
/*      Sample command file with MEMORY directive      */
/*****
file1.obj   file2.obj           /*      Input files      */
--output_file=prog.out         /*      Options      */

MEMORY
{
    FLASH (RX):  origin = 0x1100  length = 0xEEEO
    RAM (RX):    origin = 0x0200  length = 0x0800
}

```

The general syntax for the MEMORY directive is:

MEMORY

```
{
    name 1 [( attr )] : origin = expression , length = expression [, fill = constant]
    .
    .
    name n [( attr )] : origin = expression , length = expression [, fill = constant]
}
```

name	names a memory range. A memory name can be one to 64 characters; valid characters include A-Z, a-z, \$, ., and _. The names have no special significance to the linker; they simply identify memory ranges. Memory range names are internal to the linker and are not retained in the output file or in the symbol table. All memory ranges must have unique names and must not overlap.
attr	specifies one to four attributes associated with the named range. Attributes are optional; when used, they must be enclosed in parentheses. Attributes restrict the allocation of output sections into certain memory ranges. If you do not use any attributes, you can allocate any output section into any range with no restrictions. Any memory for which no attributes are specified (including all memory in the default model) has all four attributes. Valid attributes are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> R specifies that the memory can be read. W specifies that the memory can be written to. X specifies that the memory can contain executable code. I specifies that the memory can be initialized.
origin	specifies the starting address of a memory range; enter as <i>origin</i> , <i>org</i> , or <i>o</i> . The value, specified in bytes, is an expression of 16-bit constants, which can be decimal, octal, or hexadecimal.
length	specifies the length of a memory range; enter as <i>length</i> , <i>len</i> , or <i>l</i> . The value, specified in bytes, is an expression of 32-bit constants, which can be decimal, octal, or hexadecimal.
fill	specifies a fill character for the memory range; enter as <i>fill</i> or <i>f</i> . Fills are optional. The value is a integer constant and can be decimal, octal, or hexadecimal. The fill value is used to fill areas of the memory range that are not allocated to a section.

Filling Memory Ranges

NOTE: If you specify fill values for large memory ranges, your output file will be very large because filling a memory range (even with 0s) causes raw data to be generated for all unallocated blocks of memory in the range.

The following example specifies a memory range with the R and W attributes and a fill constant of 0FFFFh:

```
MEMORY
{
    RFILE (RW) : o = 0x0020, l = 0x1000, f = 0x0FFFF
}
```

You normally use the MEMORY directive in conjunction with the SECTIONS directive to control allocation of output sections. After you use MEMORY to specify the target system's memory model, you can use SECTIONS to allocate output sections into specific named memory ranges or into memory that has specific attributes. For example, you could allocate the .text and .data sections into the area named FLASH and allocate the .bss section into the area named RAM.

7.5.3.3 Expressions and Address Operators

Memory range origin and length can now use expressions of integer constants with below operators:

Binary operators: * / % + - << >> == =
 < <= > >= & | && ||
 Unary operators: - ~ !

Expressions are evaluated using standard C operator precedence rules.

No checking is done for overflow or underflow, however, expressions are evaluated using a larger integer type.

Preprocess directive #define constants can be used in place of integer constants. Global symbols cannot be used in Memory Directive expressions.

Three new address operators have been added for referencing memory range properties from prior memory range entries:

START(MR)	Returns start address for previously defined memory range MR.
SIZE(MR)	Returns size of previously defined memory range MR.
END(MR)	Returns end address for previously defined memory range MR.

Example 7-4. Origin and Length as Expressions

```

/*****
/*      Sample command file with MEMORY directive      */
/*****
file1.obj file2.obj          /*      Input files      */
--output_file=prog.out      /*      Options      */
#define ORIGIN 0x00000000
#define BUFFER 0x00000200
#define CACHE  0x0001000

MEMORY
{
    FAST_MEM (RX): origin = ORIGIN + CACHE length = 0x00001000 + BUFFER
    SLOW_MEM (RW): origin = end(FAST_MEM) length = 0x00001800 - size(FAST_MEM)
    EXT_MEM  (RX): origin = 0x10000000    length = size(FAST_MEM) - CACHE

```

7.5.4 The SECTIONS Directive

The SECTIONS directive controls your sections in the following ways:

- Describes how input sections are combined into output sections
- Defines output sections in the executable program
- Specifies where output sections are placed in memory (in relation to each other and to the entire memory space)
- Permits renaming of output sections

For more information, see [Section 2.3](#), [Section 2.4](#), and [Section 2.2.4](#). Subsections allow you to manipulate sections with greater precision.

If you do not specify a SECTIONS directive, the linker uses a default algorithm for combining and allocating the sections. [Section 7.7](#) describes this algorithm in detail.

7.5.4.1 SECTIONS Directive Syntax

The **SECTIONS** directive is specified in a command file by the word **SECTIONS** (uppercase), followed by a list of output section specifications enclosed in braces.

The general syntax for the `SECTIONS` directive is:

SECTIONS

```
{
  name : [property [, property] [, property] . . . ]
  name : [property [, property] [, property] . . . ]
  name : [property [, property] [, property] . . . ]
}
```

Each section specification, beginning with *name*, defines an output section. (An output section is a section in the output file.) A section name can be a subsection specification. (See [Section 7.5.4.4](#) for information on multi-level subsections.) After the section name is a list of properties that define the section's contents and how the section is allocated. The properties can be separated by optional commas. Possible properties for a section are as follows:

- **Load allocation** defines where in memory the section is to be loaded.

Syntax:

- load** = allocation or
allocation or
> allocation

- **Run allocation** defines where in memory the section is to be run.

Syntax: **run** = *allocation* or
run > *allocation*

- **Input sections** defines the input sections (object files) that constitute the output section.

Syntax: `{ input sections }`

- **Section type** defines flags for special section types. See [Section 7.5.7](#)

Syntax:

type = COPY	or
type = DSECT	or
type = NOLOAD	or
type = VECT_INIT	

- **Fill value** defines the value used to fill uninitialized holes. See [Section 7.5.9](#).

Syntax: **fill** = *value* or
name : [*properties* = *value*]

Example 7-5 shows a SECTIONS directive in a sample link command file.

Example 7-5. The SECTIONS Directive

```

/*****
/*      Sample command file with SECTIONS directive      */
/*****
file1.obj file2.obj                /*  Input files  */
--output_file=progr.out           /*  Options    */

SECTIONS
{
    .bss      : load = RAM

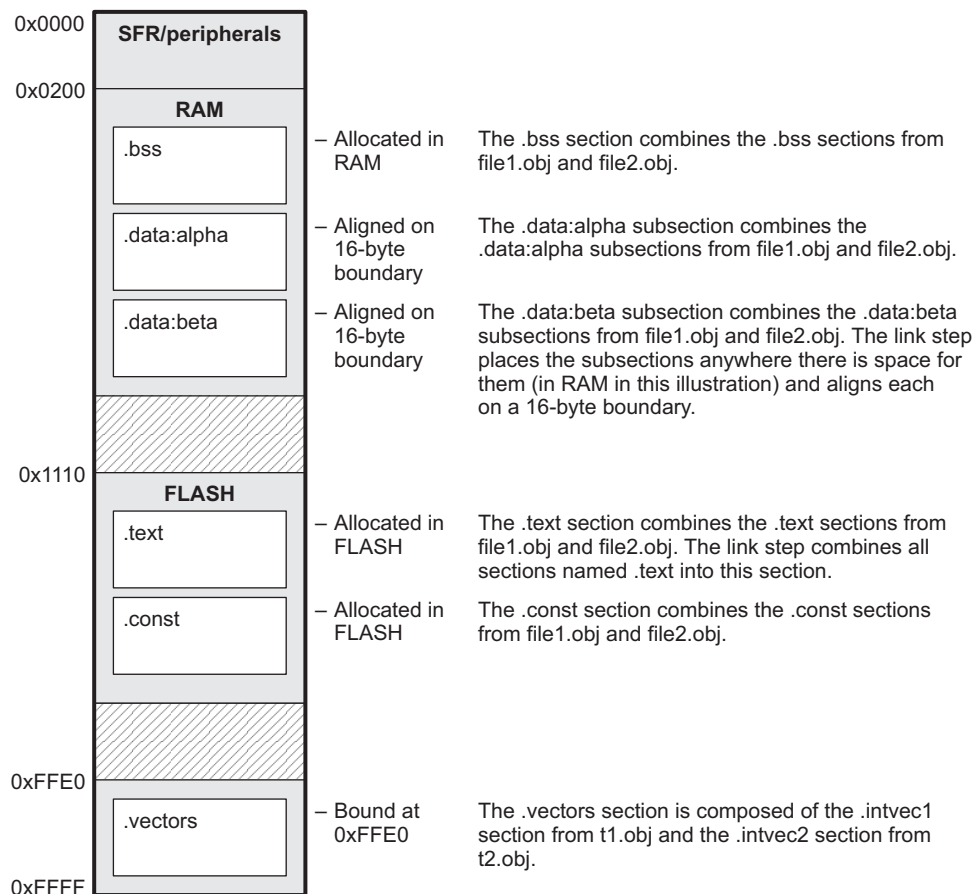
    .text     : load = FLASH
    .const    : load = FLASH

    .vectors  : load = 0xFFE0
    {
        t1.obj (.intvec1)
        t2.obj (.intvec2)
    }
    .data:alpha : align = 16
    .data:beta  : align = 16
}

```

Figure 7-2 shows the six output sections defined by the SECTIONS directive in Example 7-5 (.vectors, .text, .const, .bss, .data:alpha, and .data:beta) and shows how these sections are allocated in memory using the MEMORY directive given in Example 7-3.

Figure 7-2. Section Allocation Defined by Example 7-5



7.5.4.2 Allocation

The linker assigns each output section two locations in target memory: the location where the section will be loaded and the location where it will be run. Usually, these are the same, and you can think of each section as having only a single address. The process of locating the output section in the target's memory and assigning its address(es) is called allocation. For more information about using separate load and run allocation, see [Section 7.5.5](#).

If you do not tell the linker how a section is to be allocated, it uses a default algorithm to allocate the section. Generally, the linker puts sections wherever they fit into configured memory. You can override this default allocation for a section by defining it within a `SECTIONS` directive and providing instructions on how to allocate it.

You control allocation by specifying one or more allocation parameters. Each parameter consists of a keyword, an optional equal sign or greater-than sign, and a value optionally enclosed in parentheses. If load and run allocation are separate, all parameters following the keyword `LOAD` apply to load allocation, and those following the keyword `RUN` apply to run allocation. The allocation parameters are:

Binding	allocates a section at a specific address. <code>.text: load = 0x1000</code>
Named memory	allocates the section into a range defined in the <code>MEMORY</code> directive with the specified name (like <code>SLOW_MEM</code>) or attributes. <code>.text: load > SLOW_MEM</code>
Alignment	uses the <code>align</code> or <code>palign</code> keyword to specify that the section must start on an address boundary. <code>.text: align = 0x100</code>
Blocking	uses the <code>block</code> keyword to specify that the section must fit between two address boundaries: if the section is too big, it starts on an address boundary. <code>.text: block(0x100)</code>

For the load (usually the only) allocation, you can simply use a greater-than sign and omit the load keyword:

```
.text: > SLOW_MEM
.text: {...} > SLOW_MEM
.text: > 0x4000
```

If more than one parameter is used, you can string them together as follows:

```
.text: > SLOW_MEM align 16
```

Or if you prefer, use parentheses for readability:

```
.text: load = (SLOW_MEM align(16))
```

You can also use an input section specification to identify the sections from input files that are combined to form an output section. See [Section 7.5.4.3](#).

7.5.4.2.1 Binding

You can supply a specific starting address for an output section by following the section name with an address:

```
.text: 0x00001000
```

This example specifies that the .text section must begin at location 0x1000. The binding address must be a 16-bit constant.

Output sections can be bound anywhere in configured memory (assuming there is enough space), but they cannot overlap. If there is not enough space to bind a section to a specified address, the linker issues an error message.

Binding is Incompatible With Alignment and Named Memory

NOTE: You cannot bind a section to an address if you use alignment or named memory. If you try to do this, the linker issues an error message.

7.5.4.2.2 Named Memory

You can allocate a section into a memory range that is defined by the MEMORY directive (see [Section 7.5.3](#)). This example names ranges and links sections into them:

```
MEMORY
{
    SLOW_MEM (RIX) : origin = 0x00000000, length = 0x00001000
    FAST_MEM (RWIX) : origin = 0x03000000, length = 0x00000300
}

SECTIONS
{
    .text : > SLOW_MEM
    .data : > FAST_MEM ALIGN(128)
    .bss : > FAST_MEM
}
```

In this example, the linker places .text into the area called SLOW_MEM. The .data and .bss output sections are allocated into FAST_MEM. You can align a section within a named memory range; the .data section is aligned on a 128-byte boundary within the FAST_MEM range.

Similarly, you can link a section into an area of memory that has particular attributes. To do this, specify a set of attributes (enclosed in parentheses) instead of a memory name. Using the same MEMORY directive declaration, you can specify:

```
SECTIONS
{
    .text: > (X) /* .text --> executable memory */
    .data: > (RI) /* .data --> read or init memory */
    .bss : > (RW) /* .bss --> read or write memory */
}
```

In this example, the .text output section can be linked into either the SLOW_MEM or FAST_MEM area because both areas have the X attribute. The .data section can also go into either SLOW_MEM or FAST_MEM because both areas have the R and I attributes. The .bss output section, however, must go into the FAST_MEM area because only FAST_MEM is declared with the W attribute.

You cannot control where in a named memory range a section is allocated, although the linker uses lower memory addresses first and avoids fragmentation when possible. In the preceding examples, assuming no conflicting assignments exist, the .text section starts at address 0. If a section must start on a specific address, use binding instead of named memory.

7.5.4.2.3 Controlling Allocation Using The HIGH Location Specifier

The linker allocates output sections from low to high addresses within a designated memory range by default. Alternatively, you can cause the linker to allocate a section from high to low addresses within a memory range by using the HIGH location specifier in the SECTION directive declaration.

For example, given this MEMORY directive:

```
MEMORY
{
    RAM          : origin = 0x0200, length = 0x0800
    FLASH        : origin = 0x1100, length = 0xEE0
    VECTORS      : origin = 0xFFE0, length = 0x001E
    RESET        : origin = 0xFFFE, length = 0x0002
}
```

and an accompanying SECTIONS directive:

```
SECTIONS
{
    .bss      : {} > RAM
    .sysmem   : {} > RAM
    .stack    : {} > RAM (HIGH)
}
```

The HIGH specifier used on the .stack section allocation causes the linker to attempt to allocate .stack into the higher addresses within the RAM memory range. The .bss and .sysmem sections are allocated into the lower addresses within RAM. [Example 7-6](#) illustrates a portion of a map file that shows where the given sections are allocated within RAM for a typical program.

Example 7-6. Linker Allocation With the HIGH Specifier

.bss	0	00000200	00000270	UNINITIALIZED
		00000200	0000011a	rtssxxx.lib : defs.obj (.bss)
		0000031a	00000088	: trgdrv.obj (.bss)
		000003a2	00000078	: lowlev.obj (.bss)
		0000041a	00000046	: exit.obj (.bss)
		00000460	00000008	: memory.obj (.bss)
		00000468	00000004	: _lock.obj (.bss)
		0000046c	00000002	: fopen.obj (.bss)
		0000046e	00000002	hello.obj (.bss)
.sysmem	0	00000470	00000120	UNINITIALIZED
		00000470	00000004	rtssxxx .lib : memory.obj (.sysmem)
.stack	0	000008c0	00000140	UNINITIALIZED
		000008c0	00000002	rtssxxx .lib : boot.obj (.stack)

As shown in [Example 7-6](#), the .bss and .sysmem sections are allocated at the lower addresses of RAM (0x0200 - 0x0590) and the .stack section is allocated at address 0x08c0, even though lower addresses are available.

Without using the HIGH specifier, the linker allocation would result in the code shown in [Example 7-7](#)

The HIGH specifier is ignored if it is used with specific address binding or automatic section splitting (> operator).

Example 7-7. Linker Allocation Without HIGH Specifier

.bss	0	00000200	00000270	UNINITIALIZED	
		00000200	0000011a	rtssxxx.lib	: defs.obj (.bss)
		0000031a	00000088		: trgdrv.obj (.bss)
		000003a2	00000078		: lowlev.obj (.bss)
		0000041a	00000046		: exit.obj (.bss)
		00000460	00000008		: memory.obj (.bss)
		00000468	00000004		: _lock.obj (.bss)
		0000046c	00000002		: fopen.obj (.bss)
		0000046e	00000002	hello.obj	(.bss)
.stack	0	00000470	00000140	UNINITIALIZED	
		00000470	00000002	rtssxxx.lib	: boot.obj (.stack)
.sysmem	0	000005b0	00000120	UNINITIALIZED	
		000005b0	00000004	rtssxxx.lib	: memory.obj (.sysmem)

7.5.4.2.4 Alignment and Blocking

You can tell the linker to place an output section at an address that falls on an n-byte boundary, where n is a power of 2, by using the align keyword. For example, the following code allocates .text so that it falls on a 32-byte boundary:

```
.text: load = align(32)
```

You can specify the same alignment with the palign keyword. In addition, palign ensures the section's size is a multiple of its placement alignment restrictions, padding the section size up to such a boundary, as needed.

Blocking is a weaker form of alignment that allocates a section anywhere *within* a block of size n. The specified block size must be a power of 2. For example, the following code allocates .bss so that the entire section is contained in a single 128-byte page or begins on that boundary:

```
bss: load = block(0x0080)
```

You can use alignment or blocking alone or in conjunction with a memory area, but alignment and blocking cannot be used together.

7.5.4.2.5 Alignment With Padding

As with align, you can tell the linker to place an output section at an address that falls on an n-byte boundary, where n is a power of 2, by using the palign keyword. In addition, palign ensures that the size of the section is a multiple of its placement alignment restrictions, padding the section size up to such a boundary, as needed.

For example, the following code lines allocate .text on a 2-byte boundary within the PMEM area. The .text section size is guaranteed to be a multiple of 2 bytes. Both statements are equivalent:

```
.text: palign(2) {} > PMEM
```

```
.text: palign = 2 {} > PMEM
```

If the linker adds padding to an initialized output section then the padding space is also initialized. By default, padding space is filled with a value of 0 (zero). However, if a fill value is specified for the output section then any padding for the section is also filled with that fill value.

For example, consider the following section specification:

```
.mytext: palign(8), fill = 0xffff {} > PMEM
```

In this example, the length of the .mytext section is 6 bytes before the palign operator is applied. The contents of .mytext are as follows:

```
addr content
----
0000 0x1234
0002 0x1234
0004 0x1234
```

After the palign operator is applied, the length of .mytext is 8 bytes, and its contents are as follows:

```
addr content
----
0000 0x1234
0002 0x1234
0004 0x1234
0006 0xffff
```

The size of .mytext has been bumped to a multiple of 8 bytes and the padding created by the linker has been filled with 0xff.

The fill value specified in the linker command file is interpreted as a 16-bit constant, so if you specify this code:

```
.mytext: palign(8), fill = 0xff {} > PMEM
```

The fill value assumed by the linker is 0x00ff, and .mytext will then have the following contents:

```
addr content
----
0000 0x1234
0002 0x1234
0004 0x1234
0006 0xffff
0008 0x00ff
000a 0x00ff
```

If the palign operator is applied to an uninitialized section, then the size of the section is bumped to the appropriate boundary, as needed, but any padding created is not initialized.

The palign operator can also take a parameter of *power2*. This parameter tells the linker to add padding to increase the section's size to the next power of two boundary. In addition, the section is aligned on that power of 2 as well.

For example, consider the following section specification:

```
.mytext: palign(power2) {} > PMEM
```

Assume that the size of the .mytext section is 120 bytes and PMEM starts at address 0x10020. After applying the palign(power2) operator, the .mytext output section will have the following properties:

name	addr	size	align
.mytext	0x00010080	0x80	128

7.5.4.3 Specifying Input Sections

An input section specification identifies the sections from input files that are combined to form an output section. In general, the linker combines input sections by concatenating them in the order in which they are specified. However, if alignment or blocking is specified for an input section, all of the input sections within the output section are ordered as follows:

- All aligned sections, from largest to smallest
- All blocked sections, from largest to smallest
- All other sections, from largest to smallest

The size of an output section is the sum of the sizes of the input sections that it comprises.

[Example 7-8](#) shows the most common type of section specification; note that no input sections are listed.

Example 7-8. The Most Common Method of Specifying Section Contents

```
SECTIONS
{
    .text:
    .data:
    .bss:
}
```

In [Example 7-8](#), the linker takes all the .text sections from the input files and combines them into the .text output section. The linker concatenates the .text input sections in the order that it encounters them in the input files. The linker performs similar operations with the .data and .bss sections. You can use this type of specification for any output section.

You can explicitly specify the input sections that form an output section. Each input section is identified by its filename and section name. If the filename is hyphenated (or contains special characters), enclose it within quotes:

```
SECTIONS
{
    .text :           /* Build .text output section          */
    {
        f1.obj(.text) /* Link .text section from f1.obj      */
        f2.obj(sec1)  /* Link sec1 section from f2.obj      */
        "f3-new.obj"  /* Link ALL sections from f3-new.obj */
        f4.obj(.text,sec2) /* Link .text and sec2 from f4.obj */
    }
}
```

It is not necessary for input sections to have the same name as each other or as the output section they become part of. If a file is listed with no sections, *all* of its sections are included in the output section. If any additional input sections have the same name as an output section but are not explicitly specified by the SECTIONS directive, they are automatically linked in at the end of the output section. For example, if the linker found more .text sections in the preceding example and these .text sections *were not* specified anywhere in the SECTIONS directive, the linker would concatenate these extra sections after f4.obj(sec2).

The specifications in [Example 7-8](#) are actually a shorthand method for the following:

```
SECTIONS
{
    .text: { *(.text) }
    .data: { *(.data) }
    .bss:  { *(.bss) }
}
```

The specification **(.text)* means *the unallocated .text sections from all the input files*. This format is useful when:

- You want the output section to contain all input sections that have a specified name, but the output section name is different from the input sections' name.
- You want the linker to allocate the input sections before it processes additional input sections or commands within the braces.

The following example illustrates the two purposes above:

```
SECTIONS
{
    .text : {
        abc.obj(xqt)
        *(.text)
    }
    .data : {
        *(.data)
        fil.obj(table)
    }
}
```

In this example, the .text output section contains a named section xqt from file abc.obj, which is followed by all the .text input sections. The .data section contains all the .data input sections, followed by a named section table from the file fil.obj. This method includes all the unallocated sections. For example, if one of the .text input sections was already included in another output section when the linker encountered *(.text), the linker could not include that first .text input section in the second output section.

7.5.4.4 Using Multi-Level Subsections

Subsections can be identified with the base section name and one or more subsection names separated by colons. For example, A:B and A:B:C name subsections of the base section A. In certain places in a link command file specifying a base name, such as A, selects the section A as well as any subsections of A, such as A:B or A:C:D.

A name such as A:B can be used to specify a (sub)section of that name as well as any (multi-level) subsections beginning with that name, such as A:B:C, A:B:OTHER, etc. All the subsections of A:B are also subsections of A. A and A:B are supersections of A:B:C. Among a group of supersections of a subsection, the nearest supersection is the supersection with the longest name. Thus, among {A, A:B} the nearest supersection of A:B:C:D is A:B.

With multiple levels of subsections, the constraints are the following:

1. When specifying **input** sections within a file (or library unit) the section name selects an input section of the same name and any subsections of that name.
2. Input sections that are not explicitly allocated are allocated in an existing **output** section of the same name or in the nearest existing supersection of such an output section. An exception to this rule is that during a partial link (specified by the --relocatable linker option) a subsection is allocated only to an existing output section of the same name.
3. If no such output section described in 2) is defined, the input section is put in a **newly created output** section with the same name as the base name of the input section

Consider linking input sections with the following names:

europe:north:norway	europe:central:france	europe:south:spain
europe:north:sweden	europe:central:germany	europe:south:italy
europe:north:finland	europe:central:denmark	europe:south:malta
europe:north:iceland		

This SECTIONS specification allocates the input sections as indicated in the comments:

```
SECTIONS {
    nordic: {*(europe:north)
        *(europe:central:denmark)} /* the nordic countries */
    central: {*(europe:central)} /* france, germany */
    therest: {*(europe)} /* spain, italy, malta */
}
```

This SECTIONS specification allocates the input sections as indicated in the comments:

```
SECTIONS {
    islands: {*(europe:south:malta)
               *(europe:north:iceland)} /* malta, iceland */
    europe:north:finland : {}           /* finland */
    europe:north          : {}           /* norway, sweden */
    europe:central         : {}           /* germany, denmark */
    europe:central:france: {}           /* france */

    /* (italy, spain) go into a linker-generated output section "europe" */
}
```

Upward Compatibility of Multi-Level Subsections

NOTE: Existing linker commands that use the existing single-level subsection features and which do not contain section names containing multiple colon characters continue to behave as before. However, if section names in a link command file or in the input sections supplied to the linker contain multiple colon characters, some change in behavior could be possible. You should carefully consider the impact of the new rules for multiple levels to see if it affects a particular system link.

7.5.4.5 Specifying Library or Archive Members as Input to Output Sections

You can specify one or more members of an object library or archive for input to an output section. Consider this SECTIONS directive:

Example 7-9. Archive Members to Output Sections

```
SECTIONS
{
    boot    >      BOOT1
    {
        -l=rtssXX.lib<boot.obj> (.text)
        -l=rtssXX.lib<exit.obj strcpy.obj> (.text)
    }

    .rts    >      BOOT2
    {
        -l=rtssXX.lib (.text)
    }

    .text   >      RAM
    {
        * (.text)
    }
}
```

In [Example 7-9](#), the .text sections of boot.obj, exit.obj, and strcpy.obj are extracted from the run-time-support library and placed in the .boot output section. The remainder of the run-time-support library object that is referenced is allocated to the .rts output section. Finally, the remainder of all other .text sections are to be placed in section .text.

An archive member or a list of members is specified by surrounding the member name(s) with angle brackets < and > after the library name. Any object files separated by commas or spaces from the specified archive file are legal within the angle brackets.

The --library option (which normally implies a library path search be made for the named file following the option) listed before each library in [Example 7-9](#) is optional when listing specific archive members inside < >. Using < > implies that you are referring to a library.

To collect a set of the input sections from a library in one place, use the `--library` option within the `SECTIONS` directive. For example, the following collects all the `.text` sections from `rts430.lib` into the `.rtstest` section:

```
SECTIONS
{
    .rtstest { -l=rts430.lib(.text) } > RAM
}
```

SECTIONS Directive Effect on `--priority`

NOTE: Specifying a library in a `SECTIONS` directive causes that library to be entered in the list of libraries that the linker searches to resolve references. If you use the `--priority` option, the first library specified in the command file will be searched first.

7.5.4.6 Allocation Using Multiple Memory Ranges

The linker allows you to specify an explicit list of memory ranges into which an output section can be allocated. Consider the following example:

```
MEMORY
{
    P_MEM1 : origin = 0x02000, length = 0x01000
    P_MEM2 : origin = 0x04000, length = 0x01000
    P_MEM3 : origin = 0x06000, length = 0x01000
    P_MEM4 : origin = 0x08000, length = 0x01000
}

SECTIONS
{
    .text : { } > P_MEM1 | P_MEM2 | P_MEM4
}
```

The `|` operator is used to specify the multiple memory ranges. The `.text` output section is allocated as a whole into the first memory range in which it fits. The memory ranges are accessed in the order specified. In this example, the linker first tries to allocate the section in `P_MEM1`. If that attempt fails, the linker tries to place the section into `P_MEM2`, and so on. If the output section is not successfully allocated in any of the named memory ranges, the linker issues an error message.

With this type of `SECTIONS` directive specification, the linker can seamlessly handle an output section that grows beyond the available space of the memory range in which it is originally allocated. Instead of modifying the link command file, you can let the linker move the section into one of the other areas.

7.5.4.7 Automatic Splitting of Output Sections Among Non-Contiguous Memory Ranges

The linker can split output sections among multiple memory ranges to achieve an efficient allocation. Use the `>>` operator to indicate that an output section can be split, if necessary, into the specified memory ranges. For example:

```
MEMORY
{
    P_MEM1 : origin = 0x2000, length = 0x1000
    P_MEM2 : origin = 0x4000, length = 0x1000
    P_MEM3 : origin = 0x6000, length = 0x1000
    P_MEM4 : origin = 0x8000, length = 0x1000
}

SECTIONS
{
    .text: { *(.text) } >> P_MEM1 | P_MEM2 | P_MEM3 | P_MEM4
}
```

In this example, the `>>` operator indicates that the `.text` output section can be split among any of the listed memory areas. If the `.text` section grows beyond the available memory in `P_MEM1`, it is split on an input section boundary, and the remainder of the output section is allocated to `P_MEM2 | P_MEM3 | P_MEM4`.

The | operator is used to specify the list of multiple memory ranges.

You can also use the >> operator to indicate that an output section can be split within a single memory range. This functionality is useful when several output sections must be allocated into the same memory range, but the restrictions of one output section cause the memory range to be partitioned. Consider the following example:

```
MEMORY
{
    RAM : origin = 0x1000, length = 0x8000
}

SECTIONS
{
    .special: { f1.obj(.text) } load = 0x4000
    .text: { *(.text) } >> RAM
}
```

The .special output section is allocated near the middle of the RAM memory range. This leaves two unused areas in RAM: from 0x1000 to 0x4000, and from the end of f1.obj(.text) to 0x8000. The specification for the .text section allows the linker to split the .text section around the .special section and use the available space in RAM on either side of .special.

The >> operator can also be used to split an output section among all memory ranges that match a specified attribute combination. For example:

```
MEMORY
{
    P_MEM1 (RWX) : origin = 0x1000, length = 0x2000
    P_MEM2 (RWI) : origin = 0x4000, length = 0x1000
}

SECTIONS
{
    .text: { *(.text) } >> (RW)
}
```

The linker attempts to allocate all or part of the output section into any memory range whose attributes match the attributes specified in the SECTIONS directive.

This SECTIONS directive has the same effect as:

```
SECTIONS
{
    .text: { *(.text) } >> P_MEM1 | P_MEM2
}
```

Certain sections should not be split:

- Certain sections created by the compiler, including
 - The .cinit section, which contains the autoinitialization table for C/C++ programs
 - The .pinit section, which contains the list of global constructors for C++ programs
 - The .bss section, which defines global variables
- An output section with an input section specification that includes an expression to be evaluated. The expression may define a symbol that is used in the program to manage the output section at run time.
- An output section that has a START(), END(), OR SIZE() operator applied to it. These operators provide information about a section's load or run address, and size. Splitting the section may compromise the integrity of the operation.
- The run allocation of a UNION. (Splitting the load allocation of a UNION is allowed.)

If you use the >> operator on any of these sections, the linker issues a warning and ignores the operator.

7.5.5 Specifying a Section's Run-Time Address

At times, you may want to load code into one area of memory and run it in another. For example, you may have performance-critical code in slow external memory. The code must be loaded into slow external memory, but it would run faster in fast external memory.

The linker provides a simple way to accomplish this. You can use the `SECTIONS` directive to direct the linker to allocate a section twice: once to set its load address and again to set its run address. For example:

```
.fir: load = SLOW_MEM, run = FAST_MEM
```

Use the *load* keyword for the load address and the *run* keyword for the run address.

See [Section 2.5](#) for an overview on run-time relocation.

7.5.5.1 Specifying Load and Run Addresses

The load address determines where a loader places the raw data for the section. Any references to the section (such as labels in it) refer to its run address. The application must copy the section from its load address to its run address; this does *not* happen automatically when you specify a separate run address. (The `TABLE` operator instructs the linker to produce a copy table; see [Section 7.8.5](#).)

If you provide only one allocation (either load or run) for a section, the section is allocated only once and loads and runs at the same address. If you provide both allocations, the section is allocated as if it were two sections of the same size. This means that both allocations occupy space in the memory map and cannot overlay each other or other sections. (The `UNION` directive provides a way to overlay sections; see [Section 7.5.6.1](#).)

If either the load or run address has additional parameters, such as alignment or blocking, list them after the appropriate keyword. Everything related to allocation after the keyword *load* affects the load address until the keyword *run* is seen, after which, everything affects the run address. The load and run allocations are completely independent, so any qualification of one (such as alignment) has no effect on the other. You can also specify run first, then load. Use parentheses to improve readability.

The examples below specify load and run addresses:

```
.data: load = SLOW_MEM, align = 32, run = FAST_MEM
```

(align applies only to load)

```
.data: load = (SLOW_MEM align 32), run = FAST_MEM
```

(identical to previous example)

```
.data: run = FAST_MEM, align 32,
      load = align 16
```

(align 32 in FAST_MEM for run; align 16 anywhere for load)

For more information on run-time relocation see

7.5.5.2 Uninitialized Sections

Uninitialized sections (such as `.bss`) are not loaded, so their only significant address is the run address. The linker allocates uninitialized sections only once: if you specify both run and load addresses, the linker warns you and ignores the load address. Otherwise, if you specify only one address, the linker treats it as a run address, regardless of whether you call it load or run. This example specifies load and run addresses for an uninitialized section:

```
.bss: load = 0x1000, run = FAST_MEM
```

A warning is issued, load is ignored, and space is allocated in FAST_MEM. All of the following examples have the same effect. The `.bss` section is allocated in FAST_MEM.

```
.bss: load = FAST_MEM
.bss: run = FAST_MEM
.bss: > FAST_MEM
```

7.5.5.3 Referring to the Load Address by Using the .label Directive

Normally, any reference to a symbol in a section refers to its run-time address. However, it may be necessary at run time to refer to a load-time address. Specifically, the code that copies a section from its load address to its run address must have access to the load address. The .label directive defines a special symbol that refers to the section's load address. Thus, whereas normal symbols are relocated with respect to the run address, .label symbols are relocated with respect to the load address. See [Create a Load-Time Address Label](#) for more information on the .label directive.

[Example 7-10](#) and [Example 7-11](#) show the use of the .label directive to copy a section from its load address in EXT_MEM to its run address in P_MEM. [Figure 7-3](#) illustrates the run-time execution of [Example 7-10](#).

The table operator and cpy_in can also be used to refer to a load address; see [Section 7.8.5](#).

Example 7-10. Copying Section Assembly Language File

```
* Define a section to be copied from load to run address
.sect ".fir"
.label fir_src

fir:
*      < code here>          ;code for section

      .label fir_end

* Copy .fir section from load address to run address
.text

      MOV     &fir_s,R11
      MOV     &fir_e,R12
      MOV     #fir,R13
LOOP:  CMP     R11,R12
      JL      Copy_Done
      MOV     @R11+,0(R13)
      INC     R13
      JMP     LOOP
Copy_Done:

* Jump to fir routine, now at run address

      JMP     fir

fir_s   .word   fir_src
fir_e   .word   fir_end
```

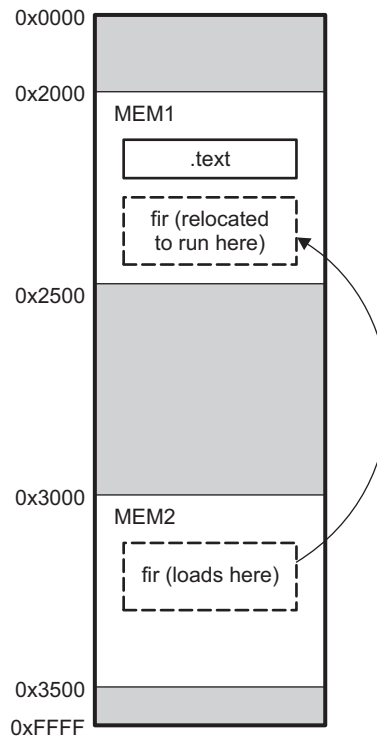
Example 7-11. Linker Command File for [Example 7-10](#)

```
/*****
/*      PARTIAL LINKER COMMAND FILE FOR FIR EXAMPLE      */
*****/

MEMORY
{
    MEM1: origin = 0x2000, length 0x0500
    MEM2: origin = 0x3000, length 0x0500
}

SECTIONS
{
    .text: load = MEM1
    .fir:  load = MEM2, run = MEM1
}
```

Figure 7-3. Run-Time Execution of Example 7-10



7.5.6 Using UNION and GROUP Statements

Two SECTIONS statements allow you to conserve memory: GROUP and UNION. Unioning sections causes the linker to allocate them to the same run address. Grouping sections causes the linker to allocate them contiguously in memory. Section names can refer to sections, subsections, or archive library members.

7.5.6.1 Overlaying Sections With the UNION Statement

For some applications, you may want to allocate more than one section to occupy the same address during run time. For example, you may have several routines you want in fast external memory at various stages of execution. Or you may want several data objects that are not active at the same time to share a block of memory. The UNION statement within the SECTIONS directive provides a way to allocate several sections at the same run-time address.

In [Example 7-12](#), the .bss sections from file1.obj and file2.obj are allocated at the same address in FAST_MEM. In the memory map, the union occupies as much space as its largest component. The components of a union remain independent sections; they are simply allocated together as a unit.

Example 7-12. The UNION Statement

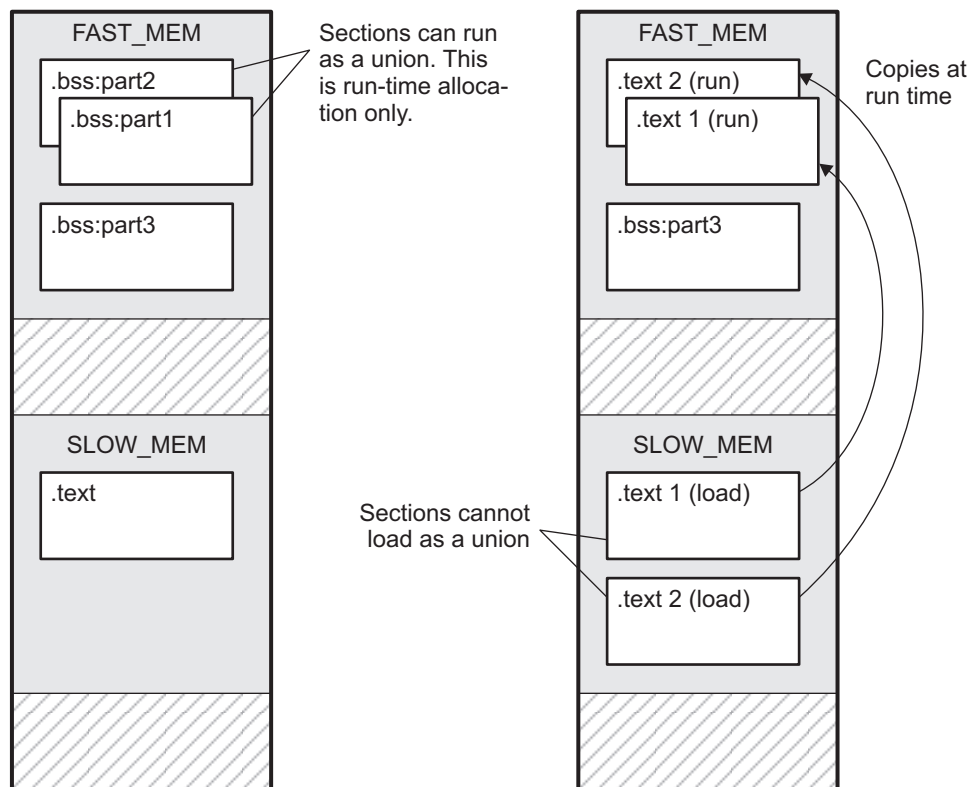
```
SECTIONS
{
    .text: load = SLOW_MEM
    UNION: run = FAST_MEM
    {
        .bss:part1: { file1.obj(.bss) }
        .bss:part2: { file2.obj(.bss) }
    }
    .bss:part3: run = FAST_MEM { globals.obj(.bss) }
}
```

Allocation of a section as part of a union affects only its *run* address. Under no circumstances can sections be overlaid for loading. If an initialized section is a union member (an initialized section, such as `.text`, has raw data), its load allocation *must* be separately specified. See [Example 7-13](#).

Example 7-13. Separate Load Addresses for UNION Sections

```
UNION run = FAST_MEM
{
    .text:part1: load = SLOW_MEM, { file1.obj(.text) }
    .text:part2: load = SLOW_MEM, { file2.obj(.text) }
}
```

Figure 7-4. Memory Allocation Shown in [Example 7-12](#) and [Example 7-13](#)



Since the `.text` sections contain raw data, they cannot *load* as a union, although they can be *run* as a union. Therefore, each requires its own load address. If you fail to provide a load allocation for an initialized section within a UNION, the linker issues a warning and allocates load space anywhere it can in configured memory.

Uninitialized sections are not loaded and do not require load addresses.

The UNION statement applies only to allocation of run addresses, so it is meaningless to specify a load address for the union itself. For purposes of allocation, the union is treated as an uninitialized section: any one allocation specified is considered a run address, and if both run and load addresses are specified, the linker issues a warning and ignores the load address.

7.5.6.2 Grouping Output Sections Together

The SECTIONS directive's GROUP option forces several output sections to be allocated contiguously. For example, assume that a section named term_rec contains a termination record for a table in the .data section. You can force the linker to allocate .data and term_rec together:

Example 7-14. Allocate Sections Together

```
SECTIONS
{
    .text          /* Normal output section          */
    .bss           /* Normal output section          */
    GROUP 0x00001000 : /* Specify a group of sections */
    {
        .data      /* First section in the group      */
        term_rec   /* Allocated immediately after .data */
    }
}
```

You can use binding, alignment, or named memory to allocate a GROUP in the same manner as a single output section. In the preceding example, the GROUP is bound to address 0x1000. This means that .data is allocated at 0x1000, and term_rec follows it in memory.

You Cannot Specify Addresses for Sections Within a GROUP

NOTE: When you use the GROUP option, binding, alignment, or allocation into named memory can be specified for the group only. You cannot use binding, named memory, or alignment for sections within a group.

7.5.6.3 Nesting UNIONS and GROUPS

The linker allows arbitrary nesting of GROUP and UNION statements with the SECTIONS directive. By nesting GROUP and UNION statements, you can express hierarchical overlays and groupings of sections. [Example 7-15](#) shows how two overlays can be grouped together.

Example 7-15. Nesting GROUP and UNION Statements

```
SECTIONS
{
    GROUP 0x1000 : run = FAST_MEM
    {
        UNION:
        {
            mysect1: load = SLOW_MEM
            mysect2: load = SLOW_MEM
        }
        UNION:
        {
            mysect3: load = SLOW_MEM
            mysect4: load = SLOW_MEM
        }
    }
}
```

For this example, the linker performs the following allocations:

- The four sections (mysect1, mysect2, mysect3, mysect4) are assigned unique, non-overlapping load addresses. The name you defined with the .label directive is used in the SLOW_MEM memory region. This assignment is determined by the particular load allocations given for each section.

- Sections mysect1 and mysect2 are assigned the same run address in FAST_MEM.
- Sections mysect3 and mysect4 are assigned the same run address in FAST_MEM.
- The run addresses of mysect1/mysect2 and mysect3/mysect4 are allocated contiguously, as directed by the GROUP statement (subject to alignment and blocking restrictions).

To refer to groups and unions, linker diagnostic messages use the notation:

GROUP_*n* UNION_*n*

In this notation, *n* is a sequential number (beginning at 1) that represents the lexical ordering of the group or union in the linker control file, without regard to nesting. Groups and unions each have their own counter.

7.5.6.4 Checking the Consistency of Allocators

The linker checks the consistency of load and run allocations specified for unions, groups, and sections. The following rules are used:

- Run allocations are only allowed for top-level sections, groups, or unions (sections, groups, or unions that are not nested under any other groups or unions). The linker uses the run address of the top-level structure to compute the run addresses of the components within groups and unions.
- The linker does not accept a load allocation for UNIONS.
- The linker does not accept a load allocation for uninitialized sections.
- In most cases, you must provide a load allocation for an initialized section. However, the linker does not accept a load allocation for an initialized section that is located within a group that already defines a load allocator.
- As a shortcut, you can specify a load allocation for an entire group, to determine the load allocations for every initialized section or subgroup nested within the group. However, a load allocation is accepted for an entire group only if all of the following conditions are true:
 - The group is initialized (that is, it has at least one initialized member).
 - The group is not nested inside another group that has a load allocator.
 - The group does not contain a union containing initialized sections.
- If the group contains a union with initialized sections, it is necessary to specify the load allocation for each initialized section nested within the group. Consider the following example:

```
SECTIONS
{
  GROUP: load = SLOW_MEM, run = SLOW_MEM
  {
    .text1:
    UNION:
    {
      .text2:
      .text3:
    }
  }
}
```

The load allocator given for the group does not uniquely specify the load allocation for the elements within the union: .text2 and .text3. In this case, the linker issues a diagnostic message to request that these load allocations be specified explicitly.

7.5.6.5 Naming UNIONS and GROUPS

You can give a name to a UNION or GROUP by entering the name in parentheses after the declaration. For example:

```
GROUP(BSS_SYSMEM_STACK_GROUP)
{
    .bss      :{}
    .sysmem   :{}
    .stack    :{}
} load=D_MEM, run=D_MEM
```

The name you defined is used in diagnostics for easy identification of the problem LCF area. For example:

```
warning: LOAD placement ignored for "BSS_SYSMEM_STACK_GROUP": object is uninitialized
```

```
UNION(TEXT_CINIT_UNION)
{
    .const :{}load=D_MEM, table(table1)
    .pinit :{}load=D_MEM, table(table1)
}run=P_MEM
```

```
warning:table(table1) operator ignored: table(table1) has already been applied to a section
in the "UNION(TEXT_CINIT_UNION)" in which ".pinit" is a descendant
```

7.5.7 Special Section Types (DSECT, COPY, NOLOAD, and VECT_INIT)

You can assign three special types to output sections: DSECT, COPY, and NOLOAD. These types affect the way that the program is treated when it is linked and loaded. You can assign a type to a section by placing the type after the section definition. For example:

```
SECTIONS
{
    sec1: load = 0x00002000, type = DSECT {f1.obj}
    sec2: load = 0x00004000, type = COPY {f2.obj}
    sec3: load = 0x00006000, type = NOLOAD {f3.obj}
    TIMER0_A1 : { * ( .int53 ) } > INT53 type = VECT_INIT
}
```

- The DSECT type creates a dummy section with the following characteristics:
 - It is not included in the output section memory allocation. It takes up no memory and is not included in the memory map listing.
 - It can overlay other output sections, other DSECTs, and unconfigured memory.
 - Global symbols defined in a dummy section are relocated normally. They appear in the output module's symbol table with the same value they would have if the DSECT had actually been loaded. These symbols can be referenced by other input sections.
 - Undefined external symbols found in a DSECT cause specified archive libraries to be searched.
 - The section's contents, relocation information, and line number information are not placed in the output module.

In the preceding example, none of the sections from f1.obj are allocated, but all the symbols are relocated as though the sections were linked at address 0x2000. The other sections can refer to any of the global symbols in sec1.

- A COPY section is similar to a DSECT section, except that its contents and associated information are written to the output module. The .cinit section that contains initialization tables for the MSP430 C/C++ compiler has this attribute under the run-time initialization model.
- A NOLOAD section differs from a normal output section in one respect: the section's contents, relocation information, and line number information are not placed in the output module. The linker allocates space for the section, and it appears in the memory map listing.
- A VECT_INIT section type directs the linker to emit a warning if a particular device interrupt was not initialized using Pragma vector for an interrupt sub-routine (ISR) (see the Optimizing C/C++ Compiler User's Guide for details on vector pragma and interrupt keyword). Below output section entry will generate a linker warning if device interrupt TIMER0_A1 does not have an associated ISR:
 - TIMER0_A1 : { * (.int53) } > INT53 type = VECT_INIT

7.5.8 Assigning Symbols at Link Time

Linker assignment statements allow you to define external (global) symbols and assign values to them at link time. You can use this feature to initialize a variable or pointer to an allocation-dependent value.

7.5.8.1 Syntax of Assignment Statements

The syntax of assignment statements in the linker is similar to that of assignment statements in the C language:

<i>symbol</i>	=	<i>expression</i> ;	assigns the value of expression to symbol
<i>symbol</i>	+=	<i>expression</i> ;	adds the value of expression to symbol
<i>symbol</i>	-=	<i>expression</i> ;	subtracts the value of expression from symbol
<i>symbol</i>	*=	<i>expression</i> ;	multiplies symbol by expression
<i>symbol</i>	/=	<i>expression</i> ;	divides symbol by expression

The symbol should be defined externally. If it is not, the linker defines a new symbol and enters it into the symbol table. The expression must follow the rules defined in [Section 7.5.8.3](#). Assignment statements *must* terminate with a semicolon.

The linker processes assignment statements *after* it allocates all the output sections. Therefore, if an expression contains a symbol, the address used for that symbol reflects the symbol's address in the executable output file.

For example, suppose a program reads data from one of two tables identified by two external symbols, Table1 and Table2. The program uses the symbol `cur_tab` as the address of the current table. The `cur_tab` symbol must point to either Table1 or Table2. You could accomplish this in the assembly code, but you would need to reassemble the program to change tables. Instead, you can use a linker assignment statement to assign `cur_tab` at link time:

```
prog.obj          /* Input file */
cur_tab = Table1; /* Assign cur_tab to one of the tables */
```

7.5.8.2 Assigning the SPC to a Symbol

A special symbol, denoted by a dot (`.`), represents the current value of the section program counter (SPC) during allocation. The SPC keeps track of the current location within a section. The linker's `.` symbol is analogous to the assembler's `$` symbol. The `.` symbol can be used only in assignment statements within a `SECTIONS` directive because `.` is meaningful only during allocation and `SECTIONS` controls the allocation process. (See [Section 7.5.4](#).)

The `.` symbol refers to the current run address, not the current load address, of the section.

For example, suppose a program needs to know the address of the beginning of the `.data` section. By using the `.global` directive (see [Identify Global Symbols](#)), you can create an external undefined variable called `Dstart` in the program. Then, assign the value of `.` to `Dstart`:

```
SECTIONS
{
    .text:    {}
    .data:    {Dstart = .;}
    .bss :    {}
}
```

This defines `Dstart` to be the first linked address of the `.data` section. (`Dstart` is assigned *before* `.data` is allocated.) The linker relocates all references to `Dstart`.

A special type of assignment assigns a value to the `.` symbol. This adjusts the SPC within an output section and creates a hole between two input sections. Any value assigned to `.` to create a hole is relative to the beginning of the section, not to the address actually represented by the `.` symbol. Holes and assignments to `.` are described in [Section 7.5.9](#).

7.5.8.3 Assignment Expressions

These rules apply to linker expressions:

- Expressions can contain global symbols, constants, and the C language operators listed in [Table 7-9](#).
- All numbers are treated as long (32-bit) integers.
- Constants are identified by the linker in the same way as by the assembler. That is, numbers are recognized as decimal unless they have a suffix (H or h for hexadecimal and Q or q for octal). C language prefixes are also recognized (0 for octal and 0x for hex). Hexadecimal constants must begin with a digit. No binary constants are allowed.
- Symbols within an expression have only the value of the symbol's *address*. No type-checking is performed.
- Linker expressions can be absolute or relocatable. If an expression contains *any* relocatable symbols (and 0 or more constants or absolute symbols), it is relocatable. Otherwise, the expression is absolute. If a symbol is assigned the value of a relocatable expression, it is relocatable; if it is assigned the value of an absolute expression, it is absolute.

The linker supports the C language operators listed in [Table 7-9](#) in order of precedence. Operators in the same group have the same precedence. Besides the operators listed in [Table 7-9](#), the linker also has an align operator that allows a symbol to be aligned on an n-byte boundary within an output section (n is a power of 2). For example, the following expression aligns the SPC within the current section on the next 16-byte boundary. Because the align operator is a function of the current SPC, it can be used only in the same context as . —that is, within a SECTIONS directive.

```
. = align(16);
```

Table 7-9. Groups of Operators Used in Expressions (Precedence)

Group 1 (Highest Precedence)		Group 6			
!	Logical NOT	&	Bitwise AND		
~	Bitwise NOT				
-	Negation				
Group 2		Group 7			
*	Multiplication		Bitwise OR		
/	Division				
%	Modulus				
Group 3		Group 8			
+	Addition	&&	Logical AND		
-	Subtraction				
Group 4		Group 9			
>>	Arithmetic right shift		Logical OR		
<<	Arithmetic left shift				
Group 5		Group 10 (Lowest Precedence)			
==	Equal to	=	Assignment		
!=	Not equal to	+ =	A + = B	is equivalent to	A = A + B
>	Greater than	- =	A - = B	is equivalent to	A = A - B
<	Less than	* =	A * = B	is equivalent to	A = A * B
<=	Less than or equal to	/ =	A / = B	is equivalent to	A = A / B
>=	Greater than or equal to				

7.5.8.4 Symbols Defined by the Linker

The linker automatically defines several symbols based on which sections are used in your assembly source. A program can use these symbols at run time to determine where a section is linked. Since these symbols are external, they appear in the linker map. Each symbol can be accessed in any assembly language module if it is declared with a `.global` directive (see [Identify Global Symbols](#)). You must have used the corresponding section in a source module for the symbol to be created. Values are assigned to these symbols as follows:

.text	is assigned the first address of the <code>.text</code> output section. (It marks the <i>beginning</i> of executable code.)
etext	is assigned the first address following the <code>.text</code> output section. (It marks the <i>end</i> of executable code.)
.data	is assigned the first address of the <code>.data</code> output section. (It marks the <i>beginning</i> of initialized data tables.)
edata	is assigned the first address following the <code>.data</code> output section. (It marks the <i>end</i> of initialized data tables.)
.bss	is assigned the first address of the <code>.bss</code> output section. (It marks the <i>beginning</i> of uninitialized data.)
end	is assigned the first address following the <code>.bss</code> output section. (It marks the <i>end</i> of uninitialized data.)

The following symbols are defined only for C/C++ support when the `--ram_model` or `--rom_model` option is used.

__TI_STACK_END	is assigned the end of the <code>.stack</code> size for ELF.
__TI_STACK_SIZE	is assigned the size of the <code>.stack</code> section for ELF.
__STACK_END	is assigned the end of the <code>.stack</code> size.
__STACK_SIZE	is assigned the size of the <code>.stack</code> section.
__SYSTEMEM_SIZE	is assigned the size of the <code>.systemem</code> section.
__TI_SYSTEMEM_SIZE	is assigned the size of the <code>.systemem</code> section for ELF.

7.5.8.5 Assigning Exact Start, End, and Size Values of a Section to a Symbol

The code generation tools currently support the ability to load program code in one area of (slow) memory and run it in another (faster) area. This is done by specifying separate load and run addresses for an output section or group in the link command file. Then execute a sequence of instructions (the copying code in [Example 7-10](#)) that moves the program code from its load area to its run area before it is needed.

There are several responsibilities that a programmer must take on when setting up a system with this feature. One of these responsibilities is to determine the size and run-time address of the program code to be moved. The current mechanisms to do this involve use of the `.label` directives in the copying code. A simple example is illustrated [Example 7-10](#).

This method of specifying the size and load address of the program code has limitations. While it works fine for an individual input section that is contained entirely within one source file, this method becomes more complicated if the program code is spread over several source files or if the programmer wants to copy an entire output section from load space to run space.

Another problem with this method is that it does not account for the possibility that the section being moved may have an associated far call trampoline section that needs to be moved with it.

7.5.8.6 Why the Dot Operator Does Not Always Work

The dot operator (.) is used to define symbols at link-time with a particular address inside of an output section. It is interpreted like a PC. Whatever the current offset within the current section is, that is the value associated with the dot. Consider an output section specification within a SECTIONS directive:

```
outsect:
{
    s1.obj(.text)
    end_of_s1    = .;
    start_of_s2 = .;
    s2.obj(.text)
    end_of_s2 = .;
}
```

This statement creates three symbols:

- end_of_s1—the end address of .text in s1.obj
- start_of_s2—the start address of .text in s2.obj
- end_of_s2—the end address of .text in s2.obj

Suppose there is padding between s1.obj and s2.obj that is created as a result of alignment. Then start_of_s2 is not really the start address of the .text section in s2.obj, but it is the address before the padding needed to align the .text section in s2.obj. This is due to the linker's interpretation of the dot operator as the current PC. It is also due to the fact that the dot operator is evaluated independently of the input sections around it.

Another potential problem in the above example is that end_of_s2 may not account for any padding that was required at the end of the output section. You cannot reliably use end_of_s2 as the end address of the output section. One way to get around this problem is to create a dummy section immediately after the output section in question. For example:

```
GROUP
{
    outsect:
    {
        start_of_outsect = .;
        ...
    }
    dummy: { size_of_outsect = . - start_of_outsect; }
}
```

7.5.8.7 Address and Dimension Operators

Six new operators have been added to the link command file syntax:

LOAD_START(sym)	Defines <i>sym</i> with the load-time start address of related allocation unit
START(sym)	
LOAD_END(sym)	Defines <i>sym</i> with the load-time end address of related allocation unit
END(sym)	
LOAD_SIZE(sym)	Defines <i>sym</i> with the load-time size of related allocation unit
SIZE(sym)	
RUN_START(sym)	Defines <i>sym</i> with the run-time start address of related allocation unit
RUN_END(sym)	Defines <i>sym</i> with the run-time end address of related allocation unit
RUN_SIZE(sym)	Defines <i>sym</i> with the run-time size of related allocation unit

Linker Command File Operator Equivalencies

NOTE: LOAD_START() and START() are equivalent, as are LOAD_END()/END() and LOAD_SIZE()/SIZE(). The LOAD names are recommended for clarity.

The new address and dimension operators can be associated with several different kinds of allocation units, including input items, output sections, GROUPs, and UNIONs. The following sections provide some examples of how the operators can be used in each case.

7.5.8.7.1 Input Items

Consider an output section specification within a SECTIONS directive:

```
outsect:
{
    s1.obj(.text)
    end_of_s1 = .;
    start_of_s2 = .;
    s2.obj(.text)
    end_of_s2 = .;
}
```

This can be rewritten using the START and END operators as follows:

```
outsect:
{
    s1.obj(.text) { END(end_of_s1) }
    s2.obj(.text) { START(start_of_s2), END(end_of_s2) }
}
```

The values of end_of_s1 and end_of_s2 will be the same as if you had used the dot operator in the original example, but start_of_s2 would be defined after any necessary padding that needs to be added between the two .text sections. Remember that the dot operator would cause start_of_s2 to be defined before any necessary padding is inserted between the two input sections.

The syntax for using these operators in association with input sections calls for braces { } to enclose the operator list. The operators in the list are applied to the input item that occurs immediately before the list.

7.5.8.7.2 Output Section

The START, END, and SIZE operators can also be associated with an output section. Here is an example:

```
outsect: START(start_of_outsect), SIZE(size_of_outsect)
{
    <list of input items>
}
```

In this case, the SIZE operator defines size_of_outsect to incorporate any padding that is required in the output section to conform to any alignment requirements that are imposed.

The syntax for specifying the operators with an output section does not require braces to enclose the operator list. The operator list is simply included as part of the allocation specification for an output section.

7.5.8.7.3 GROUPs

Here is another use of the START and SIZE operators in the context of a GROUP specification:

```
GROUP
{
    outsect1: { ... }
    outsect2: { ... }
} load = ROM, run = RAM, START(group_start), SIZE(group_size);
```

This can be useful if the whole GROUP is to be loaded in one location and run in another. The copying code can use group_start and group_size as parameters for where to copy from and how much is to be copied. This makes the use of .label in the source code unnecessary.

7.5.8.7.4 UNIONS

The RUN_SIZE and LOAD_SIZE operators provide a mechanism to distinguish between the size of a UNION's load space and the size of the space where its constituents are going to be copied before they are run. Here is an example:

```
UNION: run = RAM, LOAD_START(union_load_addr),
        LOAD_SIZE(union_ld_sz), RUN_SIZE(union_run_sz)
{
    .text1: load = ROM, SIZE(text1_size) { f1.obj(.text) }
    .text2: load = ROM, SIZE(text2_size) { f2.obj(.text) }
}
```

Here union_ld_sz is going to be equal to the sum of the sizes of all output sections placed in the union. The union_run_sz value is equivalent to the largest output section in the union. Both of these symbols incorporate any padding due to blocking or alignment requirements.

7.5.9 Creating and Filling Holes

The linker provides you with the ability to create areas *within output sections* that have nothing linked into them. These areas are called *holes*. In special cases, uninitialized sections can also be treated as holes. This section describes how the linker handles holes and how you can fill holes (and uninitialized sections) with values.

7.5.9.1 Initialized and Uninitialized Sections

There are two rules to remember about the contents of output sections. An output section contains either:

- Raw data for the *entire* section
- No raw data

A section that has raw data is referred to as *initialized*. This means that the object file contains the actual memory image contents of the section. When the section is loaded, this image is loaded into memory at the section's specified starting address. The .text and .data sections *always* have raw data if anything was assembled into them. Named sections defined with the .sect assembler directive also have raw data.

By default, the .bss section (see [Reserve Space in the .bss Section](#)) and sections defined with the .usect directive (see [Reserve Uninitialized Space](#)) have no raw data (they are *uninitialized*). They occupy space in the memory map but have no actual contents. Uninitialized sections typically reserve space in fast external memory for variables. In the object file, an uninitialized section has a normal section header and can have symbols defined in it; no memory image, however, is stored in the section.

7.5.9.2 Creating Holes

You can create a hole in an initialized output section. A hole is created when you force the linker to leave extra space between input sections within an output section. When such a hole is created, *the linker must supply raw data for the hole*.

Holes can be created only *within* output sections. Space can exist *between* output sections, but such space is not a hole. To fill the space between output sections, see [Section 7.5.3.2](#).

To create a hole in an output section, you must use a special type of linker assignment statement within an output section definition. The assignment statement modifies the SPC (denoted by .) by adding to it, assigning a greater value to it, or aligning it on an address boundary. The operators, expressions, and syntaxes of assignment statements are described in [Section 7.5.8](#).

The following example uses assignment statements to create holes in output sections:

```
SECTIONS
{
    outsect:
    {
        file1.obj(.text)
        . += 0x0100 /* Create a hole with size 0x0100 */
        file2.obj(.text)
        . = align(16); /* Create a hole to align the SPC */
        file3.obj(.text)
    }
}
```

The output section outsect is built as follows:

1. The .text section from file1.obj is linked in.
2. The linker creates a 256-byte hole.
3. The .text section from file2.obj is linked in after the hole.
4. The linker creates another hole by aligning the SPC on a 16-byte boundary.
5. Finally, the .text section from file3.obj is linked in.

All values assigned to the . symbol within a section refer to the *relative address within the section*. The linker handles assignments to the . symbol as if the section started at address 0 (even if you have specified a binding address). Consider the statement . = align(16) in the example. This statement effectively aligns the file3.obj .text section to start on a 16-byte boundary within outsect. If outsect is ultimately allocated to start on an address that is not aligned, the file3.obj .text section will not be aligned either.

The . symbol refers to the current run address, not the current load address, of the section.

Expressions that decrement the . symbol are illegal. For example, it is invalid to use the -= operator in an assignment to the . symbol. The most common operators used in assignments to the . symbol are += and align.

If an output section contains all input sections of a certain type (such as .text), you can use the following statements to create a hole at the beginning or end of the output section.

```
.text: { . += 0x0100; } /* Hole at the beginning */
.data: { *(.data)
        . += 0x0100; } /* Hole at the end */
```

Another way to create a hole in an output section is to combine an uninitialized section with an initialized section to form a single output section. *In this case, the linker treats the uninitialized section as a hole and supplies data for it.* The following example illustrates this method:

```
SECTIONS
{
    outsect:
    {
        file1.obj(.text)
        file1.obj(.bss) /* This becomes a hole */
    }
}
```

Because the .text section has raw data, all of outsect must also contain raw data. Therefore, the uninitialized .bss section becomes a hole.

Uninitialized sections become holes only when they are combined with initialized sections. If several uninitialized sections are linked together, the resulting output section is also uninitialized.

7.5.9.3 Filling Holes

When a hole exists in an initialized output section, the linker must supply raw data to fill it. The linker fills holes with a 32-bit fill value that is replicated through memory until it fills the hole. The linker determines the fill value as follows:

1. If the hole is formed by combining an uninitialized section with an initialized section, you can specify a fill value for the uninitialized section. Follow the section name with an = sign and a 32-bit constant. For example:

```
SECTIONS
{
    outsect:
    {
        file1.obj(.text)
        file2.obj(.bss)= 0xFF00FF00 /* Fill this hole with 0xFF00FF00 */
    }
}
```

2. You can also specify a fill value for all the holes in an output section by supplying the fill value after the section definition:

```
SECTIONS
{
    outsect:fill = 0xFF00FF00 /* Fills holes with 0xFF00FF00 */
    {
        . += 0x0010; /* This creates a hole */
        file1.obj(.text)
        file1.obj(.bss) /* This creates another hole */
    }
}
```

3. If you do not specify an initialization value for a hole, the linker fills the hole with the value specified with the --fill_value option (see [Section 7.4.9](#)). For example, suppose the command file link.cmd contains the following SECTIONS directive:

```
SECTIONS { .text: { . = 0x0100; } /* Create a 100 word hole */ }
```

Now invoke the linker with the --fill_value option:

```
cl430 --run_linker --fill_value=0xFFFFFFFF link.cmd
```

This fills the hole with 0xFFFFFFFF.

4. If you do not invoke the linker with the --fill_value option or otherwise specify a fill value, the linker fills holes with 0s.

Whenever a hole is created and filled in an initialized output section, the hole is identified in the link map along with the value the linker uses to fill it.

7.5.9.4 Explicit Initialization of Uninitialized Sections

You can force the linker to initialize an uninitialized section by specifying an explicit fill value for it in the SECTIONS directive. This causes the entire section to have raw data (the fill value). For example:

```
SECTIONS
{
    .bss: fill = 0x12341234 /* Fills .bss with 0x12341234 */
}
```

Filling Sections

NOTE: Because filling a section (even with 0s) causes raw data to be generated for the entire section in the output file, your output file will be very large if you specify fill values for large sections or holes.

7.6 Object Libraries

An object library is a partitioned archive file that contains object files as members. Usually, a group of related modules are grouped together into a library. When you specify an object library as linker input, the linker includes any members of the library that define existing unresolved symbol references. You can use the archiver to build and maintain libraries. [Section 6.1](#) contains more information about the archiver.

Using object libraries can reduce link time and the size of the executable module. Normally, if an object file that contains a function is specified at link time, the file is linked whether the function is used or not; however, if that same function is placed in an archive library, the file is included only if the function is referenced.

The order in which libraries are specified is important, because the linker includes only those members that resolve symbols that are undefined at the time the library is searched. The same library can be specified as often as necessary; it is searched each time it is included. Alternatively, you can use the `--reread_libs` option to reread libraries until no more references can be resolved (see [Section 7.4.12.3](#)). A library has a table that lists all external symbols defined in the library; the linker searches through the table until it determines that it cannot use the library to resolve any more references.

The following examples link several files and libraries, using these assumptions:

- Input files `f1.obj` and `f2.obj` both reference an external function named `clrscr`.
- Input file `f1.obj` references the symbol `origin`.
- Input file `f2.obj` references the symbol `fillclr`.
- Member 0 of library `libc.lib` contains a definition of `origin`.
- Member 3 of library `liba.lib` contains a definition of `fillclr`.
- Member 1 of both libraries defines `clrscr`.

If you enter:

```
cl430 --run_linker f1.obj f2.obj liba.lib libc.lib
```

then:

- Member 1 of `liba.lib` satisfies the `f1.obj` and `f2.obj` references to `clrscr` because the library is searched and the definition of `clrscr` is found.
- Member 0 of `libc.lib` satisfies the reference to `origin`.
- Member 3 of `liba.lib` satisfies the reference to `fillclr`.

If, however, you enter:

```
cl430 --run_linker f1.obj f2.obj libc.lib liba.lib
```

then the references to `clrscr` are satisfied by member 1 of `libc.lib`.

If none of the linked files reference symbols defined in a library, you can use the `--undef_sym` option to force the linker to include a library member. (See [Section 7.4.27](#).) The next example creates an undefined symbol `rot1` in the linker's global symbol table:

```
cl430 --run_linker --undef_sym=rot1 libc.lib
```

If any member of `libc.lib` defines `rot1`, the linker includes that member.

Library members are allocated according to the `SECTIONS` directive default allocation algorithm; see [Section 7.5.4](#).

[Section 7.4.12](#) describes methods for specifying directories that contain object libraries.

7.7 Default Allocation Algorithm

The MEMORY and SECTIONS directives provide flexible methods for building, combining, and allocating sections. However, any memory locations or sections that you choose *not* to specify must still be handled by the linker. The linker uses default algorithms to build and allocate sections within the specifications you supply.

If you do not use the MEMORY and SECTIONS directives, the linker allocates output sections as though the definitions in [Example 7-16](#) were specified.

Example 7-16. Default Allocation for MSP430 Devices

```
MEMORY
{
    MEM      : origin = 0x0200, length = 0xFDFD
    RESET    : origin = 0xFFFFE, length = 0x0002
}

SECTIONS
{
    .text    : {} > MEM
    .const   : {} > MEM
    .data    : {} > MEM
    .bss     : {} > MEM

    .reset   :      > RESET

    .cinit   : {} > MEM      ;cflag option only
    .pinit   : {} > MEM      ;cflag option only
}
```

All .text input sections are concatenated to form a .text output section in the executable output file, and all .data input sections are combined to form a .data output section.

If you use a SECTIONS directive, the linker performs *no part* of the default allocation. Allocation is performed according to the rules specified by the SECTIONS directive and the general algorithm described next in [Section 7.7.1](#).

7.7.1 How the Allocation Algorithm Creates Output Sections

An output section can be formed in one of two ways:

Method 1 As the result of a SECTIONS directive definition

Method 2 By combining input sections with the same name into an output section that is not defined in a SECTIONS directive

If an output section is formed as a result of a SECTIONS directive, this definition completely determines the section's contents. (See [Section 7.5.4](#) for examples of how to define an output section's content.)

If an output section is formed by combining input sections not specified by a SECTIONS directive, the linker combines all such input sections that have the same name into an output section with that name. For example, suppose the files f1.obj and f2.obj both contain named sections called Vectors and that the SECTIONS directive does not define an output section for them. The linker combines the two Vectors sections from the input files into a single output section named Vectors, allocates it into memory, and includes it in the output file.

By default, the linker does not display a message when it creates an output section that is not defined in the SECTIONS directive. You can use the --warn_sections linker option (see [Section 7.4.29](#)) to cause the linker to display a message when it creates a new output section.

After the linker determines the composition of all output sections, it must allocate them into configured memory. The MEMORY directive specifies which portions of memory are configured. If there is no MEMORY directive, the linker uses the default configuration as shown in [Example 7-16](#). (See [Section 7.5.3](#) for more information on configuring memory.)

7.7.2 Reducing Memory Fragmentation

The linker's allocation algorithm attempts to minimize memory fragmentation. This allows memory to be used more efficiently and increases the probability that your program will fit into memory. The algorithm comprises these steps:

1. Each output section for which you have supplied a specific binding address is placed in memory at that address.
2. Each output section that is included in a specific, named memory range or that has memory attribute restrictions is allocated. Each output section is placed into the first available space within the named area, considering alignment where necessary.
3. Any remaining sections are allocated in the order in which they are defined. Sections not defined in a SECTIONS directive are allocated in the order in which they are encountered. Each output section is placed into the first available memory space, considering alignment where necessary.

7.8 Linker-Generated Copy Tables

The linker supports extensions to the link command file syntax that enable the following:

- Make it easier for you to copy objects from load-space to run-space at boot time
- Make it easier for you to manage memory overlays at run time
- Allow you to split GROUPs and output sections that have separate load and run addresses

7.8.1 A Current Boot-Loaded Application Development Process

In some embedded applications, there is a need to copy or download code and/or data from one location to another at boot time before the application actually begins its main execution thread. For example, an application may have its code and/or data in FLASH memory and need to copy it into on-chip memory before the application begins execution.

One way you can develop an application like this is to create a copy table in assembly code that contains three elements for each block of code or data that needs to be moved from FLASH into on-chip memory at boot time:

- The load address
- The run address
- The size

The process you follow to develop such an application might look like this:

1. Build the application to produce a .map file that contains the load and run addresses of each section that has a separate load and run placement.
2. Edit the copy table (used by the boot loader) to correct the load and run addresses as well as the size of each block of code or data that needs to be moved at boot time.
3. Build the application again, incorporating the updated copy table.
4. Run the application.

This process puts a heavy burden on you to maintain the copy table (by hand, no less). Each time a piece of code or data is added or removed from the application, you must repeat the process in order to keep the contents of the copy table up to date.

7.8.2 An Alternative Approach

You can avoid some of this maintenance burden by using the `LOAD_START()`, `RUN_START()`, and `SIZE()` operators that are already part of the link command file syntax. For example, instead of building the application to generate a .map file, the link command file can be annotated:

```
SECTIONS
{
    .flashcode: { app_tasks.obj(.text) }
        load = FLASH, run = PMEM,
        LOAD_START(_flash_code_ld_start),
        RUN_START(_flash_code_rn_start),
        SIZE(_flash_code_size)

    ...
}
```

In this example, the `LOAD_START()`, `RUN_START()`, and `SIZE()` operators instruct the linker to create three symbols:

Symbol	Description
<code>_flash_code_ld_start</code>	Load address of .flashcode section
<code>_flash_code_rn_start</code>	Run address of .flashcode section
<code>_flash_code_size</code>	Size of .flashcode section

These symbols can then be referenced from the copy table. The actual data in the copy table will be updated automatically each time the application is linked. This approach removes step 1 of the process described in [Section 7.8.1](#).

While maintenance of the copy table is reduced markedly, you must still carry the burden of keeping the copy table contents in sync with the symbols that are defined in the link command file. Ideally, the linker would generate the boot copy table automatically. This would avoid having to build the application twice *and* free you from having to explicitly manage the contents of the boot copy table.

For more information on the `LOAD_START()`, `RUN_START()`, and `SIZE()` operators, see [Section 7.5.8.7](#).

7.8.3 Overlay Management Example

Consider an application which contains a memory overlay that must be managed at run time. The memory overlay is defined using a UNION in the link command file as illustrated in [Example 7-17](#):

Example 7-17. Using a UNION for Memory Overlay

```
SECTIONS
{
    ...

    UNION
    {
        GROUP
        {
            .task1: { task1.obj(.text) }
            .task2: { task2.obj(.text) }

        } load = ROM, LOAD_START(_task12_load_start), SIZE(_task12_size)

        GROUP
        {
            .task3: { task3.obj(.text) }
            .task4: { task4.obj(.text) }

        } load = ROM, LOAD_START(_task34_load_start), SIZE(_task_34_size)

    } run = RAM, RUN_START(_task_run_start)

    ...
}
```

The application must manage the contents of the memory overlay at run time. That is, whenever any services from .task1 or .task2 are needed, the application must first ensure that .task1 and .task2 are resident in the memory overlay. Similarly for .task3 and .task4.

To affect a copy of .task1 and .task2 from ROM to RAM at run time, the application must first gain access to the load address of the tasks (_task12_load_start), the run address (_task_run_start), and the size (_task12_size). Then this information is used to perform the actual code copy.

7.8.4 Generating Copy Tables Automatically With the Linker

The linker supports extensions to the link command file syntax that enable you to do the following:

- Identify any object components that may need to be copied from load space to run space at some point during the run of an application
- Instruct the linker to automatically generate a copy table that contains (at least) the load address, run address, and size of the component that needs to be copied
- Instruct the linker to generate a symbol specified by you that provides the address of a linker-generated copy table. For instance, [Example 7-17](#) can be written as shown in [Example 7-18](#):

Example 7-18. Produce Address for Linker Generated Copy Table

```
SECTIONS
{
    ...

    UNION
    {
        GROUP
        {
            .task1: { task1.obj(.text) }
            .task2: { task2.obj(.text) }

        } load = ROM, table(_task12_copy_table)

        GROUP
        {
            .task3: { task3.obj(.text) }
            .task4: { task4.obj(.text) }

        } load = ROM, table(_task34_copy_table)

    } run = RAM
    ...
}
```

Using the SECTIONS directive from [Example 7-18](#) in the link command file, the linker generates two copy tables named: `_task12_copy_table` and `_task34_copy_table`. Each copy table provides the load address, run address, and size of the GROUP that is associated with the copy table. This information is accessible from application source code using the linker-generated symbols, `_task12_copy_table` and `_task34_copy_table`, which provide the addresses of the two copy tables, respectively.

Using this method, you do not have to worry about the creation or maintenance of a copy table. You can reference the address of any copy table generated by the linker in C/C++ or assembly source code, passing that value to a general purpose copy routine which will process the copy table and affect the actual copy.

7.8.5 The `table()` Operator

You can use the `table()` operator to instruct the linker to produce a copy table. A `table()` operator can be applied to an output section, a GROUP, or a UNION member. The copy table generated for a particular `table()` specification can be accessed through a symbol specified by you that is provided as an argument to the `table()` operator. The linker creates a symbol with this name and assigns it the address of the copy table as the value of the symbol. The copy table can then be accessed from the application using the linker-generated symbol.

Each `table()` specification you apply to members of a given UNION must contain a unique name. If a `table()` operator is applied to a GROUP, then none of that GROUP's members may be marked with a `table()` specification. The linker detects violations of these rules and reports them as warnings, ignoring each offending use of the `table()` specification. The linker does not generate a copy table for erroneous `table()` operator specifications.

Copy tables can be generated automatically; see [Section 7.8.4](#). The table operator can be used with compression; see [Section 7.8.8](#).

7.8.6 Boot-Time Copy Tables

The linker supports a special copy table name, BINIT (or binit), that you can use to create a boot-time copy table. For example, the link command file for the boot-loaded application described in [Section 7.8.2](#) can be rewritten as follows:

```
SECTIONS
{
    .flashcode: { app_tasks.obj(.text) }
    load = FLASH, run = PMEM,
    table(BINIT)
    ...
}
```

For this example, the linker creates a copy table that can be accessed through a special linker-generated symbol, `__binit__`, which contains the list of all object components that need to be copied from their load location to their run location at boot-time. If a link command file does not contain any uses of `table(BINIT)`, then the `__binit__` symbol is given a value of -1 to indicate that a boot-time copy table does not exist for a particular application.

You can apply the `table(BINIT)` specification to an output section, GROUP, or UNION member. If used in the context of a UNION, only one member of the UNION can be designated with `table(BINIT)`. If applied to a GROUP, then none of that GROUP's members may be marked with `table(BINIT)`. The linker detects violations of these rules and reports them as warnings, ignoring each offending use of the `table(BINIT)` specification.

7.8.7 Using the table() Operator to Manage Object Components

If you have several pieces of code that need to be managed together, then you can apply the same `table()` operator to several different object components. In addition, if you want to manage a particular object component in multiple ways, you can apply more than one `table()` operator to it. Consider the link command file excerpt in [Example 7-19](#):

Example 7-19. Linker Command File to Manage Object Components

```
SECTIONS
{
    UNION
    {
        .first: { a1.obj(.text), b1.obj(.text), c1.obj(.text) }
        load = EMEM, run = PMEM, table(BINIT), table(_first_ctbl)

        .second: { a2.obj(.text), b2.obj(.text) }
        load = EMEM, run = PMEM, table(_second_ctbl)
    }

    .extra: load = EMEM, run = PMEM, table(BINIT)
    ...
}
```

In this example, the output sections `.first` and `.extra` are copied from external memory (EMEM) into program memory (PMEM) at boot time while processing the BINIT copy table. After the application has started executing its main thread, it can then manage the contents of the overlay using the two overlay copy tables named: `_first_ctbl` and `_second_ctbl`.

7.8.8 Compression Support

When automatically generating copy tables, the linker provides a way to compress the load-space data. This can reduce the read-only memory foot print. This compressed data can be decompressed while copying the data from load space to run space.

You can specify compression with the `table()` operator. The `table()` operator accepts an optional compression parameter. The syntax is:

`table(name, compression=compression_kind)`

The `compression_kind` can be one of the following types:

- **off.** Don't compress the data.
- **rle.** Compress data using Run Length Encoding.
- **lzss.** Compress data using Lempel-Ziv-Storer-Szymanski compression.

When you choose compression, it is not guaranteed that the linker will compress the load data. The linker compresses load data only when such compression reduces the overall size of the load space. In some cases even if the compression results in smaller load section size the linker does not compress the data if the decompression routine offsets for the savings.

For example, assume RLE compression reduces the size of section1 by 30 bytes. Also assume the RLE decompression routine takes up 40 bytes in load space. By choosing to compress section1 the load space is increased by 10 bytes. Therefore, the linker will not compress section1. On the other hand, if there is another section (say section2) that can benefit by more than 10 bytes from applying the same compression then both sections can be compressed and the overall load space is reduced. In such cases the linker compresses both the sections.

You cannot force the linker to compress the data when doing so does not result in savings.

7.8.8.1 Compressed Copy Table Format

The copy table format is the same irrespective of the compression. The size field of the copy record is overloaded to support compression. Figure 7-5 illustrates the compressed copy table layout.

Figure 7-5. Compressed Copy Table

Rec size	Rec cnt		
Load address		Run address	Size (0 if load data is compressed)

In Figure 7-5, if the size in the copy record is non-zero it represents the size of the data to be copied, and also means that the size of the load data is the same as the run data. When the size is 0, it means that the load data is compressed.

7.8.8.2 Compressed Section Representation in the Object File

When the load data is not compressed, the object file can have only one section with a different load and run address.

Consider the following `table()` operation in the linker command file.

```
SECTIONS
{
    .task1: load = ROM, run = RAM, table(_task1_table)
}
```

The output object file has one output section named `.task1` which has a different load and run addresses. This is possible because the load space and run space have identical data when the section is not compressed.

Alternatively, consider the following:

```
SECTIONS
{
    .task1: load = ROM, run = RAM, table(_task1_table, compression=rle)
}
```

If the linker compresses the .task1 section then the load space data and the run space data are different. The linker creates the following two sections:

- **.task1** : This section is uninitialized. This output section represents the run space image of section task1.
- **.task1.load** : This section is initialized. This output section represents the load space image of the section task1. This section usually is considerably smaller in size than .task1 output section.

7.8.8.3 Compressed Data Layout

The compressed load data has the following layout:

8-bit index	Compressed data
-------------	-----------------

The first eight bits of the load data are the handler index. This handler index is used to index into a handler table to get the address of a handler function that knows how to decode the data that follows. The handler table is a list of 32-bit function pointers as shown in [Figure 7-6](#).

Figure 7-6. Handler Table

__TI_Handler_Table_Base:

32-bit handler address 1
⋮
32-bit handler address N

__TI_Handler_Table_Limit:

The linker creates a separate output section for the load and run space. For example, if .task1.load is compressed using RLE, the handler index points to an entry in the handler table that has the address of the run-time-support routine __TI_decompress_rle().

7.8.8.4 Run-Time Decompression

During run time you call the run-time-support routine copy_in() to copy the data from load space to run space. The address of the copy table is passed to this routine. First the routine reads the record count. Then it repeats the following steps for each record:

1. Read load address, run address and size from record.
2. If size is zero go to step 5.
3. Call memcpy passing the run address, load address and size.
4. Go to step 1 if there are more records to read.
5. Read the first byte from load address. Call this index.
6. Read the handler address from (&__TI_Handler_Base)[index].
7. Call the handler and pass load address + 1 and run address.
8. Go to step 1 if there are more records to read.

The routines to handle the decompression of load data are provided in the run-time-support library.

7.8.8.5 Compression Algorithms

Run Length Encoding (RLE):

8-bit index	Initialization data compressed using run length encoding
-------------	----------------------------------------------------------

The data following the 8-bit index is compressed using run length encoded (RLE) format. MSP430 uses a simple run length encoding that can be decompressed using the following algorithm:

1. Read the first byte, Delimiter (D).
2. Read the next byte (B).
3. If $B \neq D$, copy B to the output buffer and go to step 2.
4. Read the next byte (L).
 - (a) If $L == 0$, then length is either a 16-bit, a 24-bit value, or we've reached the end of the data, read next byte (L).
 - (i) If $L == 0$, length is a 24-bit value or the end of the data is reached, read next byte (L).
 - (i) If $L == 0$, the end of the data is reached, go to step 7.
 - (ii) Else $L \leq 16$, read next two bytes into lower 16 bits of L to complete 24-bit value for L.
 - (ii) Else $L \leq 8$, read next byte into lower 8 bits of L to complete 16-bit value for L.
 - (b) Else if $L > 0$ and $L < 4$, copy D to the output buffer L times. Go to step 2.
 - (c) Else, length is 8-bit value (L).
5. Read the next byte (C); C is the repeat character.
6. Write C to the output buffer L times; go to step 2.
7. End of processing.

The MSP430 run-time support library has a routine `__TI_decompress_rle24()` to decompress data compressed using RLE. The first argument to this function is the address pointing to the byte after the 8-bit index. The second argument is the run address from the C auto initialization record.

RLE Decompression Routine

NOTE: The previous decompression routine, `__TI_decompress_rle()`, is included in the run-time-support library for decompressing RLE encodings that are generated by older versions of the linker.

Lempel-Ziv-Storer-Szymanski Compression (LZSS):

8-bit index	Data compressed using LZSS
-------------	----------------------------

The data following the 8-bit index is compressed using LZSS compression. The MSP430 run-time-support library has the routine `__TI_decompress_lzss()` to decompress the data compressed using LZSS. The first argument to this function is the address pointing to the byte after the 8-bit Index, and the second argument is the run address from the C auto initialization record.

7.8.9 Copy Table Contents

In order to use a copy table that is generated by the linker, you must be aware of the contents of the copy table. This information is included in a new run-time-support library header file, `cpy_tbl.h`, which contains a C source representation of the copy table data structure that is automatically generated by the linker.

[Example 7-20](#) shows the MSP430 copy table header file.

Example 7-20. MSP430 `cpy_tbl.h` File

```

/*****
/* cpy_tbl.h  v#####
/* Copyright (c) 2003-2011 Texas Instruments Incorporated
/*
/* Specification of copy table data structures which can be automatically
/* generated by the linker (using the table() operator in the LCF).
/*
/*
*****/

#ifndef _CPY_TBL
#define _CPY_TBL

#ifdef __cplusplus
extern "C" namespace std {
#endif /* __cplusplus */

/*****
/* Copy Record Data Structure
*****/
typedef struct copy_record
{
    unsigned long load_addr;
    unsigned long run_addr;
    unsigned long size;
} COPY_RECORD;

/*****
/* Copy Table Data Structure
*****/
typedef struct copy_table
{
    unsigned short rec_size;
    unsigned short num_recs;
    COPY_RECORD   recs[1];
} COPY_TABLE;

/*****
/* Prototype for general purpose copy routine.
*****/
extern void copy_in(COPY_TABLE *tp);

#ifdef __cplusplus
} /* extern "C" namespace std */

#ifndef _CPP_STYLE_HEADER
using std::COPY_RECORD;
using std::COPY_TABLE;
using std::copy_in;
#endif /* _CPP_STYLE_HEADER */
#endif /* __cplusplus */
#endif /* !_CPY_TBL */

```

For each object component that is marked for a copy, the linker creates a COPY_RECORD object for it. Each COPY_RECORD contains at least the following information for the object component:

- The load address
- The run address
- The size

The linker collects all COPY_RECORDs that are associated with the same copy table into a COPY_TABLE object. The COPY_TABLE object contains the size of a given COPY_RECORD, the number of COPY_RECORDs in the table, and the array of COPY_RECORDs in the table. For instance, in the BINIT example in [Section 7.8.6](#), the .first and .extra output sections will each have their own COPY_RECORD entries in the BINIT copy table. The BINIT copy table will then look like this:

```
COPY_TABLE __binit__ = { 12, 2,
                        { <load address of .first>,
                          <run address of .first>,
                          <size of .first> },
                        { <load address of .extra>,
                          <run address of .extra>,
                          <size of .extra> } };
```

7.8.10 General Purpose Copy Routine

The cpy_tbl.h file in [Example 7-20](#) also contains a prototype for a general-purpose copy routine, copy_in(), which is provided as part of the run-time-support library. The copy_in() routine takes a single argument: the address of a linker-generated copy table. The routine then processes the copy table data object and performs the copy of each object component specified in the copy table.

The copy_in() function definition is provided in the cpy_tbl.c run-time-support source file shown in [Example 7-21](#).

Example 7-21. Run-Time-Support cpy_tbl.c File

```
/* ***** */
/* cpy_tbl.c v##### */
/* Copyright (c) 2003-2011 Texas Instruments Incorporated */
/* */
/* General purpose copy routine. Given the address of a linker-generated */
/* COPY_TABLE data structure, effect the copy of all object components */
/* that are designated for copy via the corresponding LCF table() operator. */
/* */
/* ***** */
#include <cpy_tbl.h>
#include <string.h>

#ifdef __TI_EABI__
/* ***** */
/* MSP copy tables can handle moving functions even in small data model */
/* + large code model, where data pointers are not big enough to */
/* represent function pointers. This requires the EABI decompression */
/* functions (SHARED/copy_*.c) to be changed to accept "far" pointers. */
/* For this memory model combination, the decompression functions are */
/* changed to use "unsigned long" to represent function pointers, so */
/* function pointers through which we call these functions also needs to */
/* have a prototype accepting "unsigned long" instead of pointer types. */
/* All other memory model combinations use the same prototype that all */
/* the other targets use: two data pointer arguments. Ultimately we use */
/* MSP peek/poke intrinsics to read/write the "far" memory. */
/* ***** */
#if __LARGE_CODE_MODEL__ && !__LARGE_DATA_MODEL__
typedef void (*handler_fptr)(unsigned long in, unsigned long out);
#else
typedef void (*handler_fptr)(const unsigned char *in, unsigned char *out);
#endif
#define HANDLER_TABLE __TI_Handler_Table_Base
```

Example 7-21. Run-Time-Support cpy_tbl.c File (continued)

```
#pragma WEAK(HANDLER_TABLE)
extern unsigned int HANDLER_TABLE;
#endif

#if __LARGE_CODE_MODEL__ && !__LARGE_DATA_MODEL__ void __memcpy_far(unsigned long dst,
    unsigned long src, unsigned long sz);
#endif

/*****
/* COPY_IN()
*****/
void copy_in(COPY_TABLE *tp)
{
    unsigned short i;

    for (i = 0; i < tp->num_recs; i++)
    {
        COPY_RECORD crp = tp->recs[i];

        #if __LARGE_CODE_MODEL__ & __LARGE_DATA_MODEL__
            unsigned long ld_addr = crp.load_addr;
            unsigned long rn_addr = crp.run_addr; #else
            unsigned char *ld_addr = crp.load_addr;
            unsigned char *rn_addr = crp.run_addr; #endif

            if (crp.size)
            {
                /*-----*/
                /* Copy record has a non-zero size so the data is not compressed. */
                /* Just copy the data. */
                /*-----*/
                #if __LARGE_CODE_MODEL__ && !__LARGE_DATA_MODEL__
                    if (ld_addr >> 16 || rn_addr >> 16)
                        __memcpy_far(rn_addr, ld_addr, crp.size);
                    else
                        memcpy((void*)(unsigned int)rn_addr,
                            (void*)(unsigned int)ld_addr, crp.size); #else
                        memcpy(rn_addr, ld_addr, crp.size); #endif
            }
        #ifdef __TI_EABI__
            else if (HANDLER_TABLE)
            {
                /*-----*/
                /* Copy record has size zero so the data is compressed. The first */
                /* byte of the load data has the handler index. Use this index with */
                /* the handler table to get the handler for this data. Then call */
                /* the handler by passing the load and run address. */
                /*-----*/
                #if __LARGE_CODE_MODEL__ && !__LARGE_DATA_MODEL__
                    unsigned char index = __data20_read_char(ld_addr++);
                #else
                    unsigned char index = *((unsigned char *)ld_addr++);
                #endif

                handler_fptr hndl = (handler_fptr>(&HANDLER_TABLE)[index]);

                #if __LARGE_CODE_MODEL__ && !__LARGE_DATA_MODEL__
                    (*hndl)(ld_addr, rn_addr);
                #else
                    (*hndl)((const unsigned char *)ld_addr, (unsigned char *)rn_addr);
                #endif
            }
        #endif
    }
}
#endif
```


Example 7-21. Run-Time-Support cpy_tbl.c File (continued)

```
}
}
```

7.8.11 Linker-Generated Copy Table Sections and Symbols

The linker creates and allocates a separate input section for each copy table that it generates. Each copy table symbol is defined with the address value of the input section that contains the corresponding copy table.

The linker generates a unique name for each overlay copy table input section. For example, table(_first_ctbl) would place the copy table for the .first section into an input section called .ovly:_first_ctbl. The linker creates a single input section, .binit, to contain the entire boot-time copy table.

[Example 7-22](#) illustrates how you can control the placement of the linker-generated copy table sections using the input section names in the link command file.

Example 7-22. Controlling the Placement of the Linker-Generated Copy Table Sections

```
SECTIONS
{
    UNION
    {
        .first: { a1.obj(.text), b1.obj(.text), c1.obj(.text) }
            load = EMEM, run = PMEM, table(BINIT), table(_first_ctbl)

        .second: { a2.obj(.text), b2.obj(.text) }
            load = EMEM, run = PMEM, table(_second_ctbl)
    }

    .extra: load = EMEM, run = PMEM, table(BINIT)

    ...

    .ovly: { } > BMEM
    .binit: { } > BMEM
}
```

For the link command file in [Example 7-22](#), the boot-time copy table is generated into a .binit input section, which is collected into the .binit output section, which is mapped to an address in the BMEM memory area. The _first_ctbl is generated into the .ovly:_first_ctbl input section and the _second_ctbl is generated into the .ovly:_second_ctbl input section. Since the base names of these input sections match the name of the .ovly output section, the input sections are collected into the .ovly output section, which is then mapped to an address in the BMEM memory area.

If you do not provide explicit placement instructions for the linker-generated copy table sections, they are allocated according to the linker's default placement algorithm.

The linker does not allow other types of input sections to be combined with a copy table input section in the same output section. The linker does not allow a copy table section that was created from a partial link session to be used as input to a succeeding link session.

7.8.12 Splitting Object Components and Overlay Management

In previous versions of the linker, splitting sections that have separate load and run placement instructions was not permitted. This restriction was because there was no effective mechanism for you, the developer, to gain access to the load address or run address of each one of the pieces of the split object component. Therefore, there was no effective way to write a copy routine that could move the split section from its load location to its run location.

However, the linker can access both the load address and run address of every piece of a split object component. Using the table() operator, you can tell the linker to generate this information into a copy table. The linker gives each piece of the split object component a COPY_RECORD entry in the copy table object.

For example, consider an application which has seven tasks. Tasks 1 through 3 are overlaid with tasks 4 through 7 (using a UNION directive). The load placement of all of the tasks is split among four different memory areas (LMEM1, LMEM2, LMEM3, and LMEM4). The overlay is defined as part of memory area PMEM. You must move each set of tasks into the overlay at run time before any services from the set are used.

You can use table() operators in combination with splitting operators, >>, to create copy tables that have all the information needed to move either group of tasks into the memory overlay as shown in [Example 7-23](#). [Example 7-24](#) illustrates a possible driver for such an application.

Example 7-23. Creating a Copy Table to Access a Split Object Component

```
SECTIONS
{
    UNION
    {
        .task1to3: { *(.task1), *(.task2), *(.task3) }
                load >> LMEM1 | LMEM2 | LMEM4, table(_task13_ctbl)

        GROUP
        {
            .task4: { *(.task4) }
            .task5: { *(.task5) }
            .task6: { *(.task6) }
            .task7: { *(.task7) }

        } load >> LMEM1 | LMEM3 | LMEM4, table(_task47_ctbl)
    } run = PMEM

    ...

    .ovly: > LMEM4
}
```

Example 7-24. Split Object Component Driver

```
#include <cpy_ttbl.h>

extern far COPY_TABLE task13_cttbl;
extern far COPY_TABLE task47_cttbl;

extern void task1(void);
...
extern void task7(void);

main()
{
    ...
    copy_in(&task13_cttbl);
    task1();
    task2();
    task3();
    ...

    copy_in(&task47_cttbl);
    task4();
    task5();
    task6();
    task7();
    ...
}
```

You must declare a COPY_TABLE object as *far* to allow the overlay copy table section placement to be independent from the other sections containing data objects (such as .bss).

The contents of the .task1to3 section are split in the section's load space and contiguous in its run space. The linker-generated copy table, _task13_cttbl, contains a separate COPY_RECORD for each piece of the split section .task1to3. When the address of _task13_cttbl is passed to copy_in(), each piece of .task1to3 is copied from its load location into the run location.

The contents of the GROUP containing tasks 4 through 7 are also split in load space. The linker performs the GROUP split by applying the split operator to each member of the GROUP in order. The copy table for the GROUP then contains a COPY_RECORD entry for every piece of every member of the GROUP. These pieces are copied into the memory overlay when the _task47_cttbl is processed by copy_in().

The split operator can be applied to an output section, GROUP, or the load placement of a UNION or UNION member. The linker does not permit a split operator to be applied to the run placement of either a UNION or of a UNION member. The linker detects such violations, emits a warning, and ignores the offending split operator usage.

7.9 Partial (Incremental) Linking

An output file that has been linked can be linked again with additional modules. This is known as *partial linking* or *incremental linking*. Partial linking allows you to partition large applications, link each part separately, and then link all the parts together to create the final executable program.

Follow these guidelines for producing a file that you will relink:

- The intermediate files produced by the linker *must* have relocation information. Use the `--relocatable` option when you link the file the first time. (See [Section 7.4.2.2](#).)
- Intermediate files *must* have symbolic information. By default, the linker retains symbolic information in its output. Do not use the `--no_sym_table` option if you plan to relink a file, because `--no_sym_table` strips symbolic information from the output module. (See [Section 7.4.18](#).)
- Intermediate link operations should be concerned only with the formation of output sections and not with allocation, binding, and MEMORY directives should be performed in the final link.
- If the intermediate files have global symbols that have the same name as global symbols in other files and you want them to be treated as static (visible only within the intermediate file), you must link the files with the `--make_static` option (see [Section 7.4.13.1](#)).
- If you are linking C code, do not use `--ram_model` or `--rom_model` until the final linker. Every time you invoke the linker with the `--ram_model` or `--rom_model` option, the linker attempts to create an entry point. (See [Section 7.4.20](#).)

The following example shows how you can use partial linking:

Step 1: Link the file `file1.com`; use the `--relocatable` option to retain relocation information in the output file `tempout1.out`.

```
c1430 --run_linker --relocatable --output_file=tempout1 file1.com
```

`file1.com` contains:

```
SECTIONS
{
    ssl: {
        f1.obj
        f2.obj
        .
        .
        .
        fn.obj
    }
}
```

Step 2: Link the file `file2.com`; use the `--relocatable` option to retain relocation information in the output file `tempout2.out`.

```
c1430 --run_linker --relocatable --output_file=tempout2 file2.com
```

`file2.com` contains:

```
SECTIONS
{
    ss2: {
        g1.obj
        g2.obj
        .
        .
        .
        gn.obj
    }
}
```

Step 3: Link `tempout1.out` and `tempout2.out`.

```
c1430 --run_linker --map_file=final.map --
output_file=final.out tempout1.out tempout2.out
```

7.10 Linking C/C++ Code

The C/C++ compiler produces assembly language source code that can be assembled and linked. For example, a C program consisting of modules prog1, prog2, etc., can be assembled and then linked to produce an executable file called prog.out:

```
cl430 --run_linker --rom_model --  
output_file prog.out prog1.obj prog2.obj ... rts430.lib
```

The `--rom_model` option tells the linker to use special conventions that are defined by the C/C++ environment.

The archive libraries shipped by TI contain C/C++ run-time-support functions.

C, C++, and mixed C and C++ programs can use the same run-time-support library. Run-time-support functions and variables that can be called and referenced from both C and C++ will have the same linkage.

For more information about the MSP430 C/C++ language, including the run-time environment and run-time-support functions, see the *MSP430 Optimizing C/C++ Compiler User's Guide*.

7.10.1 Run-Time Initialization

All C/C++ programs must be linked with code to initialize and execute the program, called a *bootstrap* routine, also known as the *boot.obj* object module. The symbol `_c_int00` is defined as the program entry point and is the start of the C boot routine in *boot.obj*; referencing `_c_int00` ensures that *boot.obj* is automatically linked in from the run-time-support library. When a program begins running, it executes *boot.obj* first. The *boot.obj* symbol contains code and data for initializing the run-time environment and performs the following tasks:

- Changes from system mode to user mode
- Sets up the user mode stack
- Processes the run-time *.cinit* initialization table and autoinitializes global variables (when the linker is invoked with the `--rom_model` option)
- Calls *main*

The run-time-support object libraries contain *boot.obj*. You can:

- Use the archiver to extract *boot.obj* from the library and then link the module in directly.
- Include the appropriate run-time-support library as an input file (the linker automatically extracts *boot.obj* when you use the `--ram_model` or `--rom_model` option).

7.10.2 Object Libraries and Run-Time Support

The *MSP430 Optimizing C/C++ Compiler User's Guide* describes additional run-time-support functions that are included in *rts.src*. If your program uses any of these functions, you must link the appropriate run-time-support library with your object files.

You can also create your own object libraries and link them. The linker includes and links only those library members that resolve undefined references.

7.10.3 Setting the Size of the Stack and Heap Sections

The C/C++ language uses two uninitialized sections called *.sysmem* and *.stack* for the memory pool used by the `malloc()` functions and the run-time stacks, respectively. You can set the size of these by using the `--heap_size` or `--stack_size` option and specifying the size of the section as a 4-byte constant immediately after the option. If the options are not used, the default size of the heap is 128 bytes and the default size of the stack is 128 bytes.

See [Section 7.4.10](#) for setting heap sizes and [Section 7.4.24](#) for setting stack sizes.

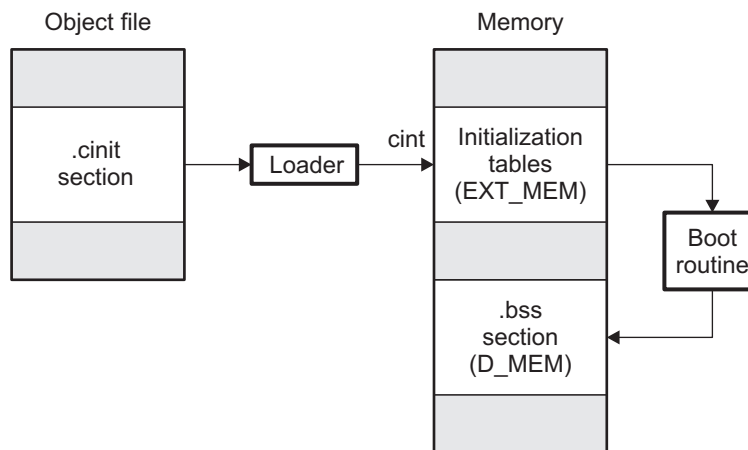
7.10.4 Autoinitialization of Variables at Run Time

Autoinitializing variables at run time is the default method of autoinitialization. To use this method, invoke the linker with the `--rom_model` option.

Using this method, the `.cinit` section is loaded into memory along with all the other initialized sections. The linker defines a special symbol called `cinit` that points to the beginning of the initialization tables in memory. When the program begins running, the C boot routine copies data from the tables (pointed to by `.cinit`) into the specified variables in the `.bss` section. This allows initialization data to be stored in slow external memory and copied to fast external memory each time the program starts.

Figure 7-7 illustrates autoinitialization at run time. Use this method in any system where your application runs from code burned into slow external memory.

Figure 7-7. Autoinitialization at Run Time



7.10.5 Initialization of Variables at Load Time

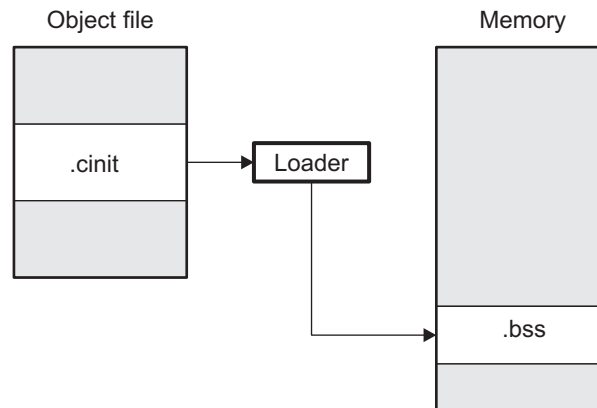
Initialization of variables at load time enhances performance by reducing boot time and by saving the memory used by the initialization tables. To use this method, invoke the linker with the `--ram_model` option.

When you use the `--ram_model` linker option, the linker sets the `STYP_COPY` bit in the `.cinit` section's header. This tells the loader not to load the `.cinit` section into memory. (The `.cinit` section occupies no space in the memory map.) The linker also sets the `cinit` symbol to `-1` (normally, `cinit` points to the beginning of the initialization tables). This indicates to the boot routine that the initialization tables are not present in memory; accordingly, no run-time initialization is performed at boot time.

A loader must be able to perform the following tasks to use initialization at load time:

- Detect the presence of the `.cinit` section in the object file.
- Determine that `STYP_COPY` is set in the `.cinit` section header, so that it knows not to copy the `.cinit` section into memory.
- Understand the format of the initialization tables.

Figure 7-8 illustrates the initialization of variables at load time.

Figure 7-8. Initialization at Load Time


7.10.6 The `--rom_model` and `--ram_model` Linker Options

The following list outlines what happens when you invoke the linker with the `--ram_model` or `--rom_model` option.

- The symbol `_c_int00` is defined as the program entry point. The `_c_int00` symbol is the start of the C boot routine in `boot.obj`; referencing `_c_int00` ensures that `boot.obj` is automatically linked in from the appropriate run-time-support library.
- The `.cinit` output section is padded with a termination record to designate to the boot routine (autoinitialize at run time) or the loader (initialize at load time) when to stop reading the initialization tables.
- When you initialize at load time (`--ram_model` option):
 - The linker sets `cinit` to `-1`. This indicates that the initialization tables are not in memory, so no initialization is performed at run time.
 - The `STYP_COPY` flag (`0010h`) is set in the `.cinit` section header. `STYP_COPY` is the special attribute that tells the loader to perform initialization directly and not to load the `.cinit` section into memory. The linker does not allocate space in memory for the `.cinit` section.
- When you autoinitialize at run time (`--rom_model` option), the linker defines `cinit` as the starting address of the `.cinit` section. The C boot routine uses this symbol as the starting point for autoinitialization.

7.11 Linker Example

This example links three object files named demo.obj, ctrl.obj, and tables.obj and creates a program called demo.out. The symbol SETUP is the program entry point.

Assume that target memory has the following program memory configuration:

Address Range	Contents
0x0200 to 0x0A00	RAM
0x1100 to 0xFFFF0	FLASH
0xFFE0 to 0xFFFF	VECTORS

The output sections are constructed in the following manner:

- Executable code, contained in the .text sections of demo.obj, fft.obj, and tables.obj, is linked into program memory ROM.
- Variables, contained in the var_defs section of demo.obj, are linked into data memory in block FAST_MEM_2.
- Tables of coefficients in the .data sections of demo.obj, tables.obj, and fft.obj are linked into FAST_MEM_1. A hole is created with a length of 100 and a fill value of 0x07A1C.
- The xy section from demo.obj, which contains buffers and variables, is linked by default into page 1 of the block STACK, since it is not explicitly linked.
- Executable code, contained in the .text sections of demo.obj, ctrl.obj, and tables.obj, must be linked into FLASH.
- A set of interrupt vectors, contained in the .intvecs section of tables.obj, must be linked at address 0xFFE0.
- A table of coefficients, contained in the .data section of tables.obj, must be linked into FLASH. The remainder of block FLASH must be initialized to the value 0xFF00.
- A set of variables, contained in the .bss section of ctrl.obj, must be linked into RAM and preinitialized to 0x0100.
- Another .bss section in ctrl.obj must be linked into RAM.

[Example 7-25](#) shows the link command file for this example. [Example 7-26](#) shows the map file.

Example 7-25. Linker Command File, demo.cmd

```

/*****
/*          Specify Linker Options          */
/*****
--entry_point=SETUP          /* Define the program entry point */
--output_file=demo.out       /* Name the output file */
--map_file=demo.map          /* Create an output map file */

/*****
/*          Specify Input Files          */
/*****
demo.obj
ctrl.obj
tables.obj

/*****
/*          Specify System Memory Map          */
/*****

MEMORY
{
    SFR(R)          : origin = 0x0000, length = 0x0010
    PERIPHERALS_8BIT : origin = 0x0010, length = 0x00F0

```


Example 7-25. Linker Command File, demo.cmd (continued)

```

PERIPHERALS_16BIT: origin = 0x0100, length = 0x0100
RAM(RW)           : origin = 0x0200, length = 0x0800
INFOA             : origin = 0x1080, length = 0x0080
INFOB            : origin = 0x1000, length = 0x0080
FLASH            : origin = 0x1100, length = 0xEE0
VECTORS(R)       : origin = 0xFFE0, length = 0x001E
RESET            : origin = 0xFFFE, length = 0x0002
}

/*****
/*                               Specify Output Sections                               */
*****/
SECTIONS
{
    .text      : {} > FLASH          /* Link all .text section into flash          */
    .intvecs   : {} > 0xFFE0         /* Link interrupt vectors. at 0xFFE0          */
    .data      :                    /* Link .data sections                        */
    {
        tables.obj(.data)
        . = 0x400;                  /* Create hole at end of block                */
    } = 0xFF00 > FLASH              /* Fill and link into FLASH                    */

    ctrl_vars :                    /* Create new sections for ctrl variables     */
    {
        ctrl.obj(.bss)

        } = 0x0100 > RAM            /* Fill with 0x0100 and link into RAM         */

    .bss : {} > RAM                 /* Link remaining .bss sections into RAM      */
}

/*****
/*                               End of Command File                               */
*****/

```

Invoke the linker by entering the following command:

```
cl430 --run_linker demo.cmd
```

This creates the map file shown in [Example 7-26](#) and an output file called demo.out that can be run on an MSP430.

Example 7-26. Output Map File, demo.map

```

OUTPUT FILE NAME:    <demo.out>
ENTRY POINT SYMBOL:  "SETUP"   address: 000000d4

MEMORY CONFIGURATION

      name      origin      length      attributes      fill
      -----
P_MEM      00000000      000001000      RWIX
D_MEM      00001000      000001000      RWIX
EEPROM      08000000      000000400      RWIX

SECTION ALLOCATION MAP

  output
  section  page      origin      length      attributes/
  -----
.text      0      00000020      00000138
              00000020      000000a0      ctrl.obj (.text)
              000000c0      00000000      tables.obj (.text)
              000000c0      00000098      demo.obj (.text)

.intvecs    0      00000000      00000020
              00000000      00000020      tables.obj (.intvecs)

.data      0      08000000      00000400
              08000000      00000168      tables.obj (.data)
              08000168      00000298      --HOLE-- [fill = ff00ff00]
              08000400      00000000      ctrl.obj (.data)
              08000400      00000000      demo.obj (.data)

ctrl_var    0      00001000      00000500
              00001000      00000500      ctrl.obj (.bss) [fill = 00000100]

.bss      0      00001500      00000100      UNINITIALIZED
              00001500      00000100      demo.obj (.bss)
              00001600      00000000      tables.obj (.bss)

GLOBAL SYMBOLS
address  name
-----
00001500 .bss
08000000 .data
00000020 .text
000000d4 SETUP
00000020 clear
08000400 edata
00001600 end
00000158 etext
000000b8 set
000000c0 x42

address  name
-----
00000020 clear
00000020 .text
000000b8 set
000000c0 x42
000000d4 SETUP
00000158 etext
00001500 .bss
00001600 end
08000000 .data
08000400 edata

[10 symbols]

```

Absolute Lister Description

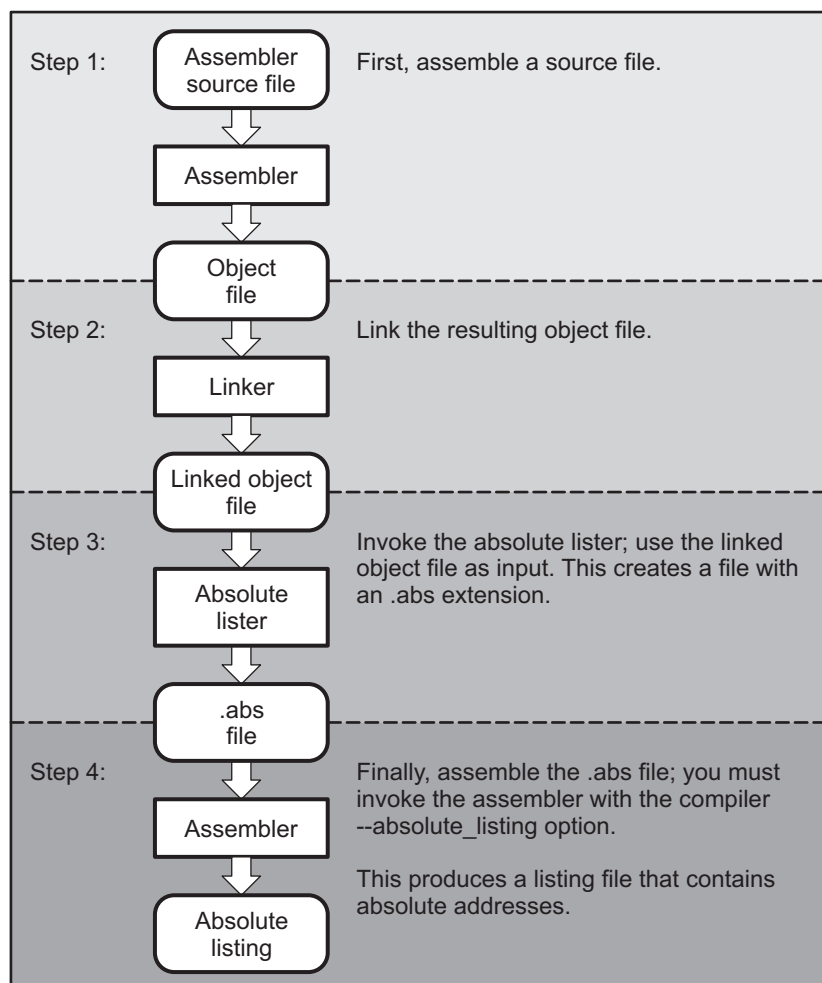
The MSP430 absolute lister is a debugging tool that accepts linked object files as input and creates .abs files as output. These .abs files can be assembled to produce a listing that shows the absolute addresses of object code. Manually, this could be a tedious process requiring many operations; however, the absolute lister utility performs these operations automatically.

Topic	Page
8.1 Producing an Absolute Listing	220
8.2 Invoking the Absolute Lister	221
8.3 Absolute Lister Example	222

8.1 Producing an Absolute Listing

Figure 8-1 illustrates the steps required to produce an absolute listing.

Figure 8-1. Absolute Lister Development Flow



8.2 Invoking the Absolute Lister

The syntax for invoking the absolute lister is:

abs430 [-options] *input file*

abs430	is the command that invokes the absolute lister.
<i>options</i>	identifies the absolute lister options that you want to use. Options are not case sensitive and can appear anywhere on the command line following the command. Precede each option with a hyphen (-). The absolute lister options are as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> -e enables you to change the default naming conventions for filename extensions on assembly files, C source files, and C header files. The valid options are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ea [.]asmext for assembly files (default is .asm) ec [.]cext for C source files (default is .c) eh [.]hext for C header files (default is .h) ep [.]pext for CPP source files (default is cpp) The . in the extensions and the space between the option and the extension are optional. -q (quiet) suppresses the banner and all progress information.
<i>input file</i>	names the linked object file. If you do not supply an extension, the absolute lister assumes that the input file has the default extension .out. If you do not supply an input filename when you invoke the absolute lister, the absolute lister prompts you for one.

The absolute lister produces an output file for each file that was linked. These files are named with the input filenames and an extension of .abs. Header files, however, do not generate a corresponding .abs file.

Assemble these files with the --absolute_listing assembler option as follows to create the absolute listing:

cl430 --absolute_listing filename .abs

The -e options affect both the interpretation of filenames on the command line and the names of the output files. They should always precede any filename on the command line.

The -e options are useful when the linked object file was created from C files compiled with the debugging option (--symdebug:dwarf compiler option). When the debugging option is set, the resulting linked object file contains the name of the source files used to build it. In this case, the absolute lister does not generate a corresponding .abs file for the C header files. Also, the .abs file corresponding to a C source file uses the assembly file generated from the C source file rather than the C source file itself.

For example, suppose the C source file hello.csr is compiled with the debugging option set; the debugging option generates the assembly file hello.s. The hello.csr file includes hello.hsr. Assuming the executable file created is called hello.out, the following command generates the proper .abs file:

```
abs430 -ea s -ec csr -eh hsr hello.out
```

An .abs file is not created for hello.hsr (the header file), and hello.abs includes the assembly file hello.s, not the C source file hello.csr.

8.3 Absolute Lister Example

This example uses three source files. The files `module1.asm` and `module2.asm` both include the file `globals.def`.

`module1.asm`

```
.global dflag
.global array
.global offset
.bss    dflag,1
.bss    array,100
.text
MOV     &array,R11
MOV     &offset,R12
ADD     R12,R11
MOV     @R11,&dflag
```

`module2.asm`

```
.global dflag
.global array
.global offset

.bss    offset,1

.text
MOV     &offset,R14
```

`globals.def`

```
.global dflag
.global array
.global offset
```

The following steps create absolute listings for the files `module1.asm` and `module2.asm`:

Step 1: First, assemble `module1.asm` and `module2.asm`:

```
cl430 module1
cl430 module2
```

This creates two object files called `module1.obj` and `module2.obj`.

Step 2: Next, link `module1.obj` and `module2.obj` using the following linker command file, called `bttest.cmd`:

```
--output_file=bttest.out
--map_file=bttest.map
module1.obj
module2.obj
MEMORY
{
    RAM:    origin=0x0200, length=0x0800
    FLASH:  origin=0x1100, length=0xEEEE0
}
SECTIONS
{
    .bss:   >RAM
    .text:  >FLASH
}
```

Invoke the linker:

```
cl430 --run_linker bttest.cmd
```

This command creates an executable object file called `bttest.out`; use this new file as input for the absolute lister.

Step 3: Now, invoke the absolute lister:

```
abs430 bttest.out
```

This command creates two files called module1.abs and module2.abs:

module1.abs:

```
.nolist
.text      .setsym      000001100h
__text__   .setsym      000001100h
etext      .setsym      000001112h
__etext__  .setsym      000001112h
.bss       .setsym      000000200h
__bss__    .setsym      000000200h
end        .setsym      000000266h
__end__    .setsym      000000266h
array      .setsym      000000201h
dflag      .setsym      000000200h
offset     .setsym      000000265h
.setsect   ".text",000001100h
.setsect   ".bss",000000200h
.setsect   ".debug_line",000000000h
.list
.text
.copy      "module1.asm"
```

module2.abs:

```
.nolist
.text      .setsym      000001100h
__text__   .setsym      000001100h
etext      .setsym      000001112h
__etext__  .setsym      000001112h
.bss       .setsym      000000200h
__bss__    .setsym      000000200h
end        .setsym      000000266h
__end__    .setsym      000000266h
array      .setsym      000000201h
dflag      .setsym      000000200h
offset     .setsym      000000265h
.setsect   ".text",00000110eh
.setsect   ".bss",000000265h
.setsect   ".debug_line",00000003ah
.setsect   ".debug_info",00000014fh
.list
.text
.copy      "module2.asm"
```

These files contain the following information that the assembler needs for Step 4:

- They contain .setsym directives, which equate values to global symbols. Both files contain global equates for the symbol *dflag*. The symbol *dflag* was defined in the file *globals.def*, which was included in *module1.asm* and *module2.asm*.
- They contain .setsect directives, which define the absolute addresses for sections.
- They contain .copy directives, which defines the assembly language source file to include.

The .setsym and .setsect directives are useful only for creating absolute listings, not normal assembly.

Step 4: Finally, assemble the .abs files created by the absolute lister (remember that you must use the `--absolute_listing` option when you invoke the assembler):

```
cl430 --absolute_listing module1.abs
cl430 --absolute_listing module2.abs
```

This command sequence creates two listing files called module1.lst and module2.lst; no object code is produced. These listing files are similar to normal listing files; however, the addresses shown are absolute addresses.

The absolute listing files created are module1.lst (see [Example 8-1](#)) and module2.lst (see [Example 8-2](#)).

Example 8-1. module1.lst

```
module1.abs                                     PAGE      1

    17 001100                                .text
    18                                .copy      "module1.asm"
A    1                                .global dflag
A    2                                .global array
A    3                                .global offset
A    4 000200                                .bss dflag,1
A    5 000201                                .bss array,100
A    6 001100                                .text
A    7 001100 421B                            MOV &array,R11
    001102 0201!
A    8 001104 421C                            MOV &offset,R12
    001106 0265!
A    9 001108 5C0B                            ADD R12,R11
A   10 00110a 4BA2                            MOV @R11,&dflag
    00110c 0200!

No Assembly Errors, No Assembly Warnings
```

Example 8-2. module2.lst

```
module2.abs                                     PAGE      1

    18 00110e                                .text
    19                                .copy      "module2.asm"
A    1                                .global dflag
A    2                                .global array
A    3                                .global offset
A    4 000265                                .bss offset,1
A    5 00110e                                .text
A    6 00110e 421E                            MOV &offset,R14
    001110 0265!

No Assembly Errors, No Assembly Warnings
```


Cross-Reference Lister Description

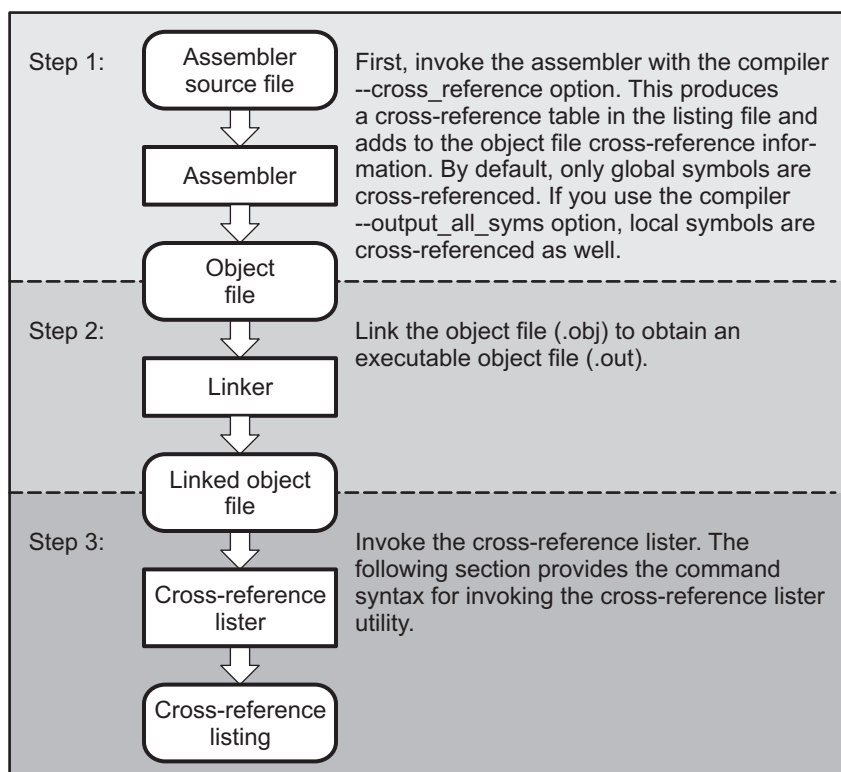
The MSP430 cross-reference lister is a debugging tool. This utility accepts linked object files as input and produces a cross-reference listing as output. This listing shows symbols, their definitions, and their references in the linked source files.

Topic	Page
9.1 Producing a Cross-Reference Listing	226
9.2 Invoking the Cross-Reference Lister	227
9.3 Cross-Reference Listing Example	228

9.1 Producing a Cross-Reference Listing

Figure 9-1 illustrates the steps required to produce a cross-reference listing.

Figure 9-1. The Cross-Reference Lister Development Flow



9.2 Invoking the Cross-Reference Lister

To use the cross-reference utility, the file must be assembled with the correct options and then linked into an executable file. Assemble the assembly language files with the `--cross_reference` option. This option creates a cross-reference listing and adds cross-reference information to the object file. By default, the assembler cross-references only global symbols, but if the assembler is invoked with the `--output_all_syms` option, local symbols are also added. Link the object files to obtain an executable file.

To invoke the cross-reference lister, enter the following:

xref430 [*options*] [*input filename*] [*output filename*]]

xref430	is the command that invokes the cross-reference utility.
<i>options</i>	identifies the cross-reference lister options you want to use. Options are not case sensitive and can appear anywhere on the command line following the command. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> -l (lowercase L) specifies the number of lines per page for the output file. The format of the -l option is -lnum, where num is a decimal constant. For example, -l30 sets the number of lines per page in the output file to 30. The space between the option and the decimal constant is optional. The default is 60 lines per page. -q suppresses the banner and all progress information (run quiet).
<i>input filename</i>	is a linked object file. If you omit the input filename, the utility prompts for a filename.
<i>output filename</i>	is the name of the cross-reference listing file. If you omit the output filename, the default filename is the input filename with an <code>.xrf</code> extension.

9.3 Cross-Reference Listing Example

[Example 9-1](#) is an example of cross-reference listing.

Example 9-1. Cross-Reference Listing

MSP430 XREF Utility

v3.0.0

2003-2008

File: test.out

Tue Mar 18 15:35:55 2008

Page: 1

=====

MSP430 XREF Utility

v3.0.0

2003-2008

File: test.out

Tue Mar 18 15:35:55 2008

Page: 2

=====

Symbol: array

Filename	RTYP	AsmVal	LnkVal	DefLn	RefLn	RefLn	RefLn
module1.asm	EDEF	-0001	0201	5	2	7	

=====

MSP430 XREF Utility

v3.0.0

2003-2008

File: test.out

Tue Mar 18 15:35:55 2008

Page: 3

=====

Symbol: dflag

Filename	RTYP	AsmVal	LnkVal	DefLn	RefLn	RefLn	RefLn
module1.asm	EDEF	-0000	0200	4	1	10	

=====

MSP430 XREF Utility

v3.0.0

2003-2008

File: test.out

Tue Mar 18 15:35:55 2008

Page: 4

=====

Symbol: offset

Filename	RTYP	AsmVal	LnkVal	DefLn	RefLn	RefLn	RefLn
module1.asm	EREF	0000	0265		3	8	
module2.asm	EDEF	-0000	0265	4	3	6	

=====

The terms defined below appear in the preceding cross-reference listing:

Symbol	Name of the symbol listed
Filename	Name of the file where the symbol appears
RTYP	The symbol's reference type in this file. The possible reference types are: STAT The symbol is defined in this file and is not declared as global. EDEF The symbol is defined in this file and is declared as global. EREF The symbol is not defined in this file but is referenced as global. UNDF The symbol is not defined in this file and is not declared as global.
AsmVal	This hexadecimal number is the value assigned to the symbol at assembly time. A value may also be preceded by a character that describes the symbol's attributes. Table 9-1 lists these characters and names.
LnkVal	This hexadecimal number is the value assigned to the symbol after linking.
DefLn	The statement number where the symbol is defined.
RefLn	The line number where the symbol is referenced. If the line number is followed by an asterisk (*), then that reference can modify the contents of the object. A blank in this column indicates that the symbol was never used.

Table 9-1. Symbol Attributes in Cross-Reference Listing

Character	Meaning
'	Symbol defined in a .text section
"	Symbol defined in a .data section
+	Symbol defined in a .sect section
-	Symbol defined in a .bss or .usect section

Object File Utilities

This chapter describes how to invoke the following utilities:

- The **object file display utility** prints the contents of object files, executable files, and/or archive libraries in both text and XML formats.
- The **disassembler** accepts object files and executable files as input and produces an assembly listing as output. This listing shows assembly instructions, their opcodes, and the section program counter values.
- The **name utility** prints a list of names defined and referenced in an object file, executable files, and/or archive libraries.
- The **strip utility** removes symbol table and debugging information from object and executable files.

Topic	Page
10.1 Invoking the Object File Display Utility	231
10.2 Invoking the Disassembler	232
10.3 Invoking the Name Utility	233
10.4 Invoking the Strip Utility	233

10.1 Invoking the Object File Display Utility

The object file display utility, *ofd430*, prints the contents of object files (.obj), executable files (.out), and/or archive libraries (.lib) in both text and XML formats. Hidden symbols are listed as *no name*, while localized symbols are listed like any other local symbol.

To invoke the object file display utility, enter the following:

ofd430 [*options*] *input filename* [*input filename*]

ofd430	is the command that invokes the object file display utility.
<i>input filename</i>	names the object file (.obj), executable file (.out), or archive library (.lib) source file. The filename must contain an extension.
<i>options</i>	identify the object file display utility options that you want to use. Options are not case sensitive and can appear anywhere on the command line following the command. Precede each option with a hyphen.
--dwarf_display=attributes	controls the DWARF display filter settings by specifying a comma-delimited list of <i>attributes</i> . When prefixed with no, an attribute is disabled instead of enabled. Examples: --dwarf_display=nodabbrev,nodline --dwarf_display=all,nodabbrev --dwarf_display=none,dinfo,types The ordering of attributes is important (see --obj_display). The list of available display attributes can be obtained by invoking ofd430 --dwarf_display=help.
-g	appends DWARF debug information to program output.
-h	displays help
-o=filename	sends program output to <i>filename</i> rather than to the screen.
--obj_display attributes	controls the object file display filter settings by specifying a comma-delimited list of <i>attributes</i> . When prefixed with no, an attribute is disabled instead of enabled. Examples: --obj_display=rawdata,nostrings --obj_display=all,norawdata --obj_display=none,header The ordering of attributes is important. For instance, in "--obj_display=none,header", ofd430 disables all output, then re-enables file header information. If the attributes are specified in the reverse order, (header,none), the file header is enabled, the all output is disabled, including the file header. Thus, nothing is printed to the screen for the given files. The list of available display attributes can be obtained by invoking ofd430 --obj_display=help.
-v	prints verbose text output.
-x	displays output in XML format.
--xml_indent=num	sets the number of spaces to indent nested XML tags.

If an archive file is given as input to the object file display utility, each object file member of the archive is processed as if it was passed on the command line. The object file members are processed in the order in which they appear in the archive file.

If the object file display utility is invoked without any options, it displays information about the contents of the input files on the console screen.

Object File Display Format

NOTE: The object file display utility produces data in a text format by default. This data is not intended to be used as input to programs for further processing of the information. XML format should be used for mechanical processing.

10.2 Invoking the Disassembler

The disassembler, *dis430*, examines the output of the assembler or linker. This utility accepts an object file or executable file as input and writes the disassembled object code to standard output or a specified file.

To invoke the disassembler, enter the following:

dis430 [*options*] *input filename*[.] [*output filename*]

dis430	is the command that invokes the disassembler.
<i>options</i>	identifies the name utility options you want to use. Options are not case sensitive and can appear anywhere on the command line following the invocation. Precede each option with a hyphen (-). The name utility options are as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> -a disables the display of the branch destination address along with label names within instructions. -b displays data as bytes instead of words. -c dumps the object file information. -d disables display of data sections. -h shows the current help screen. -i disassembles .data sections as instructions. -I disassembles .text sections as data. -q (quiet mode) suppresses the banner and all progress information. -qq (super quiet mode) suppresses all headers. -r uses raw register IDs (R10, R11, etc.). -R shows run-time address if different from load-time address. -s suppresses printing of opcode and section program counter in the listing. When you use this option along with -qq, the disassembly listing looks like the original assembly source file. -t suppresses the display of text sections in the listing.
<i>input filename</i> [.ext]	is the name of the input file. If the optional extension is not specified, the file is searched for in this order: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. <i>infile</i> 2. <i>infile.out</i>, an executable file 3. <i>infile.obj</i>, an object file
<i>output filename</i>	is the name of the optional output file to which the disassembly will be written. If an output filename is not specified, the disassembly is written to standard output.

10.3 Invoking the Name Utility

The name utility, *nm430*, prints the list of names defined and referenced in an object file, executable file, or archive library. It also prints the symbol value and an indication of the kind of symbol. Hidden symbols are listed as " ".

To invoke the name utility, enter the following:

nm430 [-options] [input filenames]

nm430	is the command that invokes the name utility.
<i>input filename</i>	is an object file (.obj), executable file (.out), or archive library (.lib).
<i>options</i>	identifies the name utility options you want to use. Options are not case sensitive and can appear anywhere on the command line following the invocation. Precede each option with a hyphen (-). The name utility options are as follows:
-a	prints all symbols.
-c	also prints C_NULL symbols for a COFF object module.
-d	also prints debug symbols for a COFF object module.
-f	prepends file name to each symbol.
-g	prints only global symbols.
-h	shows the current help screen.
-l	produces a detailed listing of the symbol information.
-n	sorts symbols numerically rather than alphabetically.
-o file	outputs to the given file.
-p	causes the name utility to not sort any symbols.
-q	(quiet mode) suppresses the banner and all progress information.
-r	sorts symbols in reverse order.
-t	also prints tag information symbols for a COFF object module.
-u	only prints undefined symbols.

10.4 Invoking the Strip Utility

The strip utility, *strip430*, removes symbol table and debugging information from object and executable files.

To invoke the strip utility, enter the following:

strip430 [-p] input filename [input filename]

strip430	is the command that invokes the strip utility.
<i>input filename</i>	is an object file (.obj) or an executable file (.out).
<i>options</i>	identifies the strip utility options you want to use. Options are not case sensitive and can appear anywhere on the command line following the invocation. Precede each option with a hyphen (-). The strip utility option is as follows:
-o filename	writes the stripped output to filename.
-p	removes all information not required for execution. This option causes more information to be removed than the default behavior, but the object file is left in a state that cannot be linked. This option should be used only with executable (.out) files.

When the strip utility is invoked without the -o option, the input object files are replaced with the stripped version.

Hex Conversion Utility Description

The MSP430 assembler and linker create object files which are in binary formats that encourage modular programming and provide powerful and flexible methods for managing code segments and target system memory.

Most EPROM programmers do not accept object files as input. The hex conversion utility converts an object file into one of several standard ASCII hexadecimal formats, suitable for loading into an EPROM programmer. The utility is also useful in other applications requiring hexadecimal conversion of an object file (for example, when using debuggers and loaders).

The hex conversion utility can produce these output file formats:

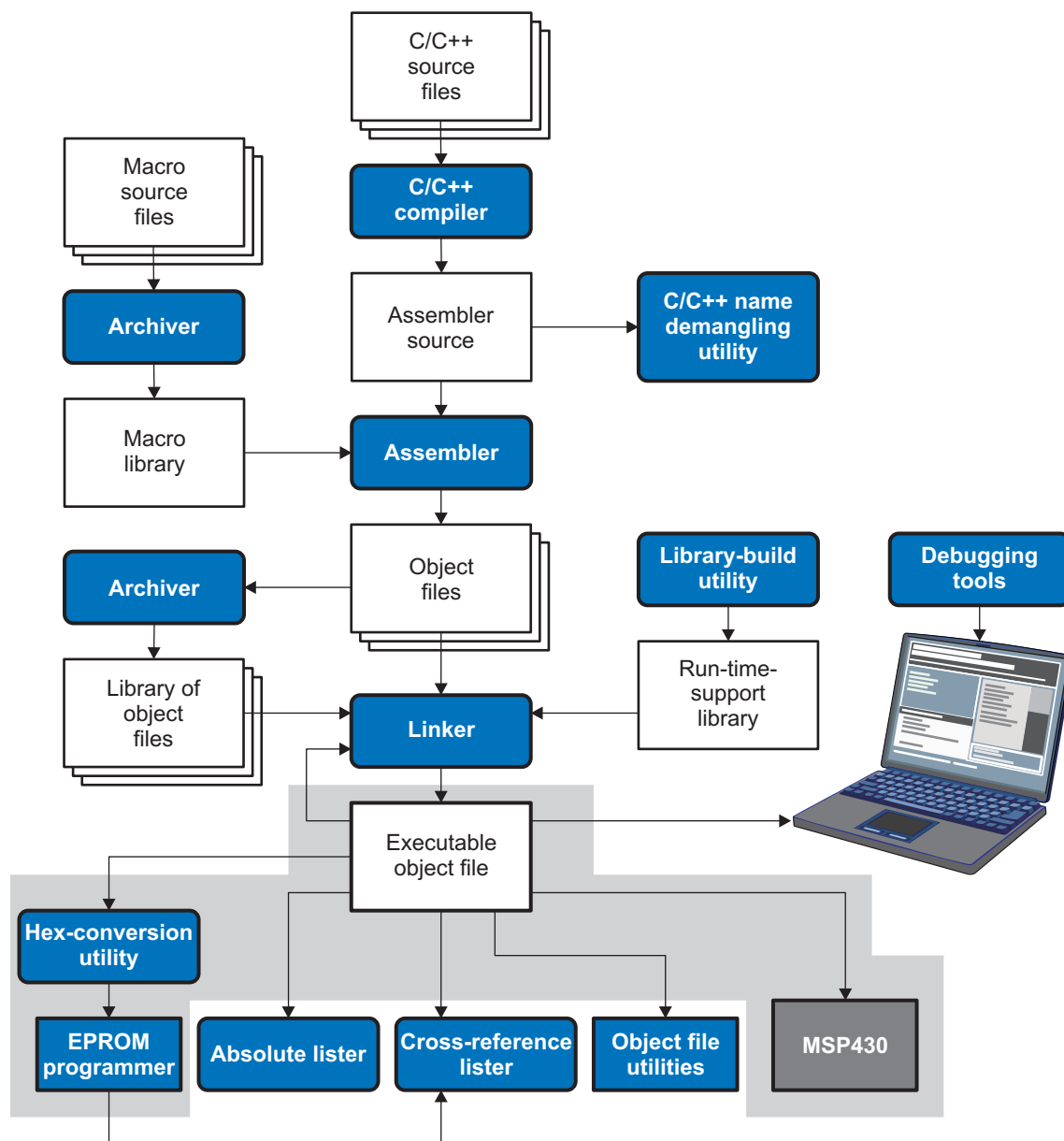
- ASCII-Hex, supporting 16-bit addresses
- Extended Tektronix (Tektronix)
- Intel MCS-86 (Intel)
- Motorola Exorciser (Motorola-S), supporting 16-bit addresses
- Texas Instruments SDSMAC (TI-Tagged), supporting 16-bit addresses
- Texas Instruments TI-TXT format, supporting 16-bit addresses

Topic	Page
11.1 The Hex Conversion Utility's Role in the Software Development Flow	235
11.2 Invoking the Hex Conversion Utility	236
11.3 Understanding Memory Widths	239
11.4 The ROMS Directive	243
11.5 The SECTIONS Directive	247
11.6 The Load Image Format (--load_image Option)	248
11.7 Excluding a Specified Section	249
11.8 Assigning Output Filenames	249
11.9 Image Mode and the --fill Option	250
11.10 Controlling the ROM Device Address	251
11.11 Control Hex Conversion Utility Diagnostics	252
11.12 Description of the Object Formats	253

11.1 The Hex Conversion Utility's Role in the Software Development Flow

Figure 11-1 highlights the role of the hex conversion utility in the software development process.

Figure 11-1. The Hex Conversion Utility in the MSP430 Software Development Flow



11.2 Invoking the Hex Conversion Utility

There are two basic methods for invoking the hex conversion utility:

- **Specify the options and filenames on the command line.** The following example converts the file `firmware.out` into TI-Tagged format, producing two output files, `firm.lsb` and `firm.msb`.

```
hex430 -t firmware -o firm.lsb -o firm.msb
```

- **Specify the options and filenames in a command file.** You can create a file that stores command line options and filenames for invoking the hex conversion utility. The following example invokes the utility using a command file called `hexutil.cmd`:

```
hex430 hexutil.cmd
```

In addition to regular command line information, you can use the hex conversion utility ROMS and SECTIONS directives in a command file.

11.2.1 Invoking the Hex Conversion Utility From the Command Line

To invoke the hex conversion utility, enter:

```
hex430 [options] filename
```

hex430 is the command that invokes the hex conversion utility.

options supplies additional information that controls the hex conversion process. You can use options on the command line or in a command file. [Table 11-1](#) lists the basic options.

- All options are preceded by a hyphen and are not case sensitive.
- Several options have an additional parameter that must be separated from the option by at least one space.
- Options with multi-character names must be spelled exactly as shown in this document; no abbreviations are allowed.
- Options are not affected by the order in which they are used. The exception to this rule is the `--quiet` option, which must be used before any other options.

filename names an object file or a command file (for more information, see [Section 11.2.2](#)).

Table 11-1. Basic Hex Conversion Utility Options

Option	Alias	Description	See
General Options			
<code>--byte</code>	<code>-byte</code>	Number output locations by bytes rather than by target addressing	--
<code>--exclude={fname(sname) sname}</code>	<code>-exclude</code>	If the filename (<i>fname</i>) is omitted, all sections matching <i>sname</i> will be excluded.	Section 11.7
<code>--fill=value</code>	<code>-fill</code>	Fill holes with <i>value</i>	Section 11.9.2
<code>--help</code>	<code>-options, -h</code>	Display the syntax for invoking the utility and list available options. If the option is followed by another option or phrase, detailed information about that option or phrase is displayed.	Section 11.2.2
<code>--image</code>	<code>-image</code>	Select image mode	Section 11.9.1
<code>--linkerfill</code>	<code>-linkerfill</code>	Include linker fill sections in images	--
<code>--map=filename</code>	<code>-map</code>	Generate a map file	Section 11.4.2
<code>--memwidth=value</code>	<code>-memwidth</code>	Define the system memory word width (default 16 bits)	Section 11.3.2
<code>--olength=value</code>	<code>-olength</code>	Specify maximum number of data items per line of output	--
<code>--order={LS MS}</code>	<code>-order</code>	Specify data ordering (endianness)	Section 11.3.4
<code>--outfile=filename</code>	<code>-o</code>	Specify an output filename	Section 11.8
<code>--quiet</code>	<code>-q</code>	Run quietly (when used, it must appear <i>before</i> other options)	Section 11.2.2
<code>--romwidth=value</code>	<code>-romwidth</code>	Specify the ROM device width (default depends on format used)	Section 11.3.3

Table 11-1. Basic Hex Conversion Utility Options (continued)

Option	Alias	Description	See
--zero	-zero, -z	Reset the address origin to 0 in image mode	Section 11.9.3
Diagnostic Options			
--diag_error= <i>id</i>		Categorizes the diagnostic identified by <i>id</i> as an error	Section 11.11
--diag_remark= <i>id</i>		Categorizes the diagnostic identified by <i>id</i> as a remark	Section 11.11
--diag_suppress= <i>id</i>		Suppresses the diagnostic identified by <i>id</i>	Section 11.11
--diag_warning= <i>id</i>		Categorizes the diagnostic identified by <i>id</i> as a warning	Section 11.11
--display_error_number		Displays a diagnostic's identifiers along with its text	Section 11.11
--issue_remarks		Issues remarks (nonserious warnings)	Section 11.11
--no_warnings		Suppresses warning diagnostics (errors are still issued)	Section 11.11
--set_error_limit= <i>count</i>		Sets the error limit to <i>count</i> . The linker abandons linking after this number of errors. (The default is 100.)	Section 11.11
Output Options			
--ascii	-a	Select ASCII-Hex	Section 11.12.1
--intel	-i	Select Intel	Section 11.12.2
--motorola=1	-m1	Select Motorola-S1	Section 11.12.3
--motorola=2	-m2	Select Motorola-S2	Section 11.12.3
--motorola=3	-m3	Select Motorola-S3 (default -m option)	Section 11.12.3
--tektronix	-x	Select Tektronix (default format when no output option is specified)	Section 11.12.4
--ti_tagged	-t	Select TI-Tagged	Section 11.12.5
--ti_txt		Select TI-Txt	Section 11.12.6
Load Image Options			
--load_image		Select load image	Section 11.6
--section_name_prefix= <i>string</i>		Specify the section name prefix for load image object files	Section 11.6

11.2.2 Invoking the Hex Conversion Utility With a Command File

A command file is useful if you plan to invoke the utility more than once with the same input files and options. It is also useful if you want to use the ROMS and SECTIONS hex conversion utility directives to customize the conversion process.

Command files are ASCII files that contain one or more of the following:

- **Options and filenames.** These are specified in a command file in exactly the same manner as on the command line.
- **ROMS directive.** The ROMS directive defines the physical memory configuration of your system as a list of address-range parameters. (See [Section 11.4.](#))
- **SECTIONS directive.** The hex conversion utility SECTIONS directive specifies which sections from the object file are selected. (See [Section 11.5.](#))
- **Comments.** You can add comments to your command file by using the `/*` and `*/` delimiters. For example:

```
/* This is a comment. */
```

To invoke the utility and use the options you defined in a command file, enter:

hex430 *command_filename*

You can also specify other options and files on the command line. For example, you could invoke the utility by using both a command file and command line options:

```
hex430 firmware.cmd --map=firmware.mxp
```

The order in which these options and filenames appear is not important. The utility reads all input from the command line and all information from the command file before starting the conversion process. However, if you are using the `-q` option, *it must appear as the first option on the command line or in a command file.*

The `--help` option displays the syntax for invoking the compiler and lists available options. If the `--help` option is followed by another option or phrase, detailed information about the option or phrase is displayed. For example, to see information about options associated with generating a boot table use `--help boot`.

The `--quiet` option suppresses the hex conversion utility's normal banner and progress information.

- Assume that a command file named `firmware.cmd` contains these lines:

```
firmware.out      /* input file */
--ti-tagged       /* TI-Tagged */
--outfile=firm.lsb /* output file */
--outfile=firm.msb /* output file */
```

You can invoke the hex conversion utility by entering:

```
hex430 firmware.cmd
```

- This example shows how to convert a file called `appl.out` into eight hex files in Intel format. Each output file is one byte wide and 4K bytes long.

```
appl.out          /* input file */
--intel           /* Intel format */
--map=appl.mxp     /* map file */
```

```
ROMS
{
    ROW1: origin=0x00000000 len=0x4000 romwidth=8
        files={ appl.u0 appl.u1 appl.u2 appl.u3 }
    ROW2: origin=0x00004000 len=0x4000 romwidth=8
        files={ appl.u4 appl.u5 appl.u6 appl.u7 }
}
```

```
SECTIONS
{
    .text, .data, .cinit, .sect1, .vectors, .const:
}
```

11.3 Understanding Memory Widths

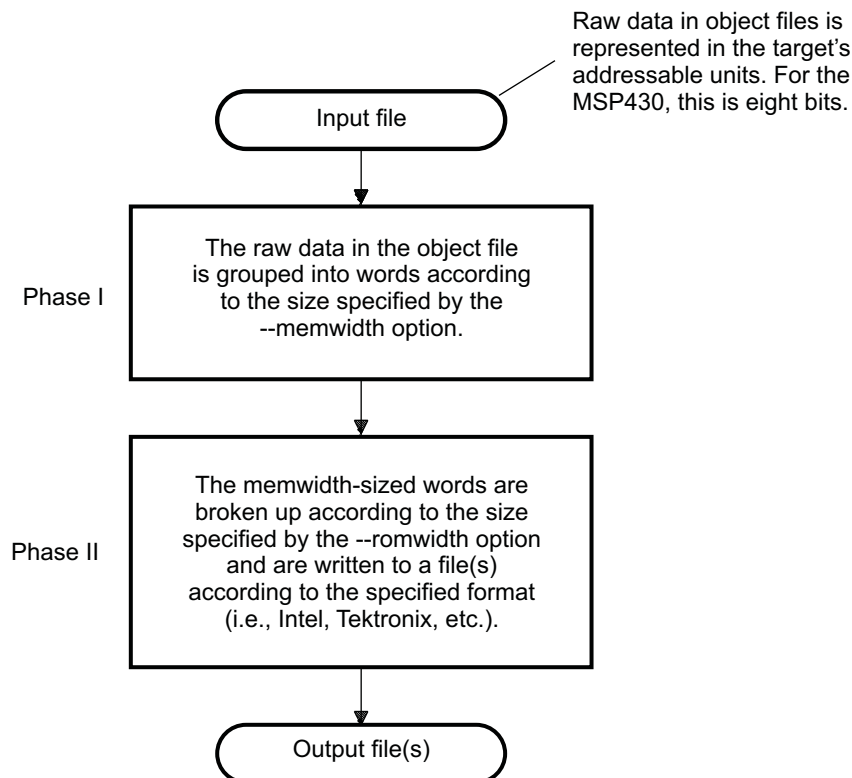
The hex conversion utility makes your memory architecture more flexible by allowing you to specify memory and ROM widths. To use the hex conversion utility, you must understand how the utility treats word widths. Three widths are important in the conversion process:

- Target width
- Memory width
- ROM width

The terms target word, memory word, and ROM word refer to a word of such a width.

Figure 11-2 illustrates the separate and distinct phases of the hex conversion utility's process flow.

Figure 11-2. Hex Conversion Utility Process Flow



11.3.1 Target Width

Target width is the unit size (in bits) of the target processor's word. The unit size corresponds to the data bus size on the target processor. The width is fixed for each target and cannot be changed. The MSP430 targets have a width of 16 bits.

11.3.2 Specifying the Memory Width

Memory width is the physical width (in bits) of the memory system. Usually, the memory system is physically the same width as the target processor width: a 16-bit processor has a 16-bit memory architecture. However, some applications require target words to be broken into multiple, consecutive, and narrower memory words.

By default, the hex conversion utility sets memory width to the target width (in this case, 16 bits).

You can change the memory width (except for TI-TXT format) by:

- Using the **--memwidth** option. This changes the memory width value for the entire file.
- Setting the **memwidth** parameter of the ROMS directive. This changes the memory width value for the address range specified in the ROMS directive and overrides the **--memwidth** option for that range. See [Section 11.4](#).

For both methods, use a value that is a power of 2 greater than or equal to 8.

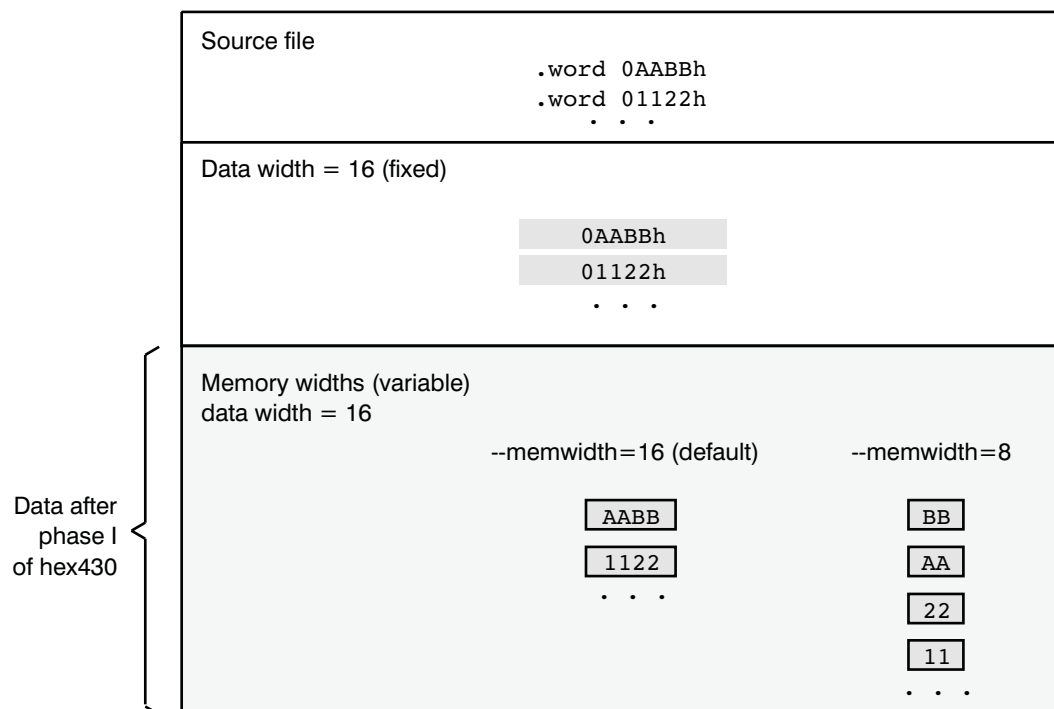
You should change the memory width default value of 16 only when you need to break single target words into consecutive, narrower memory words.

TI-TXT Format is 8 Bits Wide

NOTE: You cannot change the memory width of the TI-TXT format. The TI-TXT hex format supports an 8-bit memory width only.

[Figure 11-3](#) demonstrates how the memory width is related to object file data.

Figure 11-3. Object File Data and Memory Widths



11.3.3 Partitioning Data Into Output Files

ROM width specifies the physical width (in bits) of each ROM device and corresponding output file (usually one byte or eight bits). The ROM width determines how the hex conversion utility partitions the data into output files. After the object file data is mapped to the memory words, the memory words are broken into one or more output files. The number of output files is determined by the following formulas:

- If memory width \geq ROM width:
number of files = memory width \div ROM width
- If memory width $<$ ROM width:
number of files = 1

For example, for a memory width of 16, you could specify a ROM width value of 16 and get a single output file containing 16-bit words. Or you can use a ROM width value of 8 to get two files, each containing 8 bits of each word.

The default ROM width that the hex conversion utility uses depends on the output format:

- All hex formats except TI-Tagged are configured as lists of 8-bit bytes; the default ROM width for these formats is 8 bits.
- TI-Tagged is a 16-bit format; the default ROM width for TI-Tagged is 16 bits.

The TI-Tagged Format is 16 Bits Wide

NOTE: You cannot change the ROM width of the TI-Tagged format. The TI-Tagged format supports a 16-bit ROM width only.

TI-TXT Format is 8 Bits Wide

NOTE: You cannot change the ROM width of the TI-TXT format. The TI-TXT hex format supports only an 8-bit ROM width.

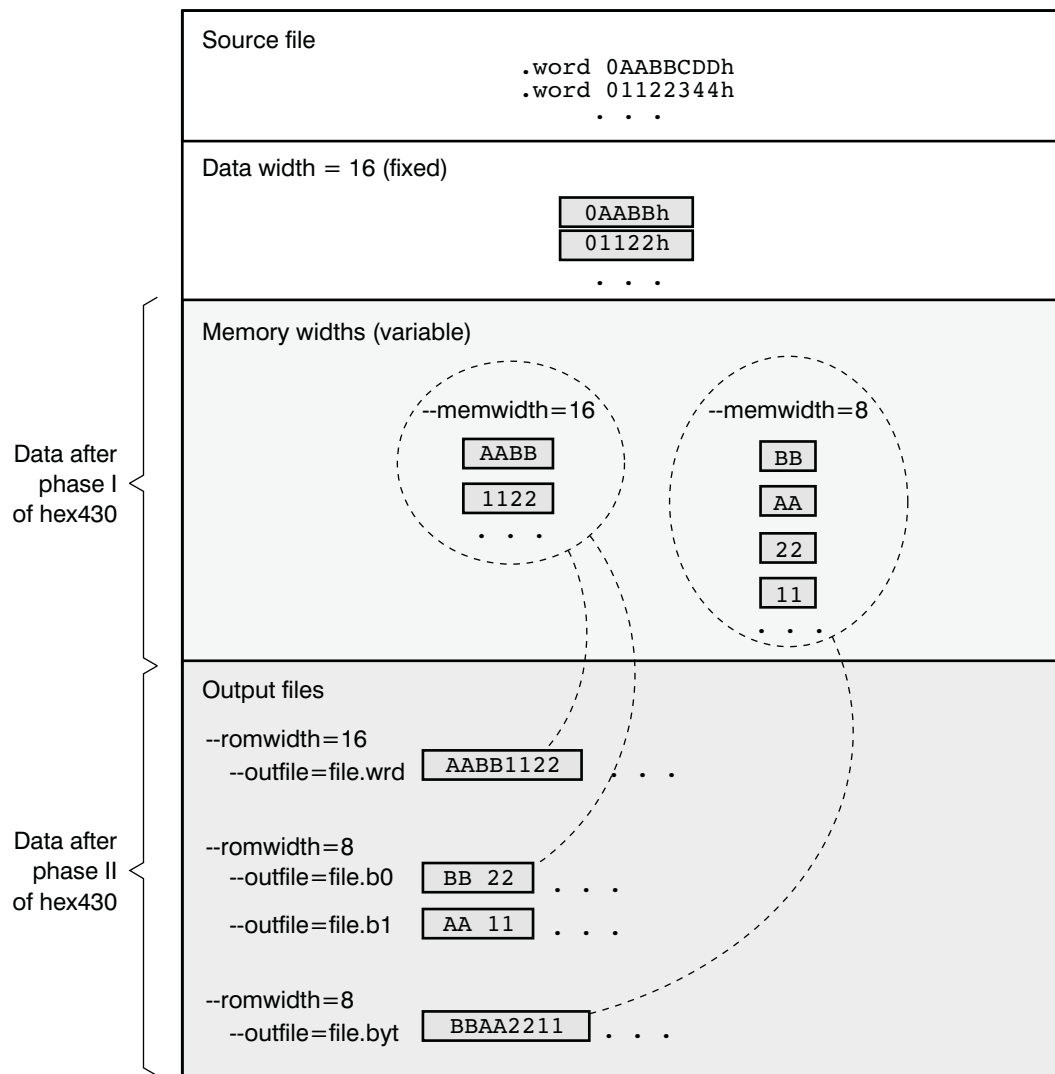
You can change ROM width (except for TI-Tagged and TI-TXT formats) by:

- Using the **--romwidth** option. This option changes the ROM width value for the entire object file.
- Setting the **romwidth** parameter of the ROMS directive. This parameter changes the ROM width value for a specific ROM address range and overrides the **--romwidth** option for that range. See [Section 11.4](#).

For both methods, use a value that is a power of 2 greater than or equal to 8.

If you select a ROM width that is wider than the natural size of the output format (16 bits for TI-Tagged or 8 bits for all others), the utility simply writes multibyte fields into the file.

[Figure 11-4](#) illustrates how the object file data, memory, and ROM widths are related to one another.

Figure 11-4. Data, Memory, and ROM Widths


11.3.4 Specifying Word Order for Output Words

There are two ways to split a wide word into consecutive memory locations in the same hex conversion utility output file:

- **--order=MS** specifies **big-endian** ordering, in which the most significant part of the wide word occupies the first of the consecutive locations.
- **--order=LS** specifies **little-endian** ordering, in which the least significant part of the wide word occupies the first of the consecutive locations.

By default, the utility uses big-endian format. Unless your boot loader program expects little-endian format, avoid using `--order=LS`.

11.4 The ROMS Directive

The ROMS directive specifies the physical memory configuration of your system as a list of address-range parameters.

Each address range produces one set of files containing the hex conversion utility output data that corresponds to that address range. Each file can be used to program one single ROM device.

The ROMS directive is similar to the MEMORY directive of the MSP430 linker: both define the memory map of the target address space. Each line entry in the ROMS directive defines a specific address range. The general syntax is:

```
ROMS
{
    romname :    [origin=value,] [length=value,] [romwidth=value,]
                  [memwidth=value,] [fill=value]
                  [files={ filename1, filename2, ...}]
    romname :    [origin=value,] [length=value,] [romwidth=value,]
                  [memwidth=value,] [fill=value]
                  [files={ filename1, filename2, ...}]
    ...
}
```

ROMS	begins the directive definition.
romname	identifies a memory range. The name of the memory range can be one to eight characters in length. The name has no significance to the program; it simply identifies the range, except when the output is for a load image in which case it denotes the section name. (Duplicate memory range names are allowed.)
origin	specifies the starting address of a memory range. It can be entered as origin, org, or o. The associated value must be a decimal, octal, or hexadecimal constant. If you omit the origin value, the origin defaults to 0. The following table summarizes the notation you can use to specify a decimal, octal, or hexadecimal constant:

Constant	Notation	Example
Hexadecimal	0x prefix or h suffix	0x77 or 077h
Octal	0 prefix	077
Decimal	No prefix or suffix	77

length	specifies the length of a memory range as the physical length of the ROM device. It can be entered as length, len, or l. The value must be a decimal, octal, or hexadecimal constant. If you omit the length value, it defaults to the length of the entire address space.
romwidth	specifies the physical ROM width of the range in bits (see Section 11.3.3). Any value you specify here overrides the --romwidth option. The value must be a decimal, octal, or hexadecimal constant that is a power of 2 greater than or equal to 8.
memwidth	specifies the memory width of the range in bits (see Section 11.3.2). Any value you specify here overrides the --memwidth option. The value must be a decimal, octal, or hexadecimal constant that is a power of 2 greater than or equal to 8. <i>When using the memwidth parameter, you must also specify the paddr parameter for each section in the SECTIONS directive. (See Section 11.5.)</i>

fill	specifies a fill value to use for the range. In image mode, the hex conversion utility uses this value to fill any holes between sections in a range. A hole is an area between the input sections that comprises an output section that contains no actual code or data. The fill value must be a decimal, octal, or hexadecimal constant with a width equal to the target width. Any value you specify here overrides the --fill option. When using fill, you must also use the --image command line option. (See Section 11.9.2.)
files	identifies the names of the output files that correspond to this range. Enclose the list of names in curly braces and order them from <i>least significant</i> to <i>most significant</i> output file, where the bits of the memory word are numbered from right to left. The number of file names must equal the number of output files that the range generates. To calculate the number of output files, see Section 11.3.3. The utility warns you if you list too many or too few filenames.

Unless you are using the --image option, all of the parameters that define a range are optional; the commas and equal signs are also optional. A range with no origin or length defines the entire address space. In image mode, an origin and length are required for all ranges.

Ranges must not overlap and must be listed in order of ascending address.

11.4.1 When to Use the ROMS Directive

If you do not use a ROMS directive, the utility defines a single default range that includes the entire address space. This is equivalent to a ROMS directive with a single range without origin or length.

Use the ROMS directive when you want to:

- **Program large amounts of data into fixed-size ROMs.** When you specify memory ranges corresponding to the length of your ROMs, the utility automatically breaks the output into blocks that fit into the ROMs.
- **Restrict output to certain segments.** You can also use the ROMS directive to restrict the conversion to a certain segment or segments of the target address space. The utility does not convert the data that falls outside of the ranges defined by the ROMS directive. Sections can span range boundaries; the utility splits them at the boundary into multiple ranges. If a section falls completely outside any of the ranges you define, the utility does not convert that section and issues no messages or warnings. Thus, you can exclude sections without listing them by name with the SECTIONS directive. However, if a section falls partially in a range and partially in unconfigured memory, the utility issues a warning and converts only the part within the range.
- **Use image mode.** When you use the --image option, you must use a ROMS directive. Each range is filled completely so that each output file in a range contains data for the whole range. Holes before, between, or after sections are filled with the fill value from the ROMS directive, with the value specified with the --fill option, or with the default value of 0.

11.4.2 An Example of the ROMS Directive

The ROMS directive in [Example 11-1](#) shows how 16K bytes of 16-bit memory could be partitioned for two 8K-byte 8-bit EPROMs. [Figure 11-5](#) illustrates the input and output files.

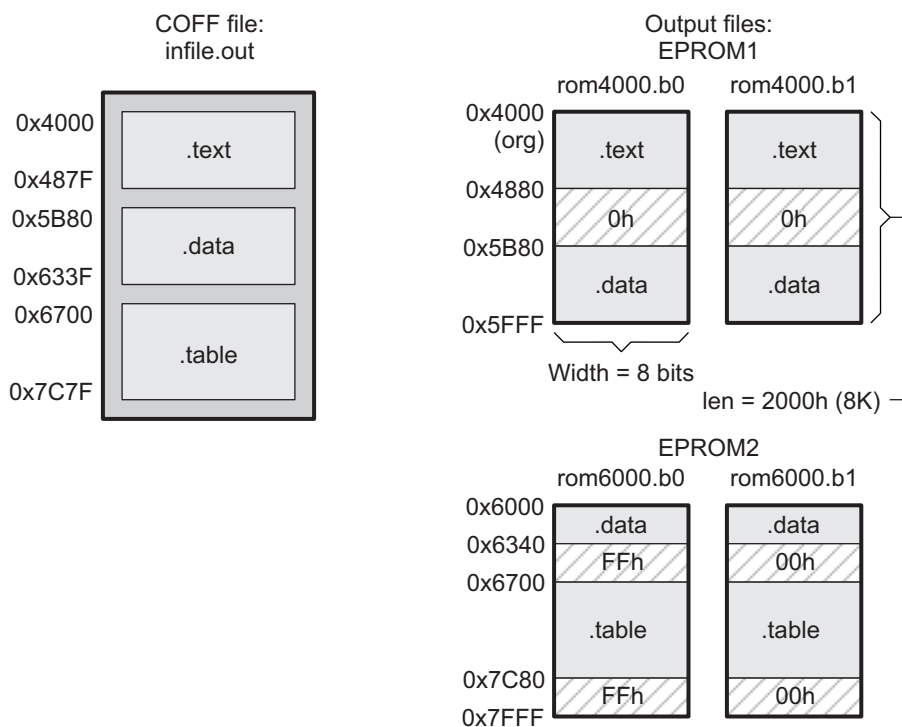
Example 11-1. A ROMS Directive Example

```
infile.out
--image
--memwidth 16

ROMS
{
    EPROM1: org = 0x4000, len = 0x2000, romwidth = 8
           files = { rom4000.b0, rom4000.b1}

    EPROM2: org = 0x6000, len = 0x2000, romwidth = 8,
           fill = 0xFF00,
           files = { rom6000.b0, rom6000.b1}
}
```

Figure 11-5. The infile.out File Partitioned Into Four Output Files



The map file (specified with the `--map` option) is advantageous when you use the ROMS directive with multiple ranges. The map file shows each range, its parameters, names of associated output files, and a list of contents (section names and fill values) broken down by address. [Example 11-2](#) is a segment of the map file resulting from the example in [Example 11-1](#).

Example 11-2. Map File Output From [Example 11-1](#) Showing Memory Ranges

```
-----
4000..5fff Page=0 Width=8 "EPROM1"
-----
OUTPUT FILES:  rom4000.b0  [b0..b7]
                rom4000.b1  [b8..b15]
CONTENTS: 4000..487f .text
          4880..5b7f FILL = 0000
          5b80..5fff .data
-----
6000..7fff Page=0 Width=8 "EPROM2"
-----
OUTPUT FILES:  rom6000.b0  [b0..b7]
                rom6000.b1  [b8..b15]
CONTENTS: 6000..633f .data
          6340..66ff FILL = ff00
          6700..7c7f .table
          7c80..7fff FILL = ff00
-----
```

EPROM1 defines the address range from 0x4000 through 0x5FFF with the following sections:

This section ...	Has this range ...
.text	0x4000 through 0x487F
.data	0x5B80 through 0x5FFF

The rest of the range is filled with 0h (the default fill value), converted into two output files:

- rom4000.b0 contains bits 0 through 7
- rom4000.b1 contains bits 8 through 15

EPROM2 defines the address range from 0x6000 through 0x7FFF with the following sections:

This section ...	Has this range ...
.data	0x6000 through 0x633F
.table	0x6700 through 0x7C7F

The rest of the range is filled with 0xFF00 (from the specified fill value). The data from this range is converted into two output files:

- rom6000.b0 contains bits 0 through 7
- rom6000.b1 contains bits 8 through 15

11.5 The SECTIONS Directive

You can convert specific sections of the object file by name with the hex conversion utility SECTIONS directive. You can also specify those sections that you want to locate in ROM at a different address than the *load* address specified in the linker command file. If you:

- Use a SECTIONS directive, the utility converts only the sections that you list in the directive and ignores all other sections in the object file.
- Do not use a SECTIONS directive, the utility converts all initialized sections that fall within the configured memory.

Uninitialized sections are *never* converted, whether or not you specify them in a SECTIONS directive.

Sections Generated by the C/C++ Compiler

NOTE: The MSP430 C/C++ compiler automatically generates these sections:

- **Initialized sections:** .text, .const, and .cinit
 - **Uninitialized sections:** .bss, .stack, and .sysmem
-

Use the SECTIONS directive in a command file. (See [Section 11.2.2.](#)) The general syntax for the SECTIONS directive is:

SECTIONS

```
{
    oname(sname)[:][paddr=value][,]
    oname(sname)[:][paddr= value][,]
    ...
}
```

SECTIONS	begins the directive definition.
<i>oname</i>	identifies the object filename the section is located within. The filename is optional when only a single input file is given, but required otherwise.
<i>sname</i>	identifies a section in the input file. If you specify a section that does not exist, the utility issues a warning and ignores the name.
paddr=value	specifies the physical ROM address at which this section should be located. This value overrides the section load address given by the linker. This value must be a decimal, octal, or hexadecimal constant. <i>If your file contains multiple sections, and if one section uses a paddr parameter, then all sections must use a paddr parameter.</i>

For more similarity with the linker's SECTIONS directive, you can use colons after the section names. For example, the data in your application (section partB) must be loaded on the EPROM at address 0x0. Use the paddr option with the SECTIONS directive to specify this:

```
SECTIONS
{
    partB: paddr = 0x0
}
```

The commas separating section names are optional. For example, the COFF file contains six initialized sections: .text, .data, .const, .vectors, .coeff, and .tables. Suppose you want only .text and .data to be converted. Use a SECTIONS directive to specify this:

```
SECTIONS { .text, .data }
```

11.6 The Load Image Format (--load_image Option)

A load image is an object file which contains the load addresses and initialized sections of one or more executable files. The load image object file can be used for ROM masking or can be relinked in a subsequent link step.

11.6.1 Load Image Section Formation

The load image sections are formed by collecting the initialized sections from the input executables. There are two ways the load image sections are formed:

- **Using the ROMS Directive.** Each memory range that is given in the ROMS directive denotes a load image section. The romname is the section name. The origin and length parameters are required. The memwidth, romwidth, and files parameters are invalid and are ignored.

When using the ROMS directive and the load_image option, the --image option is required.

- **Default Load Image Section Formation.** If no ROMS directive is given, the load image sections are formed by combining contiguous initialized sections in the input executables. Sections with gaps smaller than the target word size are considered contiguous.

The default section names are image_1, image_2, ... If another prefix is desired, the --section_name_prefix=prefix option can be used.

11.6.2 Load Image Characteristics

All load image sections are initialized data sections. In the absence of a ROMS directive, the load/run address of the load image section is the load address of the first input section in the load image section. If the SECTIONS directive was used and a different load address was given using the paddr parameter, this address will be used.

The load image format always creates a single load image object file. The format of the load image object file is determined based on the input files. The file is not marked executable and does not contain an entry point. The default load image object file name is ti_load_image.obj. This can be changed using the --outfile option. Only one --outfile option is valid when creating a load image, all other occurrences are ignored.

Concerning Load Image Format

NOTE: These options are invalid when creating a load image:

- --memwidth
- --romwidth
- --order
- --zero
- --byte

If a boot table is being created, either using the SECTIONS directive or the --boot option, the ROMS directive must be used.

11.7 Excluding a Specified Section

The `--exclude section_name` option can be used to inform the hex utility to ignore the specified section. If a `SECTIONS` directive is used, it overrides the `--exclude` option.

For example, if a `SECTIONS` directive containing the section name `mysect` is used and an `--exclude mysect` is specified, the `SECTIONS` directive takes precedence and `mysect` is not excluded.

The `--exclude` option has a limited wildcard capability. The `*` character can be placed at the beginning or end of the name specifier to indicate a suffix or prefix, respectively. For example, `--exclude sect*` disqualifies all sections that begin with the characters `sect`.

If you specify the `--exclude` option on the command line with the `*` wildcard, enter quotes around the section name and wildcard. For example, `--exclude"sect"`. Using quotes prevents the `*` from being interpreted by the hex conversion utility. If `--exclude` is in a command file, then the quotes should not be specified.

If multiple object files are given, the object file in which the section to be excluded can be given in the form `oname(sname)`. If the object filename is not provided, all sections matching the section name are excluded. Wildcards cannot be used for the filename, but can appear within the parentheses.

11.8 Assigning Output Filenames

When the hex conversion utility translates your object file into a data format, it partitions the data into one or more output files. When multiple files are formed by splitting memory words into ROM words, *filenames are always assigned in order from least to most significant*, where bits in the memory words are numbered from right to left. This is true, regardless of target or endian ordering.

The hex conversion utility follows this sequence when assigning output filenames:

1. **It looks for the ROMS directive.** If a file is associated with a range in the `ROMS` directive and you have included a list of files (`files = { . . . }`) on that range, the utility takes the filename from the list.

For example, assume that the target data is 16-bit words being converted to two files, each eight bits wide. To name the output files using the `ROMS` directive, you could specify:

```
ROMS
{
    RANGE1: romwidth=8, files={ xyz.b0 xyz.b1 }
}
```

The utility creates the output files by writing the least significant bits to `xyz.b0` and the most significant bits to `xyz.b1`.

2. **It looks for the `--outfile` options.** You can specify names for the output files by using the `--outfile` option. If no filenames are listed in the `ROMS` directive and you use `--outfile` options, the utility takes the filename from the list of `--outfile` options. The following line has the same effect as the example above using the `ROMS` directive:

```
--outfile=xyz.b0 --outfile=xyz.b1
```

If both the `ROMS` directive and `--outfile` options are used together, the `ROMS` directive overrides the `--outfile` options.

3. **It assigns a default filename.** If you specify no filenames or fewer names than output files, the utility assigns a default filename. A default filename consists of the base name from the input file plus a 2- to 3-character extension. The extension has three parts:

(a) A format character, based on the output format (see [Section 11.12](#)):

a	for ASCII-Hex
i	for Intel
m	for Motorola-S
t	for TI-Tagged
x	for Tektronix

- (b) The range number in the ROMS directive. Ranges are numbered starting with 0. If there is no ROMS directive, or only one range, the utility omits this character.
- (c) The file number in the set of files for the range, starting with 0 for the least significant file.
- For example, assume a.out is for a 16-bit target processor and you are creating Intel format output. With no output filenames specified, the utility produces two output files named a.i0, a.i1, a.i2, a.i3. If you include the following ROMS directive when you invoke the hex conversion utility, you would have four output files:

```
ROMS
{
    range1: o = 0x1000 l = 0x1000
    range2: o = 0x2000 l = 0x1000
}
```

These output files ...	Contain data in these locations ...
a.i00 and a.i01	0x1000 through 0x1FFF
a.i10 and a.i11	0x2000 through 0x2FFF

11.9 Image Mode and the --fill Option

This section points out the advantages of operating in image mode and describes how to produce output files with a precise, continuous image of a target memory range.

11.9.1 Generating a Memory Image

With the --image option, the utility generates a memory image by completely filling all of the mapped ranges specified in the ROMS directive.

An object file consists of blocks of memory (sections) with assigned memory locations. Typically, all sections are not adjacent: there are holes between sections in the address space for which there is no data. When such a file is converted *without* the use of image mode, the hex conversion utility bridges these holes by using the address records in the output file to skip ahead to the start of the next section. In other words, there may be discontinuities in the output file addresses. Some EPROM programmers do not support address discontinuities.

In image mode, there are no discontinuities. Each output file contains a continuous stream of data that corresponds exactly to an address range in target memory. Any holes before, between, or after sections are filled with a fill value that you supply.

An output file converted by using image mode still has address records, because many of the hexadecimal formats require an address on each line. However, in image mode, these addresses are always contiguous.

Defining the Ranges of Target Memory

NOTE: If you use image mode, you must also use a ROMS directive. In image mode, each output file corresponds directly to a range of target memory. You must define the ranges. If you do not supply the ranges of target memory, the utility tries to build a memory image of the entire target processor address space. This is potentially a huge amount of output data. To prevent this situation, the utility requires you to explicitly restrict the address space with the ROMS directive.

11.9.2 Specifying a Fill Value

The `--fill` option specifies a value for filling the holes between sections. The fill value must be specified as an integer constant following the `--fill` option. The width of the constant is assumed to be that of a word on the target processor. For example, specifying `--fill=0x0FF`. The constant value is not sign extended.

The hex conversion utility uses a default fill value of 0 if you do not specify a value with the fill option. *The `--fill` option is valid only when you use `--image`; otherwise, it is ignored.*

11.9.3 Steps to Follow in Using Image Mode

- Step 1:** Define the ranges of target memory with a ROMS directive. See [Section 11.4](#).
- Step 2:** Invoke the hex conversion utility with the `--image` option. You can optionally use the `--zero` option to reset the address origin to 0 for each output file. If you do not specify a fill value with the ROMS directive and you want a value other than the default of 0, use the `--fill` option.

11.10 Controlling the ROM Device Address

The hex conversion utility output address field corresponds to the ROM device address. The EPROM programmer burns the data into the location specified by the hex conversion utility output file address field. The hex conversion utility offers some mechanisms to control the starting address in ROM of each section. However, many EPROM programmers offer direct control of the location in ROM in which the data is burned.

The address field of the hex-conversion utility output file is controlled by the following items, which are listed from low to high priority:

1. **The linker command file.** By default, the address field of the hex conversion utility output file is the load address (as given in the linker command file).
2. **The `paddr` parameter of the `SECTIONS` directive.** When the `paddr` parameter is specified for a section, the hex conversion utility bypasses the section load address and places the section in the address specified by `paddr`.
3. **The `--zero` option.** When you use the `--zero` option, the utility resets the address origin to 0 for each output file. Since each file starts at 0 and counts upward, any address records represent offsets from the beginning of the file (the address within the ROM) rather than actual target addresses of the data. You must use the `--zero` option in conjunction with the `--image` option to force the starting address in each output file to be zero. If you specify the `--zero` option without the `--image` option, the utility issues a warning and ignores the `--zero` option.

11.11 Control Hex Conversion Utility Diagnostics

The hex conversion utility uses certain C/C++ compiler options to control hex-converter-generated diagnostics.

--diag_error=id	Categorizes the diagnostic identified by <i>id</i> as an error. To determine the numeric identifier of a diagnostic message, use the --display_error_number option first in a separate link. Then use --diag_error=id to recategorize the diagnostic as an error. You can only alter the severity of discretionary diagnostics.
--diag_remark=id	Categorizes the diagnostic identified by <i>id</i> as a remark. To determine the numeric identifier of a diagnostic message, use the --display_error_number option first in a separate link. Then use --diag_remark=id to recategorize the diagnostic as a remark. You can only alter the severity of discretionary diagnostics.
--diag_suppress=id	Suppresses the diagnostic identified by <i>id</i> . To determine the numeric identifier of a diagnostic message, use the --display_error_number option first in a separate link. Then use --diag_suppress=id to suppress the diagnostic. You can only suppress discretionary diagnostics.
--diag_warning=id	Categorizes the diagnostic identified by <i>id</i> as a warning. To determine the numeric identifier of a diagnostic message, use the --display_error_number option first in a separate link. Then use --diag_warning=id to recategorize the diagnostic as a warning. You can only alter the severity of discretionary diagnostics.
--display_error_number	Displays a diagnostic's numeric identifier along with its text. Use this option in determining which arguments you need to supply to the diagnostic suppression options (--diag_suppress, --diag_error, --diag_remark, and --diag_warning). This option also indicates whether a diagnostic is discretionary. A discretionary diagnostic is one whose severity can be overridden. A discretionary diagnostic includes the suffix -D; otherwise, no suffix is present. See the <i>MSP430 Optimizing C/C++ Compiler User's Guide</i> for more information on understanding diagnostic messages.
--issue_remarks	Issues remarks (nonserious warnings), which are suppressed by default.
--no_warnings	Suppresses warning diagnostics (errors are still issued).
--set_error_limit=count	Sets the error limit to <i>count</i> , which can be any decimal value. The linker abandons linking after this number of errors. (The default is 100.)
--verbose_diagnostics	Provides verbose diagnostics that display the original source with line-wrap and indicate the position of the error in the source line

11.12 Description of the Object Formats

The hex conversion utility has options that identify each format. [Table 11-2](#) specifies the format options. They are described in the following sections.

- You need to use only one of these options on the command line. If you use more than one option, the last one you list overrides the others.
- The default format is Tektronix (--tektronix option).

Table 11-2. Options for Specifying Hex Conversion Formats

Option	Alias	Format	Address Bits	Default Width
--ascii	-a	ASCII-Hex	16	8
--intel	-i	Intel	32	8
--motorola=1	-m1	Motorola-S1	16	8
--motorola=2	-m2	Motorola-S2	24	8
--motorola=3	-m3	Motorola-S3	32	8
--ti-tagged	-t	TI-Tagged	16	16
--ti_txt		TI_TXT	8	8
--tektronix	-x	Tektronix	32	8

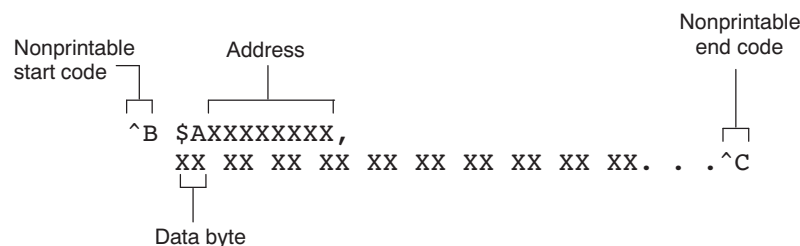
Address bits determine how many bits of the address information the format supports. Formats with 16-bit addresses support addresses up to 64K only. The utility truncates target addresses to fit in the number of available bits.

The **default width** determines the default output width of the format. You can change the default width by using the --romwidth option or by using the romwidth parameter in the ROMS directive. You cannot change the default width of the TI-Tagged format, which supports a 16-bit width only.

11.12.1 ASCII-Hex Object Format (--ascii Option)

The ASCII-Hex object format supports 16-bit addresses. The format consists of a byte stream with bytes separated by spaces. [Figure 11-6](#) illustrates the ASCII-Hex format.

Figure 11-6. ASCII-Hex Object Format



The file begins with an ASCII STX character (ctrl-B, 02h) and ends with an ASCII ETX character (ctrl-C, 03h). Address records are indicated with \$XXXXXXXX, in which XXXXXXXX is a 8-digit (16-bit) hexadecimal address. The address records are present only in the following situations:

- When discontinuities occur
- When the byte stream does not begin at address 0

You can avoid all discontinuities and any address records by using the --image and --zero options. This creates output that is simply a list of byte values.

11.12.2 Intel MCS-86 Object Format (--intel Option)

The Intel object format supports 16-bit addresses and 32-bit extended addresses. Intel format consists of a 9-character (4-field) prefix (which defines the start of record, byte count, load address, and record type), the data, and a 2-character checksum suffix.

The 9-character prefix represents three record types:

Record Type	Description
00	Data record
01	End-of-file record
04	Extended linear address record

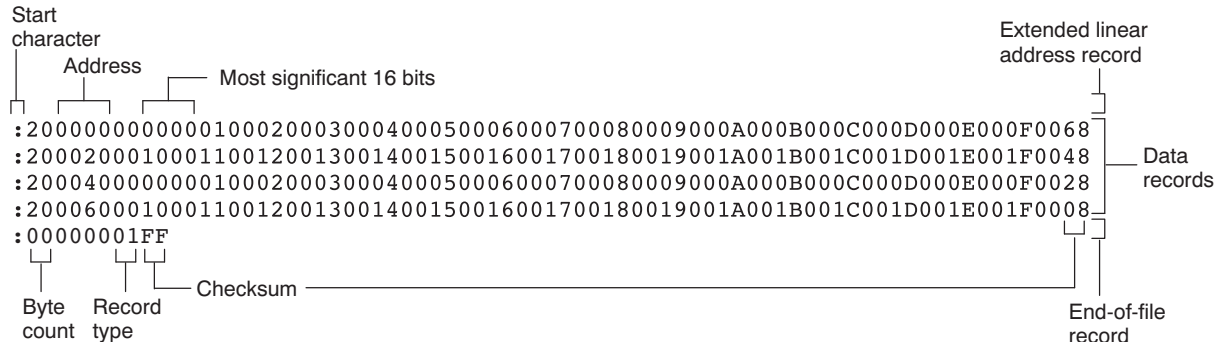
Record type 00, the data record, begins with a colon (:) and is followed by the byte count, the address of the first data byte, the record type (00), and the checksum. The address is the least significant 16 bits of a 32-bit address; this value is concatenated with the value from the most recent 04 (extended linear address) record to create a full 32-bit address. The checksum is the 2s complement (in binary form) of the preceding bytes in the record, including byte count, address, and data bytes.

Record type 01, the end-of-file record, also begins with a colon (:), followed by the byte count, the address, the record type (01), and the checksum.

Record type 04, the extended linear address record, specifies the upper 16 address bits. It begins with a colon (:), followed by the byte count, a dummy address of 0h, the record type (04), the most significant 16 bits of the address, and the checksum. The subsequent address fields in the data records contain the least significant bytes of the address.

Figure 11-7 illustrates the Intel hexadecimal object format.

Figure 11-7. Intel Hexadecimal Object Format



11.12.3 Motorola Exorciser Object Format (`--motorola` Option)

The Motorola S1, S2, and S3 formats support 16-bit, 24-bit, and 32-bit addresses, respectively. The formats consist of a start-of-file (header) record, data records, and an end-of-file (termination) record. Each record consists of five fields: record type, byte count, address, data, and checksum. The three record types are:

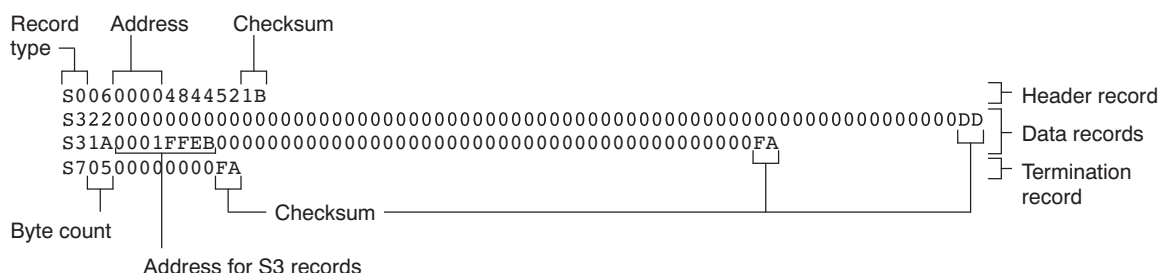
Record Type	Description
S0	Header record
S1	Code/data record for 16-bit addresses (S1 format)
S2	Code/data record for 24-bit addresses (S2 format)
S3	Code/data record for 32-bit addresses (S3 format)
S7	Termination record for 32-bit addresses (S3 format)
S8	Termination record for 24-bit addresses (S2 format)
S9	Termination record for 16-bit addresses (S1 format)

The byte count is the character pair count in the record, excluding the type and byte count itself.

The checksum is the least significant byte of the 1s complement of the sum of the values represented by the pairs of characters making up the byte count, address, and the code/data fields.

Figure 11-8 illustrates the Motorola-S object format.

Figure 11-8. Motorola-S Format



11.12.4 Extended Tektronix Object Format (`--tektronix` Option)

The Tektronix object format supports 32-bit addresses and has two types of records:

Data records contains the header field, the load address, and the object code.

Termination records signifies the end of a module.

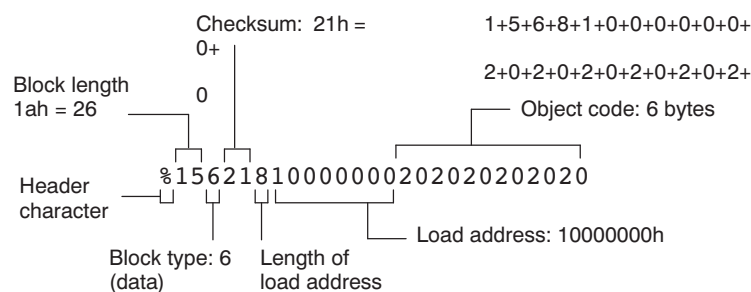
The header field in the data record contains the following information:

Item	Number of ASCII Characters	Description
%	1	Data type is Tektronix format
Block length	2	Number of characters in the record, minus the %
Block type	1	6 = data record 8 = termination record
Checksum	2	A 2-digit hex sum modulo 256 of all values in the record except the % and the checksum itself.

The load address in the data record specifies where the object code will be located. The first digit specifies the address length; this is always 8. The remaining characters of the data record contain the object code, two characters per byte.

Figure 11-9 illustrates the Tektronix object format.

Figure 11-9. Extended Tektronix Object Format



11.12.6 TI-TXT Hex Format (--ti_txt Option)

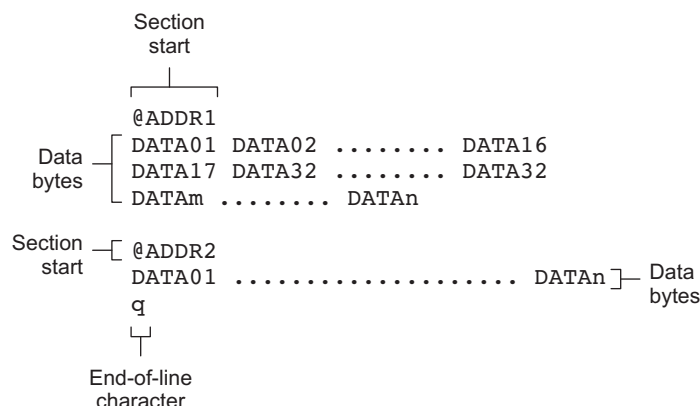
The TI-TXT hex format supports 16-bit hexadecimal data. It consists of section start addresses, data byte, and an end-of-file character. These restrictions apply:

- The number of sections is unlimited.
- Each hexadecimal start address must be even.
- Each line must have 16 data bytes, except the last line of a section.
- Data bytes are separated by a single space.
- The end-of-file termination tag q is mandatory.

The data record contains the following information:

Item	Description
@ADDR	Hexadecimal start address of a section
DATAn	Hexadecimal data byte
q	End-of-file termination character

Figure 11-11. TI-TXT Object Format



Example 11-3. TI-TXT Object Format

```

@F000
31 40 00 03 B2 40 80 5A 20 01 D2 D3 22 00 D2 E3
21 00 3F 40 E8 FD 1F 83 FE 23 F9 3F
@FFFE
00 F0
Q
  
```

Sharing C/C++ Header Files With Assembly Source

You can use the `.cdecls` assembler directive to share C headers containing declarations and prototypes between C and assembly code. Any legal C/C++ can be used in a `.cdecls` block and the C/C++ declarations will cause suitable assembly to be generated automatically, allowing you to reference the C/C++ constructs in assembly code.

Topic	Page
12.1 Overview of the <code>.cdecls</code> Directive	260
12.2 Notes on C/C++ Conversions	260
12.3 Notes on C++ Specific Conversions	264
12.4 Special Assembler Support	265

12.1 Overview of the `.cdecls` Directive

The `.cdecls` directive allows programmers in mixed assembly and C/C++ environments to share C headers containing declarations and prototypes between the C and assembly code. Any legal C/C++ can be used in a `.cdecls` block and the C/C++ declarations will cause suitable assembly to be generated automatically. This allows the programmer to reference the C/C++ constructs in assembly code — calling functions, allocating space, and accessing structure members — using the equivalent assembly mechanisms. While function and variable definitions are ignored, most common C/C++ elements are converted to assembly: enumerations, (non function-like) macros, function and variable prototypes, structures, and unions.

See the [.cdecls directive](#) description for details on the syntax of the `.cdecls` assembler directive.

The `.cdecls` directive can appear anywhere in an assembly source file, and can occur multiple times within a file. However, the C/C++ environment created by one `.cdecls` is **not** inherited by a later `.cdecls`; the C/C++ environment starts over for each `.cdecls` instance.

For example, the following code causes the warning to be issued:

```
.cdecls C,NOLIST
%{
    #define ASMTEST 1
}%

.cdecls C,NOLIST
%{
    #ifndef ASMTEST
        #warn "ASMTEST not defined!" /* will be issued */
    #endif
}%
```

Therefore, a typical use of the `.cdecls` block is expected to be a single usage near the beginning of the assembly source file, in which all necessary C/C++ header files are included.

Use the compiler `--include_path=path` options to specify additional include file paths needed for the header files used in assembly, as you would when compiling C files.

Any C/C++ errors or warnings generated by the code of the `.cdecls` are emitted as they normally would for the C/C++ source code. C/C++ errors cause the directive to fail, and any resulting converted assembly is not included.

C/C++ constructs that cannot be converted, such as function-like macros or variable definitions, cause a comment to be output to the converted assembly file. For example:

```
; ASM HEADER WARNING - variable definition 'ABCD' ignored
```

The prefix `ASM HEADER WARNING` appears at the beginning of each message. To see the warnings, either the `WARN` parameter needs to be specified so the messages are displayed on `STDERR`, or else the `LIST` parameter needs to be specified so the warnings appear in the listing file, if any.

Finally, note that the converted assembly code does not appear in the same order as the original C/C++ source code and C/C++ constructs may be simplified to a normalized form during the conversion process, but this should not affect their final usage.

12.2 Notes on C/C++ Conversions

The following sections describe C and C++ conversion elements that you need to be aware of when sharing header files with assembly source.

12.2.1 Comments

Comments are consumed entirely at the C level, and do not appear in the resulting converted assembly file.

12.2.2 Conditional Compilation (#if/#else/#ifdef/etc.)

Conditional compilation is handled entirely at the C level during the conversion step. Define any necessary macros either on the command line (using the compiler `--define=name=value` option) or within a `.cdecls` block using `#define`. The `#if`, `#ifdef`, etc. C/C++ directives are **not** converted to assembly `.if`, `.else`, `.elseif`, and `.endif` directives.

12.2.3 Pragmas

Pragmas found in the C/C++ source code cause a warning to be generated as they are not converted. They have no other effect on the resulting assembly file. See [the .cdecls topic](#) for the `WARN` and `NOWARN` parameter discussion for where these warnings are created.

12.2.4 The #error and #warning Directives

These preprocessor directives are handled completely by the compiler during the parsing step of conversion. If one of these directives is encountered, the appropriate error or warning message is emitted. These directives are not converted to `.emsg` or `.wmsg` in the assembly output.

12.2.5 Predefined symbol __ASM_HEADER__

The C/C++ macro `__ASM_HEADER__` is defined in the compiler while processing code within `.cdecls`. This allows you to make changes in your code, such as not compiling definitions, during the `.cdecls` processing.

Be Careful With the __ASM_HEADER__ Macro

NOTE: You must be very careful not to use this macro to introduce any changes in the code that could result in inconsistencies between the code processed while compiling the C/C++ source and while converting to assembly.

12.2.6 Usage Within C/C++ asm() Statements

The `.cdecls` directive is not allowed within C/C++ `asm()` statements and will cause an error to be generated.

12.2.7 The #include Directive

The C/C++ `#include` preprocessor directive is handled transparently by the compiler during the conversion step. Such `#includes` can be nested as deeply as desired as in C/C++ source. The assembly directives `.include` and `.copy` are not used or needed within a `.cdecls`. Use the command line `--include_path` option to specify additional paths to be searched for included files, as you would for C compilation.

12.2.8 Conversion of #define Macros

Only object-like macros are converted to assembly. Function-like macros have no assembly representation and so cannot be converted. Pre-defined and built-in C/C++ macros are not converted to assembly (i.e., `__FILE__`, `__TIME__`, `__TI_COMPILER_VERSION__`, etc.). For example, this code is converted to assembly because it is an object-like macro:

```
#define NAME Charley
```

This code is not converted to assembly because it is a function-like macro:

```
#define MAX(x,y) (x>y ? x : y)
```

Some macros, while they are converted, have no functional use in the containing assembly file. For example, the following results in the assembly substitution symbol `FOREVER` being set to the value `while(1)`, although this has no useful use in assembly because `while(1)` is not legal assembly code.

```
#define FOREVER while(1)
```

Macro values are **not** interpreted as they are converted. For example, the following results in the assembler substitution symbol OFFSET being set to the literal string value 5+12 and **not** the value 17. This happens because the semantics of the C/C++ language require that macros are evaluated in context and not when they are parsed.

```
#define OFFSET 5+12
```

Because macros in C/C++ are evaluated in their usage context, C/C++ printf escape sequences such as `\n` are not converted to a single character in the converted assembly macro. See [Section 12.2.11](#) for suggestions on how to use C/C++ macro strings.

Macros are converted using the new `.define` directive (see [Section 12.4.2](#)), which functions similarly to the `.asg` assembler directive. The exception is that `.define` disallows redefinitions of register symbols and mnemonics to prevent the conversion from corrupting the basic assembly environment. To remove a macro from the assembly scope, `.undef` can be used following the `.cdecls` that defines it (see [Section 12.4.3](#)).

The macro functionality of `#` (stringize operator) is only useful within functional macros. Since functional macros are not supported by this process, `#` is not supported either. The concatenation operator `##` is only useful in a functional context, but can be used degenerately to concatenate two strings and so it is supported in that context.

12.2.9 The `#undef` Directive

Symbols undefined using the `#undef` directive before the end of the `.cdecls` are not converted to assembly.

12.2.10 Enumerations

Enumeration members are converted to `.enum` elements in assembly. For example:

```
enum state { ACTIVE=0x10, SLEEPING=0x01, INTERRUPT=0x100, POWEROFF, LAST};
```

is converted to the following assembly code:

```
state      .enum
ACTIVE     .emember 16
SLEEPING   .emember 1
INTERRUPT   .emember 256
POWEROFF   .emember 257
LAST       .emember 258
           .endenum
```

The members are used via the pseudo-scoping created by the `.enum` directive.

The usage is similar to that for accessing structure members, `enum_name.member`.

This pseudo-scoping is used to prevent enumeration member names from corrupting other symbols within the assembly environment.

12.2.11 C Strings

Because C string escapes such as `\n` and `\t` are not converted to hex characters `0x0A` and `0x09` until their use in a string constant in a C/C++ program, C macros whose values are strings cannot be represented as expected in assembly substitution symbols. For example:

```
#define MSG "\tHI\n"
```

becomes, in assembly:

```
.define ""\tHI\n"" ,MSG ; 6 quoted characters! not 5!
```

When used in a C string context, you expect this statement to be converted to 5 characters (tab, H, I, newline, NULL), but the `.string` assembler directive does not know how to perform the C escape conversions.

You can use the `.cstring` directive to cause the escape sequences and NULL termination to be properly handled as they would in C/C++. Using the above symbol MSG with a `.cstring` directive results in 5 characters of memory being allocated, the same characters as would result if used in a C/C++ strong context. (See [Section 12.4.7](#) for the `.cstring` directive syntax.)

12.2.12 C/C++ Built-In Functions

The C/C++ built-in functions, such as `sizeof()`, are not translated to their assembly counterparts, if any, if they are used in macros. Also, their C expression values are not inserted into the resulting assembly macro because macros are evaluated in context and there is no active context when converting the macros to assembly.

Suitable functions such as `$sizeof()` are available in assembly expressions. However, as the basic types such as `int/char/float` have no type representation in assembly, there is no way to ask for `$sizeof(int)`, for example, in assembly.

12.2.13 Structures and Unions

C/C++ structures and unions are converted to assembly `.struct` and `.union` elements. Padding and ending alignments are added as necessary to make the resulting assembly structure have the same size and member offsets as the C/C++ source. The primary purpose is to allow access to members of C/C++ structures, as well as to facilitate debugging of the assembly code. For nested structures, the assembly `.tag` feature is used to refer to other structures/unions.

The alignment is also passed from the C/C++ source so that the assembly symbol is marked with the same alignment as the C/C++ symbol. (See [Section 12.2.3](#) for information about pragmas, which may attempt to modify structures.) Because the alignment of structures is stored in the assembly symbol, built-in assembly functions like `$sizeof()` and `$alignof()` can be used on the resulting structure name symbol.

When using unnamed structures (or unions) in typedefs, such as:

```
typedef struct { int a_member; } mystrname;
```

This is really a shorthand way of writing:

```
struct temporary_name { int a_member; };
typedef temporary_name mystrname;
```

The conversion processes the above statements in the same manner: generating a temporary name for the structure and then using `.define` to output a typedef from the temporary name to the user name. You should use your *mystrname* in assembly the same as you would in C/C++, but do not be confused by the assembly structure definition in the list, which contains the temporary name. You can avoid the temporary name by specifying a name for the structure, as in:

```
typedef struct a_st_name { ... } mystrname;
```

If a shorthand method is used in C to declare a variable with a particular structure, for example:

```
extern struct a_name { int a_member; } a_variable;
```

Then after the structure is converted to assembly, a `.tag` directive is generated to declare the structure of the external variable, such as:

```
_a_variable .tag a_st_name
```

This allows you to refer to `_a_variable.a_member` in your assembly code.

12.2.14 Function/Variable Prototypes

Non-static function and variable prototypes (not definitions) will result in a `.global` directive being generated for each symbol found.

See [Section 12.3.1](#) for C++ name mangling issues.

Function and variable definitions will result in a warning message being generated (see the `WARN/NOWARN` parameter discussion for where these warnings are created) for each, and they will not be represented in the converted assembly.

The assembly symbol representing the variable declarations will not contain type information about those symbols. Only a `.global` will be issued for them. Therefore, it is your responsibility to ensure the symbol is used appropriately.

See [Section 12.2.13](#) for information on variables names which are of a structure/union type.

12.2.15 C Constant Suffixes

The C constant suffixes u, l, and f are passed to the assembly unchanged. The assembler will ignore these suffixes if used in assembly expressions.

12.2.16 Basic C/C++ Types

Only complex types (structures and unions) in the C/C++ source code are converted to assembly. Basic types such as int, char, or float are not converted or represented in assembly beyond any existing .int, .char, .float, etc. directives that previously existed in assembly.

Typedefs of basic types are therefore also not represented in the converted assembly.

12.3 Notes on C++ Specific Conversions

The following sections describe C++ specific conversion elements that you need to be aware of when sharing header files with assembly source.

12.3.1 Name Mangling

Symbol names may be mangled in C++ source files. When mangling occurs, the converted assembly will use the mangled names to avoid symbol name clashes. You can use the demangler (dem430) to demangle names and identify the correct symbols to use in assembly.

To defeat name mangling in C++ for symbols where polymorphism (calling a function of the same name with different kinds of arguments) is not required, use the following syntax:

```
extern "C" void somefunc(int arg);
```

The above format is the short method for declaring a single function. To use this method for multiple functions, you can also use the following syntax:

```
extern "C"
{
    void somefunc(int arg);
    int  anotherfunc(int arg);
    ...
}
```

12.3.2 Derived Classes

Derived classes are only partially supported when converting to assembly because of issues related to C++ scoping which does not exist in assembly. The greatest difference is that base class members do not automatically become full (top-level) members of the derived class. For example:

```
-----
class base
{
    public:
        int b1;
};

class derived : public base
{
    public:
        int d1;
}
```

In C++ code, the class derived would contain both integers b1 and d1. In the converted assembly structure "derived", the members of the base class must be accessed using the name of the base class, such as derived.__b_base.b1 rather than the expected derived.b1.

A non-virtual, non-empty base class will have __b_ prepended to its name within the derived class to signify it is a base class name. That is why the example above is derived.__b_base.b1 and not simply derived.base.b1.

12.3.3 Templates

No support exists for templates.

12.3.4 Virtual Functions

No support exists for virtual functions, as they have no assembly representation.

12.4 Special Assembler Support

12.4.1 Enumerations (*.enum/.emember/.endenum*)

New directives have been created to support a pseudo-scoping for enumerations.

The format of these new directives is:

```

ENUM_NAME    .enum
MEMBER1      .emember [value]
MEMBER2      .emember [value]
...
                .endenum

```

The **.enum** directive begins the enumeration definition and **.endenum** terminates it.

The enumeration name (*ENUM_NAME*) cannot be used to allocate space; its size is reported as zero.

The format to use the value of a member is *ENUM_NAME.MEMBER*, similar to a structure member usage.

The **.emember** directive optionally accepts the value to set the member to, just as in C/C++. If not specified, the member takes a value one more than the previous member. As in C/C++, member names cannot be duplicated, although values can be. Unless specified with **.emember**, the first enumeration member will be given the value 0 (zero), as in C/C++.

The **.endenum** directive cannot be used with a label, as structure **.endstruct** directives can, because the **.endenum** directive has no value like the **.endstruct** does (containing the size of the structure).

Conditional compilation directives (**.if/.else/.elseif/.endif**) are the only other non-enumeration code allowed within the **.enum/.endenum** sequence.

12.4.2 The *.define* Directive

The new **.define** directive functions in the same manner as the **.asg** directive, except that **.define** disallows creation of a substitution symbol that has the same name as a register symbol or mnemonic. It does not create a new symbol name space in the assembler, rather it uses the existing substitution symbol name space. The syntax for the directive is:

```
.define substitution string, substitution symbol name
```

The **.define** directive is used to prevent corruption of the assembly environment when converting C/C++ headers.

12.4.3 The *.undefine/.unasg* Directives

The **.undef** directive is used to remove the definition of a substitution symbol created using **.define** or **.asg**. This directive will remove the named symbol from the substitution symbol table from the point of the **.undef** to the end of the assembly file. The syntax for these directives is:

```
.undefine substitution symbol name
```

```
.unasg substitution symbol name
```

This can be used to remove from the assembly environment any C/C++ macros that may cause a problem.

Also see [Section 12.4.2](#), which covers the `.define` directive.

12.4.4 The `$defined()` Built-In Function

The `$defined` directive returns true/1 or false/0 depending on whether the name exists in the current substitution symbol table or the standard symbol table. In essence `$defined` returns TRUE if the assembler has any user symbol in scope by that name. This differs from `$isdefed` in that `$isdefed` only tests for NON-substitution symbols. The syntax is:

`$defined(substitution symbol name)`

A statement such as `".if $defined(macroname)"` is then similar to the C code `"#ifdef macroname"`.

See [Section 12.4.2](#) and [Section 12.4.3](#) for the use of `.define` and `.undef` in assembly.

12.4.5 The `$sizeof` Built-In Function

The new assembly built-in function `$sizeof()` can be used to query the size of a structure in assembly. It is an alias for the already existing `$structsz()`. The syntax is:

`$sizeof(structure name)`

The `$sizeof` function can then be used similarly to the C built-in function `sizeof()`.

The assembler's `$sizeof()` built-in function cannot be used to ask for the size of basic C/C++ types, such as `$sizeof(int)`, because those basic type names are not represented in assembly. Only complex types are converted from C/C++ to assembly.

Also see [Section 12.2.12](#), which notes that this conversion does not happen automatically if the C/C++ `sizeof()` built-in function is used within a macro.

12.4.6 Structure/Union Alignment and `$alignof()`

The assembly `.struct` and `.union` directives now take an optional second argument which can be used to specify a minimum alignment to be applied to the symbol name. This is used by the conversion process to pass the specific alignment from C/C++ to assembly.

The assembly built-in function `$alignof()` can be used to report the alignment of these structures. This can be used even on assembly structures, and the function will return the minimum alignment calculated by the assembler.

12.4.7 The `.cstring` Directive

You can use the new `.cstring` directive to cause the escape sequences and NULL termination to be properly handled as they would in C/C++.

```
.cstring "String with C escapes.\nWill be NULL terminated.\012"
```

See [Section 12.2.11](#) for more information on the new `.cstring` directive.

Symbolic Debugging Directives

The assembler supports several directives that the MSP430 C/C++ compiler uses for symbolic debugging. These directives differ for the two debugging formats, DWARF and COFF.

These directives are not meant for use by assembly-language programmers. They require arguments that can be difficult to calculate manually, and their usage must conform to a predetermined agreement between the compiler, the assembler, and the debugger. This appendix documents these directives for informational purposes only.

Topic	Page
A.1 DWARF Debugging Format	268
A.2 COFF Debugging Format	268
A.3 Debug Directive Syntax	269

A.1 DWARF Debugging Format

A subset of the DWARF symbolic debugging directives are always listed in the assembly language file that the compiler creates for program analysis purposes. To list the complete set used for full symbolic debug, invoke the compiler with the `--symdebug:dwarf` option, as shown below:

```
cl430 --symdebug:dwarf --keep_asm input_file
```

The `--keep_asm` option instructs the compiler to retain the generated assembly file.

To disable the generation of all symbolic debug directives, invoke the compiler with the `-symdebug:none` option:

```
cl430 --symdebug:none --keep_asm input_file
```

The DWARF debugging format consists of the following directives:

- The **.dwtag** and **.dwendtag** directives define a Debug Information Entry (DIE) in the `.debug_info` section.
- The **.dwattr** directive adds an attribute to an existing DIE.
- The **.dwpsn** directive identifies the source position of a C/C++ statement.
- The **.dwcie** and **.dwendentry** directives define a Common Information Entry (CIE) in the `.debug_frame` section.
- The **.dwfde** and **.dwendentry** directives define a Frame Description Entry (FDE) in the `.debug_frame` section.
- The **.dwcfi** directive defines a call frame instruction for a CIE or FDE.

A.2 COFF Debugging Format

COFF symbolic debug is now obsolete. These directives are supported for backwards-compatibility only. The decision to switch to DWARF as the symbolic debug format was made to overcome many limitations of COFF symbolic debug, including the absence of C++ support.

The COFF debugging format consists of the following directives:

- The **.sym** directive defines a global variable, a local variable, or a function. Several parameters allow you to associate various debugging information with the variable or function.
- The **.stag**, **.etag**, and **.utag** directives define structures, enumerations, and unions, respectively. The **.member** directive specifies a member of a structure, enumeration, or union. The **.eos** directive ends a structure, enumeration, or union definition.
- The **.func** and **.endfunc** directives specify the beginning and ending lines of a C/C++ function.
- The **.block** and **.endblock** directives specify the bounds of C/C++ blocks.
- The **.file** directive defines a symbol in the symbol table that identifies the current source filename.
- The **.line** directive identifies the line number of a C/C++ source statement.

A.3 Debug Directive Syntax

[Table A-1](#) is an alphabetical listing of the symbolic debugging directives. For information on the C/C++ compiler, refer to the *MSP430 Optimizing C/C++ Compiler User's Guide*.

Table A-1. Symbolic Debugging Directives

Label	Directive	Arguments
	.block	[beginning line number]
	.dwattr	DIE label , DIE attribute name (DIE attribute value)[, DIE attribute name (attribute value) [, ...]
	.dwcfi	call frame instruction opcode[, operand[, operand]]
CIE label	.dwcie	version , return address register
	.dwendentry	
	.dwendtag	
	.dwfde	CIE label
	.dwpsn	" filename " , line number , column number
DIE label	.dwtag	DIE tag name , DIE attribute name (DIE attribute value)[, DIE attribute name (attribute value) [, ...]
	.endblock	[ending line number]
	.endfunc	[ending line number[, register mask[, frame size]]]
	.eos	
	.etag	name[, size]
	.file	" filename "
	.func	[beginning line number]
	.line	line number[, address]
	.member	name , value[, type , storage class , size , tag , dims]
	.stag	name[, size]
	.sym	name , value[, type , storage class , size , tag , dims]
	.utag	name[, size]

XML Link Information File Description

The MSP430 linker supports the generation of an XML link information file via the `--xml_link_info file` option. This option causes the linker to generate a well-formed XML file containing detailed information about the result of a link. The information included in this file includes all of the information that is currently produced in a linker-generated map file.

As the linker evolves, the XML link information file may be extended to include additional information that could be useful for static analysis of linker results.

This appendix enumerates all of the elements that are generated by the linker into the XML link information file.

Topic	Page
B.1 XML Information File Element Types	271
B.2 Document Elements	271

B.1 XML Information File Element Types

These element types will be generated by the linker:

- **Container elements** represent an object that contains other elements that describe the object. Container elements have an id attribute that makes them accessible from other elements.
- **String elements** contain a string representation of their value.
- **Constant elements** contain a 32-bit unsigned long representation of their value (with a 0x prefix).
- **Reference elements** are empty elements that contain an idref attribute that specifies a link to another container element.

In [Section B.2](#), the element type is specified for each element in parentheses following the element description. For instance, the <link_time> element lists the time of the link execution (string).

B.2 Document Elements

The root element, or the document element, is **<link_info>**. All other elements contained in the XML link information file are children of the <link_info> element. The following sections describe the elements that an XML information file can contain.

B.2.1 Header Elements

The first elements in the XML link information file provide general information about the linker and the link session:

- The **<banner>** element lists the name of the executable and the version information (string).
- The **<copyright>** element lists the TI copyright information (string).
- The **<link_time>** is a timestamp representation of the link time (unsigned 32-bit int).
- The **<output_file>** element lists the name of the linked output file generated (string).
- The **<entry_point>** element specifies the program entry point, as determined by the linker (container) with two entries:
 - The **<name>** is the entry point symbol name, if any (string).
 - The **<address>** is the entry point address (constant).

Example B-1. Header Element for the hi.out Output File

```
<banner>TMS320Cxx Linker          Version x.xx (Jan 6 2008)</banner>
<copyright>Copyright (c) 1996-2008 Texas Instruments Incorporated</copyright>
<link_time>0x43dfd8a4</link_time>
<output_file>hi.out</output_file>
<entry_point>
  <name>_c_int00</name>
  <address>0xaf80</address>
</entry_point>
```

B.2.2 Input File List

The next section of the XML link information file is the input file list, which is delimited with a **<input_file_list>** container element. The **<input_file_list>** can contain any number of **<input_file>** elements.

Each **<input_file>** instance specifies the input file involved in the link. Each **<input_file>** has an **id** attribute that can be referenced by other elements, such as an **<object_component>**. An **<input_file>** is a container element enclosing the following elements:

- The **<path>** element names a directory path, if applicable (string).
- The **<kind>** element specifies a file type, either archive or object (string).
- The **<file>** element specifies an archive name or filename (string).
- The **<name>** element specifies an object file name, or archive member name (string).

Example B-2. Input File List for the hi.out Output File

```
<input_file_list>
  <input_file id="fl-1">
    <kind>object</kind>
    <file>hi.obj</file>
    <name>hi.obj</name>
  </input_file>
  <input_file id="fl-2">
    <path>/tools/lib/</path>
    <kind>archive</kind>
    <file>rtsxxx.lib</file>
    <name>boot.obj</name>
  </input_file>
  <input_file id="fl-3">
    <path>/tools/lib/</path>
    <kind>archive</kind>
    <file>rtsxxx.lib</file>
    <name>exit.obj</name>
  </input_file>
  <input_file id="fl-4">
    <path>/tools/lib/</path>
    <kind>archive</kind>
    <file>rtsxxx.lib</file>
    <name>printf.obj</name>
  </input_file>
  ...
</input_file_list>
```


B.2.3 Object Component List

The next section of the XML link information file contains a specification of all of the object components that are involved in the link. An example of an object component is an input section. In general, an object component is the smallest piece of object that can be manipulated by the linker.

The **<object_component_list>** is a container element enclosing any number of **<object_component>** elements.

Each **<object_component>** specifies a single object component. Each **<object_component>** has an **id** attribute so that it can be referenced directly from other elements, such as a **<logical_group>**. An **<object_component>** is a container element enclosing the following elements:

- The **<name>** element names the object component (string).
- The **<load_address>** element specifies the load-time address of the object component (constant).
- The **<run_address>** element specifies the run-time address of the object component (constant).
- The **<size>** element specifies the size of the object component (constant).
- The **<input_file_ref>** element specifies the source file where the object component originated (reference).

Example B-3. Object Component List for the fl-4 Input File

```
<object_component id="oc-20">
  <name>.text</name>
  <load_address>0xac00</load_address>
  <run_address>0xac00</run_address>
  <size>0xc0</size>
  <input_file_ref idref="fl-4"/>
</object_component>
<object_component id="oc-21">
  <name>.data</name>
  <load_address>0x80000000</load_address>
  <run_address>0x80000000</run_address>
  <size>0x0</size>
  <input_file_ref idref="fl-4"/>
</object_component>
<object_component id="oc-22">
  <name>.bss</name>
  <load_address>0x80000000</load_address>
  <run_address>0x80000000</run_address>
  <size>0x0</size>
  <input_file_ref idref="fl-4"/>
</object_component>
```

B.2.4 Logical Group List

The **<logical_group_list>** section of the XML link information file is similar to the output section listing in a linker-generated map file. However, the XML link information file contains a specification of GROUP and UNION output sections, which are not represented in a map file. There are three kinds of list items that can occur in a **<logical_group_list>**:

- The **<logical_group>** is the specification of a section or GROUP that contains a list of object components or logical group members. Each **<logical_group>** element is given an id so that it may be referenced from other elements. Each **<logical_group>** is a container element enclosing the following elements:
 - The **<name>** element names the logical group (string).
 - The **<load_address>** element specifies the load-time address of the logical group (constant).
 - The **<run_address>** element specifies the run-time address of the logical group (constant).
 - The **<size>** element specifies the size of the logical group (constant).
 - The **<contents>** element lists elements contained in this logical group (container). These elements refer to each of the member objects contained in this logical group:
 - The **<object_component_ref>** is an object component that is contained in this logical group (reference).
 - The **<logical_group_ref>** is a logical group that is contained in this logical group (reference).
- The **<overlay>** is a special kind of logical group that represents a UNION, or a set of objects that share the same memory space (container). Each **<overlay>** element is given an id so that it may be referenced from other elements (like from an **<allocated_space>** element in the placement map). Each **<overlay>** contains the following elements:
 - The **<name>** element names the overlay (string).
 - The **<run_address>** element specifies the run-time address of overlay (constant).
 - The **<size>** element specifies the size of logical group (constant).
 - The **<contents>** container element lists elements contained in this overlay. These elements refer to each of the member objects contained in this logical group:
 - The **<object_component_ref>** is an object component that is contained in this logical group (reference).
 - The **<logical_group_ref>** is a logical group that is contained in this logical group (reference).
- The **<split_section>** is another special kind of logical group that represents a collection of logical groups that is split among multiple memory areas. Each **<split_section>** element is given an id so that it may be referenced from other elements. The id consists of the following elements.
 - The **<name>** element names the split section (string).
 - The **<contents>** container element lists elements contained in this split section. The **<logical_group_ref>** elements refer to each of the member objects contained in this split section, and each element referenced is a logical group that is contained in this split section (reference).

Example B-4. Logical Group List for the fl-4 Input File

```

<logical_group_list>
  ...
  <logical_group id="lg-7">
    <name>.text</name>
    <load_address>0x20</load_address>
    <run_address>0x20</run_address>
    <size>0xb240</size>
    <contents>
      <object_component_ref idref="oc-34"/>
      <object_component_ref idref="oc-108"/>
      <object_component_ref idref="oc-e2"/>
    ...
    </contents>
  </logical_group>
  ...
  <overlay id="lg-b">
    <name>UNION_1</name>
    <run_address>0xb600</run_address>
    <size>0xc0</size>
    <contents>
      <object_component_ref idref="oc-45"/>
      <logical_group_ref idref="lg-8"/>
    </contents>
  </overlay>
  ...
  <split_section id="lg-12">
    <name>.task_scn</name>
    <size>0x120</size>
    <contents>
      <logical_group_ref idref="lg-10"/>
      <logical_group_ref idref="lg-11"/>
    </contents>
  ...
</logical_group_list>

```

B.2.5 Placement Map

The **<placement_map>** element describes the memory placement details of all named memory areas in the application, including unused spaces between logical groups that have been placed in a particular memory area.

The **<memory_area>** is a description of the placement details within a named memory area (container). The description consists of these items:

- The **<name>** names the memory area (string).
- The **<page_id>** gives the id of the memory page in which this memory area is defined (constant).
- The **<origin>** specifies the beginning address of the memory area (constant).
- The **<length>** specifies the length of the memory area (constant).
- The **<used_space>** specifies the amount of allocated space in this area (constant).
- The **<unused_space>** specifies the amount of available space in this area (constant).
- The **<attributes>** lists the RWX attributes that are associated with this area, if any (string).
- The **<fill_value>** specifies the fill value that is to be placed in unused space, if the fill directive is specified with the memory area (constant).
- The **<usage_details>** lists details of each allocated or available fragment in this memory area. If the fragment is allocated to a logical group, then a **<logical_group_ref>** element is provided to facilitate access to the details of that logical group. All fragment specifications include **<start_address>** and **<size>** elements.
 - The **<allocated_space>** element provides details of an allocated fragment within this memory area (container):
 - The **<start_address>** specifies the address of the fragment (constant).
 - The **<size>** specifies the size of the fragment (constant).
 - The **<logical_group_ref>** provides a reference to the logical group that is allocated to this fragment (reference).
 - The **<available_space>** element provides details of an available fragment within this memory area (container):
 - The **<start_address>** specifies the address of the fragment (constant).
 - The **<size>** specifies the size of the fragment (constant).

Example B-5. Placement Map for the fl-4 Input File

```
<placement_map>
  <memory_area>
    <name>PMEM</name>
    <page_id>0x0</page_id>
    <origin>0x20</origin>
    <length>0x100000</length>
    <used_space>0xb240</used_space>
    <unused_space>0xf4dc0</unused_space>
    <attributes>RWX</attributes>
    <usage_details>
      <allocated_space>
        <start_address>0x20</start_address>
        <size>0xb240</size>
        <logical_group_ref idref="lg-7"/>
      </allocated_space>
      <available_space>
        <start_address>0xb260</start_address>
        <size>0xf4dc0</size>
      </available_space>
    </usage_details>
  </memory_area>
  ...
</placement_map>
```

B.2.6 Far Call Trampoline List

The `<far_call_trampoline_list>` is a list of `<far_call_trampoline>` elements. The linker supports the generation of far call trampolines to help a call site reach a destination that is out of range. A far call trampoline function is guaranteed to reach the called function (callee) as it may utilize an indirect call to the called function.

The `<far_call_trampoline_list>` enumerates all of the far call trampolines that are generated by the linker for a particular link. The `<far_call_trampoline_list>` can contain any number of `<far_call_trampoline>` elements. Each `<far_call_trampoline>` is a container enclosing the following elements:

- The `<callee_name>` element names the destination function (string).
- The `<callee_address>` is the address of the called function (constant).
- The `<trampoline_object_component_ref>` is a reference to an object component that contains the definition of the trampoline function (reference).
- The `<trampoline_address>` is the address of the trampoline function (constant).
- The `<caller_list>` enumerates all call sites that utilize this trampoline to reach the called function (container).
- The `<trampoline_call_site>` provides the details of a trampoline call site (container) and consists of these items:
 - The `<caller_address>` specifies the call site address (constant).
 - The `<caller_object_component_ref>` is the object component where the call site resides (reference).

Example B-6. Fall Call Trampoline List for the fl-4 Input File

```
<far_call_trampoline_list>
...
  <far_call_trampoline>
    <callee_name>_foo</callee_name>
    <callee_address>0x08000030</callee_address>
    <trampoline_object_component_ref idref="oc-123"/>
    <trampoline_address>0x2020</trampoline_address>
    <caller_list>
      <call_site>
        <caller_address>0x1800</caller_address>
        <caller_object_component_ref idref="oc-23"/>
      </call_site>
      <call_site>
        <caller_address>0x1810</caller_address>
        <caller_object_component_ref idref="oc-23"/>
      </call_site>
    </caller_list>
  </far_call_trampoline>
...
</far_call_trampoline_list>
```

B.2.7 Symbol Table

The **<symbol_table>** contains a list of all of the global symbols that are included in the link. The list provides information about a symbol's name and value. In the future, the symbol_table list may provide type information, the object component in which the symbol is defined, storage class, etc.

The **<symbol>** is a container element that specifies the name and value of a symbol with these elements:

- The **<name>** element specifies the symbol name (string).
- The **<value>** element specifies the symbol value (constant).

Example B-7. Symbol Table for the fl-4 Input File

```
<symbol_table>
  <symbol>
    <name>_c_int00</name>
    <value>0xaf80</value>
  </symbol>
  <symbol>
    <name>_main</name>
    <value>0xb1e0</value>
  </symbol>
  <symbol>
    <name>_printf</name>
    <value>0xac00</value>
  </symbol>
  ...
</symbol_table>
```

Glossary

ABI— Application binary interface.

absolute address— An address that is permanently assigned to a MSP430 memory location.

absolute lister— A debugging tool that allows you to create assembler listings that contain absolute addresses.

alignment— A process in which the linker places an output section at an address that falls on an n -byte boundary, where n is a power of 2. You can specify alignment with the SECTIONS linker directive.

allocation— A process in which the linker calculates the final memory addresses of output sections.

ANSI— American National Standards Institute; an organization that establishes standards voluntarily followed by industries.

archive library— A collection of individual files grouped into a single file by the archiver.

archiver— A software program that collects several individual files into a single file called an archive library. With the archiver, you can add, delete, extract, or replace members of the archive library.

ASCII— American Standard Code for Information Interchange; a standard computer code for representing and exchanging alphanumeric information.

assembler— A software program that creates a machine-language program from a source file that contains assembly language instructions, directives, and macro definitions. The assembler substitutes absolute operation codes for symbolic operation codes and absolute or relocatable addresses for symbolic addresses.

assembly-time constant— A symbol that is assigned a constant value with the .set directive.

big endian— An addressing protocol in which bytes are numbered from left to right within a word. More significant bytes in a word have lower numbered addresses. Endian ordering is hardware-specific and is determined at reset. See also *little endian*

binding— A process in which you specify a distinct address for an output section or a symbol.

BIS— Bit instruction set.

block— A set of statements that are grouped together within braces and treated as an entity.

.bss section— One of the default object file sections. You use the assembler .bss directive to reserve a specified amount of space in the memory map that you can use later for storing data. The .bss section is uninitialized.

byte— Per ANSI/ISO C, the smallest addressable unit that can hold a character.

C/C++ compiler— A software program that translates C source statements into assembly language source statements.

COFF— Common object file format; a system of object files configured according to a standard developed by AT&T. These files are relocatable in memory space.

command file— A file that contains options, filenames, directives, or commands for the linker or hex conversion utility.

- comment**— A source statement (or portion of a source statement) that documents or improves readability of a source file. Comments are not compiled, assembled, or linked; they have no effect on the object file.
- compiler program**— A utility that lets you compile, assemble, and optionally link in one step. The compiler runs one or more source modules through the compiler (including the parser, optimizer, and code generator), the assembler, and the linker.
- conditional processing**— A method of processing one block of source code or an alternate block of source code, according to the evaluation of a specified expression.
- configured memory**— Memory that the linker has specified for allocation.
- constant**— A type whose value cannot change.
- cross-reference lister**— A utility that produces an output file that lists the symbols that were defined, what file they were defined in, what reference type they are, what line they were defined on, which lines referenced them, and their assembler and linker final values. The cross-reference lister uses linked object files as input.
- cross-reference listing**— An output file created by the assembler that lists the symbols that were defined, what line they were defined on, which lines referenced them, and their final values.
- .data section**— One of the default object file sections. The .data section is an initialized section that contains initialized data. You can use the .data directive to assemble code into the .data section.
- directives**— Special-purpose commands that control the actions and functions of a software tool (as opposed to assembly language instructions, which control the actions of a device).
- ELF**— Executable and linking format; a system of object files configured according to the System V Application Binary Interface specification.
- emulator**— A hardware development system that duplicates the MSP430 operation.
- entry point**— A point in target memory where execution starts.
- environment variable**— A system symbol that you define and assign to a string. Environmental variables are often included in Windows batch files or UNIX shell scripts such as .cshrc or .profile.
- epilog**— The portion of code in a function that restores the stack and returns.
- executable module**— A linked object file that can be executed in a target system.
- expression**— A constant, a symbol, or a series of constants and symbols separated by arithmetic operators.
- external symbol**— A symbol that is used in the current program module but defined or declared in a different program module.
- field**— For the MSP430, a software-configurable data type whose length can be programmed to be any value in the range of 1-16 bits.
- global symbol**— A symbol that is either defined in the current module and accessed in another, or accessed in the current module but defined in another.
- GROUP**— An option of the SECTIONS directive that forces specified output sections to be allocated contiguously (as a group).
- hex conversion utility**— A utility that converts object files into one of several standard ASCII hexadecimal formats, suitable for loading into an EPROM programmer.
- high-level language debugging**— The ability of a compiler to retain symbolic and high-level language information (such as type and function definitions) so that a debugging tool can use this information.

- hole**— An area between the input sections that compose an output section that contains no code.
- incremental linking**— Linking files in several passes. Incremental linking is useful for large applications, because you can partition the application, link the parts separately, and then link all of the parts together.
- initialization at load time**— An autoinitialization method used by the linker when linking C/C++ code. The linker uses this method when you invoke it with the `--ram_model` link option. This method initializes variables at load time instead of run time.
- initialized section**— A section from an object file that will be linked into an executable module.
- input section**— A section from an object file that will be linked into an executable module.
- ISO**— International Organization for Standardization; a worldwide federation of national standards bodies, which establishes international standards voluntarily followed by industries.
- label**— A symbol that begins in column 1 of an assembler source statement and corresponds to the address of that statement. A label is the only assembler statement that can begin in column 1.
- linker**— A software program that combines object files to form an object module that can be allocated into system memory and executed by the device.
- listing file**— An output file, created by the assembler, that lists source statements, their line numbers, and their effects on the section program counter (SPC).
- little endian**— An addressing protocol in which bytes are numbered from right to left within a word. More significant bytes in a word have higher numbered addresses. Endian ordering is hardware-specific and is determined at reset. See also *big endian*.
- loader**— A device that places an executable module into system memory.
- macro**— A user-defined routine that can be used as an instruction.
- macro call**— The process of invoking a macro.
- macro definition**— A block of source statements that define the name and the code that make up a macro.
- macro expansion**— The process of inserting source statements into your code in place of a macro call.
- macro library**— An archive library composed of macros. Each file in the library must contain one macro; its name must be the same as the macro name it defines, and it must have an extension of `.asm`.
- map file**— An output file, created by the linker, that shows the memory configuration, section composition, section allocation, symbol definitions and the addresses at which the symbols were defined for your program.
- member**— The elements or variables of a structure, union, archive, or enumeration.
- memory map**— A map of target system memory space that is partitioned into functional blocks.
- mnemonic**— An instruction name that the assembler translates into machine code.
- model statement**— Instructions or assembler directives in a macro definition that are assembled each time a macro is invoked.
- named section**— An initialized section that is defined with a `.sect` directive.
- object file**— An assembled or linked file that contains machine-language object code.
- object library**— An archive library made up of individual object files.
- object module**— A linked, executable object file that can be downloaded and executed on a target system.

- operand**— An argument of an assembly language instruction, assembler directive, or macro directive that supplies information to the operation performed by the instruction or directive.
- optimizer**— A software tool that improves the execution speed and reduces the size of C programs.
- options**— Command-line parameters that allow you to request additional or specific functions when you invoke a software tool.
- output module**— A linked, executable object file that is downloaded and executed on a target system.
- output section**— A final, allocated section in a linked, executable module.
- partial linking**— Linking files in several passes. Incremental linking is useful for large applications because you can partition the application, link the parts separately, and then link all of the parts together.
- quiet run**— An option that suppresses the normal banner and the progress information.
- raw data**— Executable code or initialized data in an output section.
- relocation**— A process in which the linker adjusts all the references to a symbol when the symbol's address changes.
- ROM width**— The width (in bits) of each output file, or, more specifically, the width of a single data value in the hex conversion utility file. The ROM width determines how the utility partitions the data into output files. After the target words are mapped to memory words, the memory words are broken into one or more output files. The number of output files is determined by the ROM width.
- run address**— The address where a section runs.
- run-time-support library**— A library file, `rts.src`, that contains the source for the run time-support functions.
- section**— A relocatable block of code or data that ultimately will be contiguous with other sections in the memory map.
- section program counter (SPC)**— An element that keeps track of the current location within a section; each section has its own SPC.
- sign extend**— A process that fills the unused MSBs of a value with the value's sign bit.
- simulator**— A software development system that simulates MSP430 operation.
- source file**— A file that contains C/C++ code or assembly language code that is compiled or assembled to form an object file.
- static variable**— A variable whose scope is confined to a function or a program. The values of static variables are not discarded when the function or program is exited; their previous value is resumed when the function or program is reentered.
- storage class**— An entry in the symbol table that indicates how to access a symbol.
- string table**— A table that stores symbol names that are longer than eight characters (symbol names of eight characters or longer cannot be stored in the symbol table; instead they are stored in the string table). The name portion of the symbol's entry points to the location of the string in the string table.
- structure**— A collection of one or more variables grouped together under a single name.
- subsection**— A relocatable block of code or data that ultimately will occupy continuous space in the memory map. Subsections are smaller sections within larger sections. Subsections give you tighter control of the memory map.
- symbol**— A string of alphanumeric characters that represents an address or a value.
- symbolic debugging**— The ability of a software tool to retain symbolic information that can be used by a debugging tool such as a simulator or an emulator.

tag— An optional *type* name that can be assigned to a structure, union, or enumeration.

target memory— Physical memory in a system into which executable object code is loaded.

.text section— One of the default object file sections. The .text section is initialized and contains executable code. You can use the .text directive to assemble code into the .text section.

unconfigured memory— Memory that is not defined as part of the memory map and cannot be loaded with code or data.

uninitialized section— A object file section that reserves space in the memory map but that has no actual contents. These sections are built with the .bss and .usect directives.

UNION— An option of the SECTIONS directive that causes the linker to allocate the same address to multiple sections.

union— A variable that can hold objects of different types and sizes.

unsigned value— A value that is treated as a nonnegative number, regardless of its actual sign.

variable— A symbol representing a quantity that can assume any of a set of values.

well-defined expression— A term or group of terms that contains only symbols or assembly-time constants that have been defined before they appear in the expression.

word— A 16-bit addressable location in target memory

IMPORTANT NOTICE

Texas Instruments (TI) reserves the right to make changes to its products or to discontinue any semiconductor product or service without notice, and advises its customers to obtain the latest version of relevant information to verify, before placing orders, that the information being relied on is current and complete.

TI warrants performance of its semiconductor products and related software to the specifications applicable at the time of sale in accordance with TI's standard warranty. Testing and other quality control techniques are utilized to the extent TI deems necessary to support this warranty. Specific testing of all parameters of each device is not necessarily performed, except those mandated by government requirements.

Certain applications using semiconductor products may involve potential risks of death, personal injury, or severe property or environmental damage ("Critical Applications").

TI SEMICONDUCTOR PRODUCTS ARE NOT DESIGNED, INTENDED, AUTHORIZED, OR WARRANTED TO BE SUITABLE FOR USE IN LIFE-SUPPORT APPLICATIONS, DEVICES OR SYSTEMS OR OTHER CRITICAL APPLICATIONS.

Inclusion of TI products in such applications is understood to be fully at the risk of the customer. Use of TI products in such applications requires the written approval of an appropriate TI officer. Questions concerning potential risk applications should be directed to TI through a local SC sales office.

In order to minimize risks associated with the customer's applications, adequate design and operating safeguards should be provided by the customer to minimize inherent or procedural hazards.

TI assumes no liability for applications assistance, customer product design, software performance, or infringement of patents or services described herein. Nor does TI warrant or represent that any license, either express or implied, is granted under any patent right, copyright, mask work right, or other intellectual property right of TI covering or relating to any combination, machine, or process in which such semiconductor products or services might be or are used.